XC90

WEB EDITION

OWNER'S MANUAL

VÄLKOMMEN!

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo is one of the safest cars in the world. Your Volvo has also been designed to satisfy all current safety and environmental requirements.

In order to increase your enjoyment of the car, we recommend that you familiarise yourself with the equipment, instructions and maintenance information contained in this owner's manual.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

SAFETY

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

CLIMATE CONTROL

LOADING AND STORAGE

LOCKS AND ALARM

DRIVER SUPPORT

STARTING AND DRIVING

AUDIO AND MEDIA

WHEELS AND TYRES

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

SPECIFICATIONS

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

Owner information is available here

The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display, as a mobile app and on Volvo's support page. There is a Quick Guide and a supplement to the owner's manual available in the glovebox, with specifications and fuse information, amongst other things. A complete printed owner's manual can be ordered.

Digital owner's information

In the car's centre display

A digital[1] version of the owner's manual is available in the car's centre display. Available here are e.g. options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. The information is searchable and is also divided into different categories. Read more in "Digital owner's manual in the car".

As a mobile app

A digital owner's manual is also available as a mobile app and can be downloaded from the e.g. App Store. The app contains video as well as options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. It is easy to navigate between the different sections in the owner's manual and the content is searchable. Read more in "Owner's Manual in mobile devices".

On the Web

The owner's manual can also be accessed from Volvo's support page, support.volvocars.com, both online and in PDF format. On the support page there are also videos and step-by-step instructions for e.g. Internet-connected services and functions. The page is available for most markets. Read more in "Support and more information about the car on the Internet".

Printed owner's information

Printed supplement

The printed owner's manual in the car is a supplement to the digital owner's manual[1] and contains important text, information about fuses, as well as certain specifications. It also contains instructions which may come in handy when it is not possible to read the information in the centre display for practical reasons. See how the owner's manual is structured in "Reading the owner's manual".

Quick Guide

There is also a Quick Guide available in printed format that helps you to get started with the most commonly used functions in the car.

More owner's information in printed format

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car. A complete printed owner's manual can be ordered[2]. Contact a Volvo dealer to order the printed owner's manual or supplements to it.

Changing the language in the car's centre display

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some information does not correspond to national or local laws and regulations.

IMPORTANT

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

If there should be any difference between the information in the centre display and the printed manual, then it is always the printed information that applies.

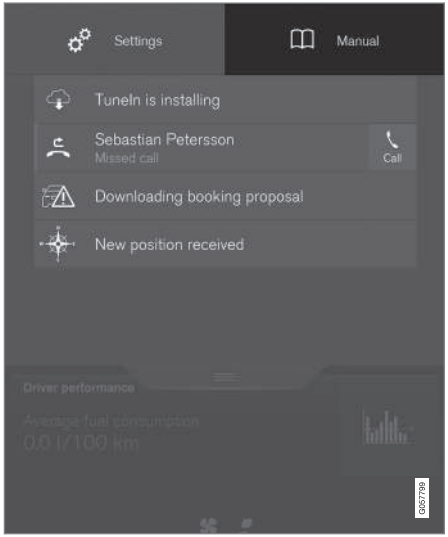
Related information

- Digital owner's manual in the car (p. 13)
- Owner's Manual in mobile devices (p. 15)
- Support and information about the car on the Internet (p. 15)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 16)

[1] A complete printed manual is included with the car for markets without owner's manual in the centre display.
[2] This manual is included with the car from the start for markets without owner's manual in the centre display.

Digital owner's manual in the car

When reference is made in the printed manual to the digital owner's manual, this refers to the information available in the centre display in the car.



The digital owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

There is a range of different options for finding information in the digital owner's manual. The options can be accessed from the top menu of the owner's manual. The option is shown when ☰ is pressed.

- **Start** - The first page that is shown when the digital owner's manual is opened. Shows a welcome text.
- **Categories** - All articles sorted into categories. The same article may appear in several categories.
- **Quick Guide** - A selection of articles that can be particularly useful to read.
- **Exterior** - Exterior images of the car where the different parts are identified with so-called hotspots. Tap on a hotspot in order to proceed to an article about the area.
- **Interior** - Interior images of the car where the different parts are identified with hotspots. Tap on a hotspot in order to proceed to an article about the area.
- **Favourites** - Quick access to favourite-bookmarked articles.

NOTE

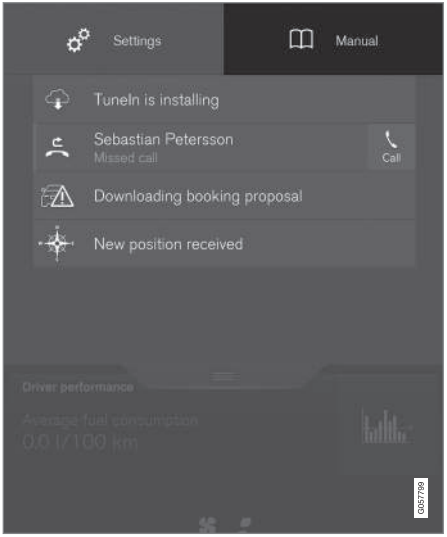
The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Related information

- Navigating in the digital owner's manual (p. 13)

Navigating in the digital owner's manual

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display in the car. The content is searchable and it is easy to navigate between different sections.



The owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

Open the digital owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display, press **Owner's manual**.

There is a range of different options for finding information in the digital owner's manual.

To access the owner's manual menu – press ☰ in the upper bar of the owner's manual.

Searching using categories

The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories in order to be found more easily.

1. Press ☰ and then select **Categories**.
   > The main categories are shown in a list.
2. Tap on a main category (»).
   > A list of subcategories (») and articles (›) is shown.
3. Tap on an article to open it. To go back, press arrow back or ☰ to restart the search.

Hotspots for exterior and interior

Exterior and interior images of the car where the different parts are identified with so-called hotspots.

1. Press ☰ and then select **Exterior/ Interior**.
   > Exterior/interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.
2. Tap on a hotspot.
   > The title of the article about the area is shown.
3. Tap on the title to open the article. To go back, press arrow back or ☰ to restart the search.

Learn about the car's most common functions with the Quick Guide

Under **Quick Guide** in the owner's manual menu, there is a selection of articles that are useful to read in order to learn about the car's most common functions. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but are collected here for quick access. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Favourites

Located here are the articles that have been saved as favourites. The most recently saved ones are listed first. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Saving/deleting articles as favourites

Save an article as favourite by pressing ☆ at the top right when an article is open. When an article has been saved as a favourite the star is filled in: ★.

To remove an article as a favourite, press the star again in the current article.

Using the search function

1. Tap on 🔍 in the top menu of the owner's manual. A keyboard appears in the lower part of the screen.
2. Type in a keyword, such as "seatbelt".
   > Suggestions for articles are shown as letters are entered.
3. Confirm by tapping on the article. To exit search mode, tap the arrow up next to the search field.

Related information

- Digital owner's manual in the car (p. 13)
- Using the keyboard in the centre display (p. 46)

Owner's Manual in mobile devices

The owner's manual is available as a mobile app from both the App Store and Google Play. The app is adapted for smartphones and tablets.

The owner's manual can be downloaded as a mobile app from the App Store or Google Play. The QR code provided here takes you directly to the app. Alternatively, you can search for "Volvo manual" in the App Store or Google Play.

The app contains a video along with exterior and interior images where different parts of the car are highlighted with so-called hotspots, which lead to articles about the area in question. It is easy to navigate between the different sections in the owner's manual and the content is searchable.

The mobile app is available from both the App Store and Google Play.

Related information

- Reading the owner's manual (p. 16)
- Support and information about the car on the Internet (p. 15)

Support and information about the car on the Internet

More information on your car is available on Volvo Cars' website and support site. From the

website, you can also navigate to My Volvo[3], a personalised website for you and your car.

Support on the Internet

Go to support.volvocars.com or use the QR code below to visit the site. The support site is available for most markets.

QR code that leads to the support site.

The information on the support site is searchable and is divided into different categories. It contains support for functions such as web-based services and functions, Volvo On Call (VOC)*, the navigation system* and apps. Videos and step-by-step instructions explain different procedures, e.g. how to connect the car to the Internet via a mobile phone.

Downloadable information

Maps

For cars with the Sensus Navigation option, maps can be downloaded from the support site.

Mobile apps

The owner's manual is available in the form of an app for selected Volvo models from model years 2014 and 2015. The VOC* app can also be accessed from here.

Owner's manuals from earlier model years

Owner's manuals from earlier model years are available here in PDF format. The Quick Guide and supplements can also be accessed from the support page. Select car model and model year to download the required publication.

Contact

The support site contains contact details to customer support and your nearest Volvo dealer.

My Volvo on the Internet[3]

From www.volvocars.com it is possible to navigate through to My Volvo Web which is a personal Web page for you and your car.

Create a personal Volvo ID, log in to My Volvo Web and get an overview of service, agreements and warranties, amongst other things. At My Volvo Web there is also information about accessories and software adapted for your car model.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 20)

Reading the owner's manual

A good way of getting to know your new car is to read the owner's manual, ideally before your first journey.

Reading the owner's manual is a good way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how best to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make the best use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the owner's manual.

Development work is constantly underway in order to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the owner's manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

Options/accessories

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

All types of option/accessory are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different

3 Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

WARNING

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

IMPORTANT

"Important" texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

NOTE

NOTE texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.

Footnote

The owner's manual contains information in certain locations in the form of a footnote at the bottom of the page or at the end of a table. This information is an addition to the text that it refers to via a number. If the footnote refers to text in a table then letters are used instead of numbers for referral.

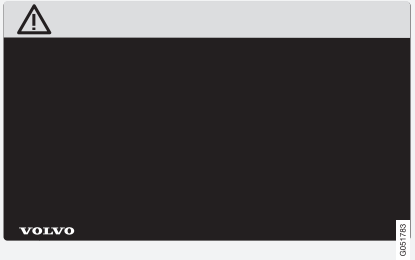
Message texts

There are displays in the car that show menu and message texts. In the owner's manual the appearance of these texts differs from the normal text. Examples of menu texts and message texts: **Phone**, **New message**.

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a simple and clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning of personal injury



Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Procedure lists

Procedures where action must be taken in a certain sequence are numbered in the owner's manual:

1 When there is a series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions each step is numbered in the same way as the corresponding illustration.

A Lists of letters appear adjacent to the series of illustrations where the order of the instructions is not significant.

1 Arrows appear numbered and unnumbered and are used to illustrate a movement.

A Arrows with letters are used to clarify a movement when the relative order is of no relevance.

If there is no series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions then the different steps are numbered with normal numbers.

Position lists

1 Red circles containing a number are used in overview images where different components are pointed out. The number recurs in the position list featured in connection with the illustration that describes the item.

Bulleted lists

A bulleted list is used when there is a list of points in the owner's manual.

Example:

- Coolant
- Engine oil

Related information

Related information refers to other articles containing closely associated information.

Images

The manual's images are sometimes schematic and may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

To be continued

▸▸ This symbol is located furthest down to the right when an article continues on the following page.

Continued from previous page

◂◂ This symbol is located furthest up to the left when an article continues from the previous page.

Related information

- Digital owner's manual in the car (p. 13)
- Owner's Manual in mobile devices (p. 15)
- Support and information about the car on the Internet (p. 15)

Recording data

As part of Volvo's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How the various systems in the car worked
- Whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- The driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- The travel speed of the vehicle

This information can help us better understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's driver support function (e.g. City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Volvo to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Volvo cars.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Volvo may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Volvo and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo dealer.

Important information on accessories, extra equipment and diagnostic socket

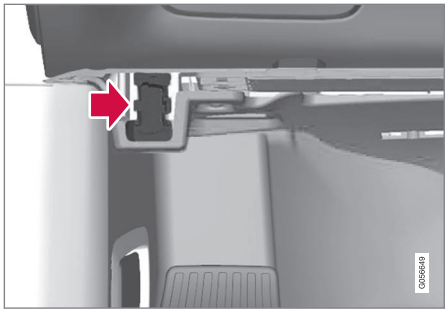
Incorrect connection and installation of accessories, extra equipment or software/diagnostic tools may have a negative effect on the car's electronic system.

Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system. Volvo therefore recommends always making contact with an authorised Volvo workshop before the installation of accessories or extra equipment that are connected to or affect the electrical system.

Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket

WARNING

Volvo Cars accepts no responsibility for the consequences of cases where non-authorised equipment is connected to the car's data link connector (On-Board-Diagnostics (OBD-II)).



The diagnostic socket is located under the instrument panel and on the same side as the steering wheel.

Volvo ID

Volvo ID provides access to a wide range of personalized Volvo services[4] online.

It is important to create a Volvo ID from the car, Volvo On Call mobile app[5] or My Volvo[6] . Some functions and services require the car to be registered to a personal Volvo ID. Registering the Volvo ID to the car makes a wide range of Volvo services available directly from the car.

Examples of services:

- My Volvo - A personal web page for you and your car.
- Volvo On Call, VOC* - A Volvo ID is used when logging in to the Volvo On Call mobile app.
- Send to Car - Makes it possible to send an address from an Internet map service directly to the car.
- Book Service and Repair - Register your preferred workshop/dealer in My Volvo to be able to book service directly from the car.

Creating a Volvo ID

If there is already an existing Volvo ID, e.g. created in another car, please refer to the section "Registering your Volvo ID to the car".

4 The services available may vary over time and vary depending on equipment level and market.
5 If you have the Volvo On Call*, VOC option.
6 Available in certain markets.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

It is possible to create a Volvo ID in different ways. If the Volvo ID is created with My Volvo or the Volvo On Call mobile app, the Volvo ID must also be registered to the car to enable use of the various Volvo ID services.

In My Volvo[6]

1. Go to www.volvocars.com and navigate through to My Volvo.
2. Enter a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
   > A Volvo ID has now been created. Read below to learn how to register the ID to the car.

With Volvo On Call (VOC) mobile app[5]

1. Download the latest version of the VOC app from a smartphone, via e.g. App Store, Windows Phone or Google Play.
2. Choose to create a Volvo ID from the app's start page and enter a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
   > A Volvo ID has now been created. Read below to learn how to register the ID to the car.

Registering your Volvo ID to the car

If you created your Volvo ID via the web or the VOC app, register it to your car as follows:

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Remote update service** in the centre display's app view. Read "Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps" for more information about the download process.

NOTE

To download apps, the car must be connected to the Internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID/your email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the email address linked to your Volvo ID.
   > Your Volvo ID is now registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Creating and registering a Volvo ID for the car

1. If not done already, download the Volvo ID app from **Remote update service**.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
   > A Volvo ID has now been created and automatically registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Advantages of Volvo ID

- One user name and one password to access online services, i.e. only one username and one password to remember.
- If the username/password for a service (e.g. VOC) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services (e.g. My Volvo)

Related information

- Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps (p. 436)
- Connecting the car (p. 431)

6 Available in certain markets.
5 If you have the Volvo On Call*, VOC option.

Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure

Volvo Car Corporation is constantly working on the development of safer and more efficient products and solutions in order to reduce the negative impact on the environment.

Environmental care is one of Volvo Cars' core values and influences all operations. The environmental work is based on the whole life cycle of the car and takes into account the environmental impact it has, from design to scrapping and recycling. Volvo Cars' basic principle is that every new product developed must have less impact on the environment than the product it replaces.

Volvo's environmental management work has resulted in the development of more effective and less polluting drivelines Drive-E. Personal environment is also important to Volvo - the air inside a Volvo is, for example, cleaner than the air outside thanks to the climate control system.

Your Volvo complies with stringent international environmental standards. All Volvo's manufacturing units must be ISO 14001 certified, and this supports a systematic approach to the operation's environmental issues, which leads to continuous improvement with reduced environmental impact. Holding the ISO certificate also means that environmental laws and regulations in force are complied with. Volvo also requires that its partners must also meet these requirements.

Fuel consumption

Since a large part of a car's total environmental impact stems from its use, the emphasis of Volvo Cars' environmental work is on reducing fuel consumption, carbon dioxide emissions and other air pollutants. Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

Contributing to a better environment

An energy-efficient and fuel-efficient car not only contributes to a reduced impact on the environment, but also means reduced costs for the owner of the car. As the driver, it is easy to reduce fuel consumption and thereby save money and contribute to a better environment - here is some advice:

- Plan for an effective average speed. Speeds above approx. 80 km/h (approx. 50 mph) and below 50 km/h (approx. 30 mph) lead to increased energy consumption.
- Follow the Service and Warranty Booklet's recommended intervals for service and maintenance of the car.
- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Plan the journey - a lot of unnecessary stops and uneven speed contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- Use preconditioning* before starting in cold conditions - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather. The engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which decreases consumption and reduces emissions.

Also remember to always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oil, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Efficient emission control

Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment

A passenger compartment filter prevents dust and pollen from entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.

The Interior Air Quality System (IAQS)* ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*, which also includes a function that allows the fan to start when the car is unlocked with the remote control key.

Interior

The material used in the interior of a Volvo is carefully selected and has been tested in order to be pleasant and comfortable. Some of the details are hand-made, such as the seams of the steering wheel that are sewn by hand. The interior is monitored in order not to emit strong odours or substances that cause discomfort in the event of e.g. high heat and bright light.

Volvo workshops and the environment

Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you also contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of Volvo's system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which workshop premises shall be designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. The workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

Recycling

Since Volvo works from a life cycle perspective, it is also important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a dealer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

▸▸

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 369)
- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 29)
- Driving economically (p. 393)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 543)
- Air quality (p. 170)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

IntelliSafe-driver support

IntelliSafe is the Volvo Cars concept concerning car safety. It comprises a number of systems that contribute to making a car journey safe, to the prevention of injuries and to the protection of passengers from other road users.

Support

There are systems incorporated in IntelliSafe that help the driver to drive the car in a safe manner. The driver support functions incorporated in the car include e.g. the adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control)* that ensures that a constant distance is held between the car and the vehicle in front.

Park Assist Pilot* helps the driver park the car by sensing the area around it.

Other examples of systems that help the driver are the Active main beam, Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* and Blind Spot Information (BLIS)* systems.

Prevention

An example of a function that helps to prevent accidents is City Safety. The function warns the driver of risks of collision with another vehicle, pedestrians or cyclists. If the driver does not react to the warning and the risk of collision is imminent then City Safety can automatically brake the car.

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* is another example of a function that helps to prevent accidents by warning the driver and giving corrective steering interventions if the car is about to cross a lane side line.

Protection

The car is fitted with a seatbelt tensioner that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions to provide an even better protection. It is also fitted with airbags and an inflatable curtain for the driver and passengers.

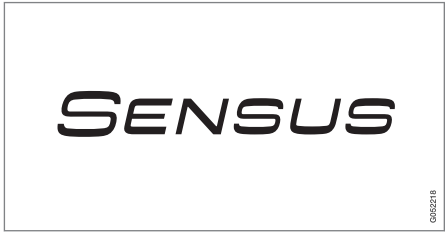
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 339)
- Activating/deactivating main beam (p. 131)
- Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 350)
- Blind Spot Information* (p. 347)
- City Safety (p. 310)
- Lane assistance* (p. 322)
- Roll Stability Control (p. 262)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)
- Safety (p. 52)
- Airbags (p. 58)

Sensus - connection and maintenance

Sensus makes it possible to surf the Internet, use different types of apps and make the car a Wi-Fi hotspot.

This is Sensus



Sensus offers an intelligent interface and online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary, without distracting the driver.

Sensus covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation* and the user interface between driver and car. It is Sensus that makes communication possible between you, the car and the outside world.

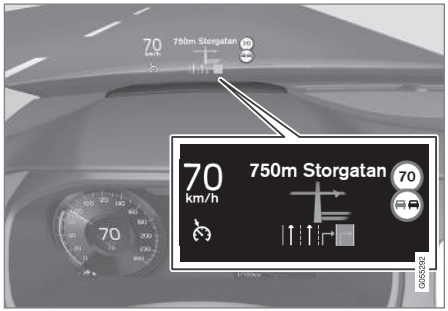
Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

Head-up-display*



The head-up display shows selected information that the driver should deal with as soon as possible. Such information includes traffic warnings, speed information and navigation* information. Road sign information and incoming phone calls are also shown in the head-up display. The display is operated via the right-hand steering wheel keypad and via the centre display.

Driver display

12-inch driver display.

8-inch driver display.

The driver display shows information on speed and e.g. incoming calls or song tracks being played. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.

Centre display

Many of the main functions of the car are controlled from the centre display, a touch screen which reacts to touch. The number of physical buttons and controls in the car is therefore minimal. The screen can even be operated while wearing gloves.

The climate control system, the entertainment system and seat position are controlled from here, for example. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

Voice recognition system

The voice recognition system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice recognition to play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

For more information about all functions/ systems, see the relevant section in the owner's manual or its supplement.

Related information

- Operating the centre display (p. 33)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 37)
- Head-up display* (p. 102)
- Driver display (p. 83)
- Voice recognition (p. 105)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

The owner's manual and the environment

The Owner's Manual is printed on paper originating from controlled forests.

The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)® symbol shows that the paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC®-certified forests or other controlled sources.

Related information

- Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure (p. 22)

Windows, glass and mirrors

The car contains controls for windows, glass and mirrors. Some of the windows in the car are reinforced with lamination, which makes the passenger compartment more soundproof, amongst other things.

Laminated glass

The windscreen and panorama* roof have laminated glass. The glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment. For other glass surfaces, except the rear window, laminated glass is an option.

The symbol is shown on the windows where the glass is laminated[7].

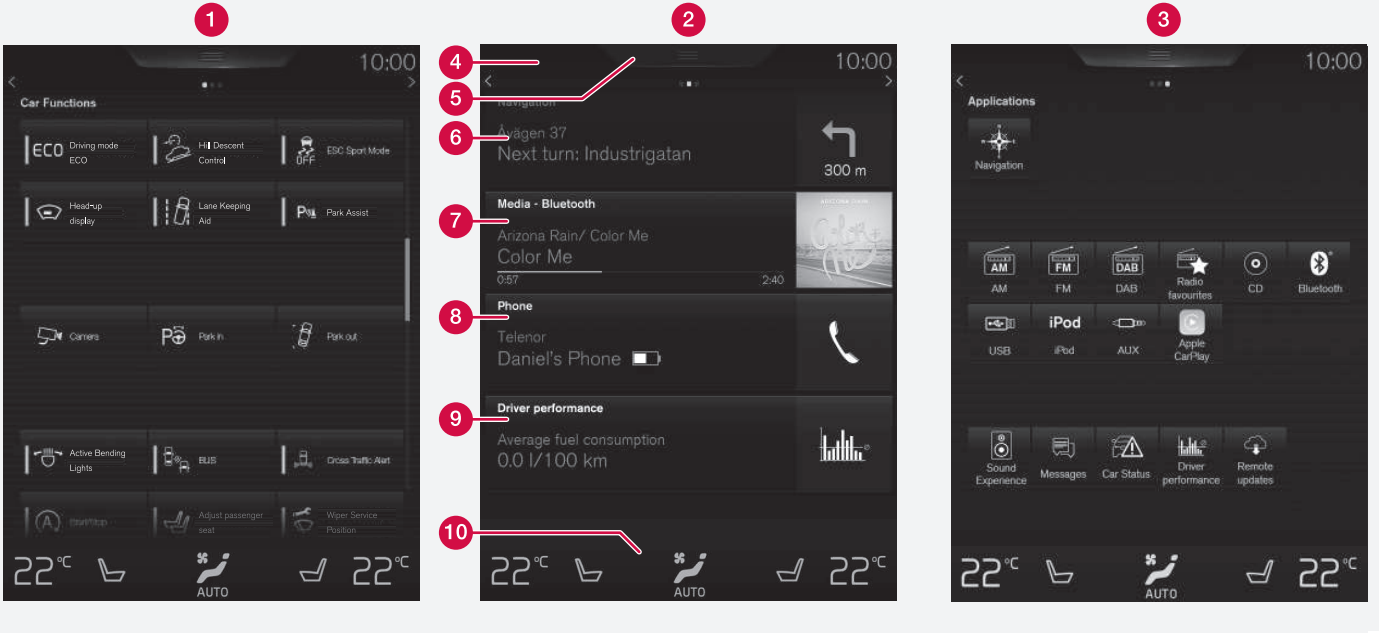
Related information

- Panorama roof* (p. 150)
- Power windows (p. 144)
- Activating/deactivating defrost of windows and mirrors (p. 180)
- Using the sun blind (p. 145)
- Interior rearview mirror (p. 147)
- Adjusting the door mirrors (p. 146)
- Head-up display* (p. 102)

[7] Does not apply to the windscreen or panorama roof* which are always laminated and thus do not have this symbol.

Overview of the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled from the centre display. Get an overview of the centre display and its features.



Three of the centre display's basic views. Swipe right or left to access the function or app view respectively[8].

1 Function view - car functions that are activated/deactivated with a press. Certain functions are also so-called trigger functions, which means they open a window with set-

8 The views are reversed for right-hand drive cars.

ting options. Examples of such are **Camera** and parking functions.

2. Home view - the first view that is shown when the screen is started.
3. Application view (app view) - apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**. Tap on an app icon to open the app.
4. Status bar - the activities in the car are shown right at the top of the screen. Network/connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication about on-going background activity are shown on the right.
5. Top view - drag the tab down in order to access the top view. **Settings**, **Owner's manual** and the car's saved messages are accessed from here.
6. Navigation - leads to map navigation. Tap on the subview to expand it.
7. Media - recently used apps associated with media. Tap on the subview to expand it.
8. Phone - the phone function can be reached from here. Tap on the subview to expand it.
9. Extra subview - recently used apps/car functions that do not belong in any of the other subviews. Tap on the subview to expand it.
10. Climate row - information and direct interaction to set temperature, seat heating level and fan level. Tap on the symbol in the centre of the climate row in order to open the climate view with more setting options.

Related information

- Operating the centre display (p. 33)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 37)
- Function view with buttons for car functions (p. 44)
- Changing settings for apps (p. 165)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Phone (p. 424)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 524)

Operating the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled and regulated from the centre display. The centre display is a touch screen that reacts to touch.

Using the touch screen functionality in the centre display

The screen reacts differently depending on whether you press, drag or swipe across it. Actions such as browsing between different views, marking objects, scrolling in a list and moving apps can be performed by touching the screen in different ways.

An infrared film enables the screen to detect a finger that is just in front of the screen. This technology makes it possible to use the screen even with gloves on.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust the climate for the driver and passenger side respectively.

IMPORTANT

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

The table below presents the different procedures for operating the screen:

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Press once.	Highlights an object, confirms a selection or activates a function.
	Press twice in quick succession.	Zooms in on a digital object, such as the map*.
	Press and hold.	Grabs an object. Can be used to move apps or map points on the map*. Press and hold your finger against the screen and at the same time drag the object to the desired location.
	Tap once with two fingers.	Zooms out from a digital object, such as the map*.

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Drag	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Hold depressed and drag in order to move apps or map points on the map*. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen.
	Swipe/drag quickly	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen.
	Drag apart	Zooms in.
	Drag together	Zooms out.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Returning to home view from another view

1. Briefly press the home button.
   > The last position of the home view is shown.
2. Briefly press again.
   > All subviews of the home view are set to their default mode.

NOTE

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Moving apps and buttons for car functions

The apps and buttons for car functions in the app view and function view respectively can be moved and organised as desired.

1. Tap on an app/button and hold depressed.
   > The app/button changes size and becomes slightly transparent. It is then possible to move it.
2. Drag the app/button downward to a vacant space in the view.

The maximum number of rows available for use in order to position apps/buttons is 48. To move an app/button outside the visible view, drag it to the bottom of the view. New rows are then added, where the app/button can be located.

An app/button can thus be located further down and is then not visible in the normal mode for the view.

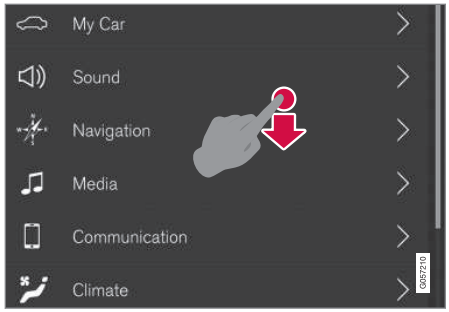
Swipe across the screen to scroll upward/downward in the view.

NOTE

Hide the apps that you rarely or never use by moving them to the bottom, off the visible screen. This way it will be easier to find the apps you use more often.

Scrolling in a list, article or view

When a scroll indicator is visible in the screen, it is possible to scroll downward or upward in the view. Swipe downwards/upwards anywhere in the view.



The scroll indicator appears in the centre display when it is possible to scroll in the view.

Using the controls in the centre display

Temperature control.

The control is used for many of the car's functions. Regulate e.g. temperature by means of one of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature,
- tap on +/– in order to raise/lower the temperature gradually, or
- tap on the desired temperature on the control.

Related information

- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 37)
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Sensus - connection and maintenance (p. 26)
- Remote control key range (p. 226)
- Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps (p. 436)
- Using the keyboard in the centre display (p. 46)
- Change settings for the centre display (p. 42)

Navigating in the centre display's views

There are five different basic views in the centre display: home view, top view, climate view, application view (app view) and function view. The screen is started automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view that is shown when the screen is started. It consists of four subviews: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and an extra subview.

An app/car function selected from the app/function view starts in the respective subview of the home view. For example **FM radio** starts in the **Media** subview.

The extra subview contains the last used app/car function that is not associated with any of the other three areas.

The subviews show brief information about each different app.

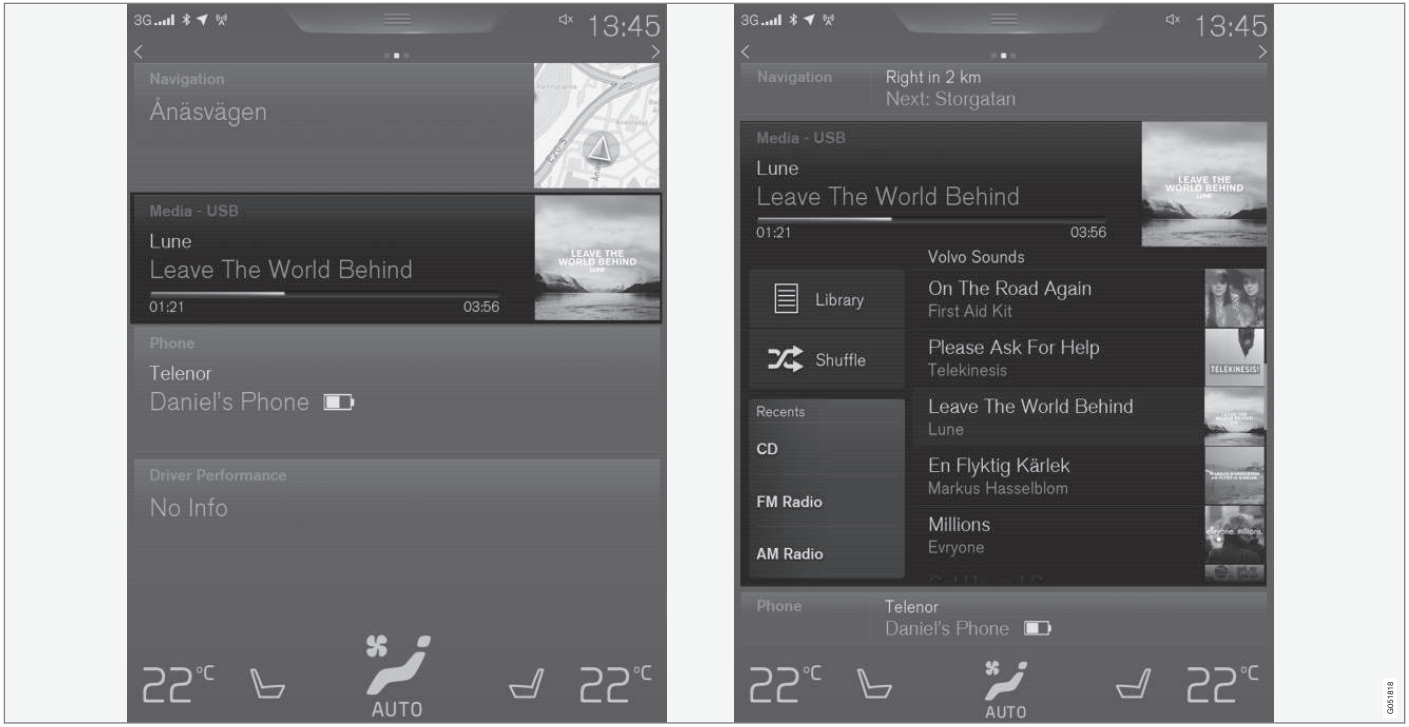
NOTE

The first time the car is used, some of the home view's subviews have no content.

NOTE

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Expanding a subview from default mode



Default mode and expanded mode of the media subview.

Expanding a subview:

– Press anywhere on the subview. When a subview is expanded, the fourth subview in the home view is temporarily forced away. The other two are minimised and only certain information is shown.

  The expanded view provides access to the basic functions of the app.

Closing an expanded subview:

– The subview can be closed in three different ways.
  - Tap on the upper part of the expanded subview.
  - Tap on another subview (that subview will then open in expanded mode instead).
  - Briefly press the physical home button below the centre display.

Opening/closing a subview in full screen mode

The extra subview and the subview for **Navigation** can be opened out in full screen mode, with even more information and more setting options.

When a new subview is opened in full-screen mode, no information from the other subviews is shown.

In expanded mode, open the app in full screen - press on the symbol.

Press on the symbol to go back to the expanded mode, or press the home button at the bottom of the screen.

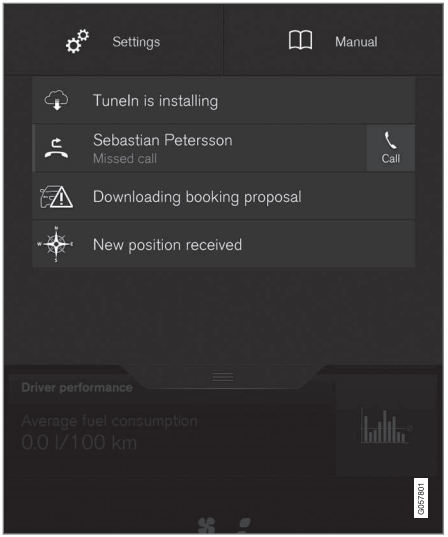
Home button for the centre display.

There is always the option to go back to home view by pressing the home button. Go back to the home view's standard view from full screen mode - press twice on the home button.

Status bar

The activities in the car are shown at the top of the screen. Network/connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication that background activity is in progress are shown on the right.

Top view



Top view dragged down.

A tab is located in the centre of the status bar at the top of the screen. Open the top view by pressing on the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.

In the top view, access is available to:

- **Settings**
- **Owner's manual**
- The car's saved messages.

Leave the top view - press outside the top view or press at the bottom of the top view and drag upward. The underlying view is then visible and available for use again.

NOTE

The top view is not available during starting/shutdown or when a message is shown on the screen. It is also not available when climate view is shown.

Go into the top view from an app

Drag down the top view when an app is running, e.g. FM radio:

- Press **FM Radio Settings** - settings that are associated with FM radio are shown.
- Press **FM Radio Manual** - an article that is associated with FM radio is opened.

This only applies to some of the apps in the car. For third party apps that are downloaded, it is not possible to access app-specific articles or settings, for example.

Climate view

The climate row is always visible at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature, seat heating and fan.

Press the symbol in the centre of the climate row to open the climate view and gain access to more climate settings.

Press the symbol to close the climate view and return to the previous view.

For more information on climate controls, see the section "Climate controls in the centre display".

Application view

Application view with the car's apps.

Swipe from right to left[9] across the screen in order to access the application view (app view) from the home view. Apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here. Certain apps show brief information directly in the

9 Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

app view, such as the number of unread text messages for **Messages**.

Tap on an app to open it. It then opens in the subview to which it belongs, such as **Media**.

Depending on the amount of apps, it is possible to scroll downward in the app view. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

To move an app:

1. Tap on the app and hold depressed.
   > The app becomes slightly transparent and larger when it is ready to be moved.
2. Drag the app to the desired location.

NOTE

Apps and car function buttons cannot be added to locations that are already occupied.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from left to right[9] across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

Function view

The function view with buttons for different car functions.

Swipe from left to right[9] across the screen in order to access the function view from the home view. From here you can activate/deactivate different car functions, e.g. **Lane Departure Warning**, **Lane Keeping Aid*** and **Park Assist***.

Depending on the amount of functions, it is also possible here to scroll downward in the view. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Unlike in app view, where an app is opened with a press, a function is activated/deactivated by pressing the relevant function button. Some functions (trigger functions) open in a new window when pressed. See the section "Function view with buttons for car functions".

Just as in app view, it is possible to move the function buttons around and arrange them in the desired order. See under the "Application view" heading above.

Related information

- Operating the centre display (p. 33)
- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)
- Function view with buttons for car functions (p. 44)
- Changing settings for apps (p. 165)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

9 Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar.

Symbol	Specification
R	Roaming activated.
	Signal strength in mobile phone network.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth activated but no device connected.
	Connected to Wi-Fi network.
	Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). The car then shares the available connection.
	Car modem activated.
	Connected to the Internet via USB.
3G	Connection type to mobile phone network (2G, 3G).

Symbol	Specification
	Remote diagnostics active.
	Process in progress.
	Preconditioning in progress.
	Audio source being played back.
	Audio source stopped.
	Phone call in progress.
	Audio source muted.
NEWS	News is received from the radio channel.
TP	Traffic information is received.
15:45	Clock.

Related information

- Messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 97)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 37)

Change settings for the centre display

The centre display is started automatically when the driver's door is opened. The settings can be changed for the centre display to personalise sound and themes. The screen can be switched off so as not to be disruptive whilst driving.

Turn off the screen and reactivate it

Home button for the centre display.

When the centre display is switched off, the screen is dimmed so as not to be disruptive whilst driving. The climate row will still be visible, and apps and other functions connected to the screen will continue to run.

1. Give a long press on the physical home button below the screen.
   > The screen goes dark except for the climate row, which continues to be shown. All functions continue to run, such as climate control, audio, guiding* and apps. In this mode, the screen can be cleaned with the cloth supplied; see the section "Cleaning the centre display".
2. Reactivate the screen - briefly tap on the home button.
   > The view that was displayed before the screen was switched off will be shown again.

NOTE

The screen cannot be deactivated when a prompt to perform an action is shown on the screen.

NOTE

The centre display deactivates automatically when the engine is off and the driver's door is opened.

Switching off/changing the system sounds volume in the centre display.

The system sounds volume in the centre display can be adjusted or switched off:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Sound** ➔ **System Volumes**.
3. Under **Screen Touch**, drag the control to change the volume/switch off screen touch sounds and **Keypad Touch** in order to adjust the volume/switch off screen keyboard touch sounds. Drag the control to the desired volume.

Changing the appearance of the screen

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Displays** ➔ **Themes**.
3. Then select theme, e.g. **Minimalistic** or **Chrome Rings**.

As a supplement to these appearances, it is possible to choose between **Normal** and **Bright**. With **Normal**, the screen background is dark and the text is light. This alternative is the default for all themes. A light variant can also be selected, in which the background is light and the text is dark. This alternative can be useful in e.g. strong daylight.

This alternative is always available for the user and is not affected by the surrounding lighting.

Related information

- Settings view (p. 161)
- Sensus - connection and maintenance (p. 26)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 524)
- Operating the centre display (p. 33)

Function view with buttons for car functions

All the buttons for car functions are located in the function view, one of the centre display's basic views. Navigate to the function view from home view by swiping from left to right across the screen[10].

Different types of buttons

There are three different types of buttons for car functions; see below:

Type of button	Property	Affects car function
Function buttons	Have on/off positions. When a function is running, an LED indicator illuminates to the left of the icon for the button. Press the button to activate/deactivate a function.	Most buttons in function view are function buttons.
Trigger buttons	Do not have on/off positions. When a trigger button is pressed, a window for the function opens. For example, it may be a window for changing a seat's position.	• **Camera** • **Headrest fold** • Functions for folding seats • **Head-up display adjustments**
Parking buttons	Have on, off and scan modes. Similar to the function buttons but with an extra position for parking scanning.	• **Park In** • **Park Out**

10 Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

The buttons' different modes

When the LED indicator illuminates in green on a function or parking button, the function is activated. When a function is activated, extra text with an explanation for certain functions is shown. The text is shown for a few seconds and then the button is shown with the LED indicator illuminated.

For **Lane Keeping Aid**, for example, the extra text **Works only at certain speeds** is shown when the button is pressed.

Briefly tap on the button once in order to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is deactivated when the LED indicator is extinguished.

When a warning triangle is shown in the right-hand section of the button there is something not working as intended.

Related information

- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 37)
- Categories in the settings view (p. 162)

Using the keyboard in the centre display

The centre display keyboard makes it possible make entries using keys. It is also possible to "draw in" letters and characters on the screen by hand.

Making entries with the keyboard

The keyboard can be used to enter characters, letters and numbers, e.g. to write text messages from the car, enter passwords or search for articles in the digital owner's manual.

The keyboard is only shown when entries can be made on the screen.

The image shows an overview of some of the buttons which may be shown in the keyboard. The appearance varies depending on language settings and the context in which the keyboard is being used.

1. Row of suggested words or pinyin words[11]. The suggested words are adjusted as new letters are being entered. Browse among the suggestions by pressing on the right and left arrows. Tap on a suggestion to select it. Note that this function is not supported by all language selections. If not available, the row will not be shown on the keyboard.
2. The characters available on the keyboard depend on which language was selected (see point 7). Tap on a character to enter it.
3. The button functions differently depending on the context in which the keyboard is used - either to enter **@** or **.com** or to **create a new row**.
4. Hides the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
5. Used to enter capital letters. Press again to enter one capital letter and then continue with lower-case letters. Another press makes all letters capital letters. The next press restores the keyboard to lower-case letters. In this mode, the first letter after a full stop, exclamation mark or question mark is a capital letter. The first letter in the text field is also a capital letter. In text fields intended for names or addresses, each word automatically starts with a capital letter. In text fields for password, web address or email address entry, all letters are automatically lower case unless otherwise set with the button.
6. Number entry. The keyboard (2) is then shown with numbers. Press ABC, which in number mode is shown instead of 123, to return to the letter keyboard, or #\~ to open the keyboard with special characters.
7. Changes text input language, e.g. **UK**. The available characters and word suggestions (1) vary depending on the selected language. Press to open a list of languages and then tap on the language to be used. To add additional languages in the keyboard - see the heading "Changing keyboard language" below.
8. Space.
9. Undoes entered text. Press briefly to delete one character at a time. Wait a moment before pressing again to delete the next character, etc.
10. Changes keyboard mode to write letters and characters by hand instead. Read more under the heading "Writing characters/ letters by hand on the screen".

Press the confirmation button above the keyboard (not visible in the image) to confirm the entered text. The appearance of the button differs depending on context.

Changing the keyboard language

To make it possible to switch between different languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under **Settings**.

Adding/deleting languages in settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same languages as the system language. The keyboard language can be manually adapted without affecting the system language.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Keyboard Layouts**.
3. Select one or more languages from the list.
   > It is now possible to switch between the selected languages directly from the keyboard.

If no languages have been actively selected under **Settings**, the keyboard uses the same language as the car's system language; see the section "Changing system settings in the settings view".

11 This applies when Japanese, Chinese or Taiwanese keyboards have been selected.

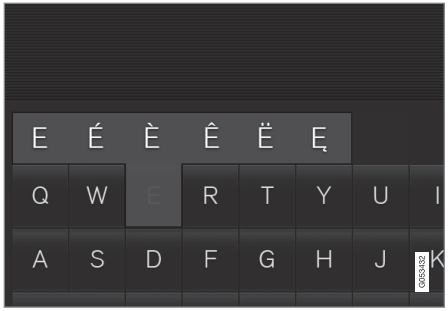
Switching between different languages in the keyboard

When a number of languages have been selected in **Settings**, the keyboard button (shown in context as number 7 in the illustration above) is used to switch between different languages.

To change keyboard language:

1. Press and hold the button (see image above).
   > A list opens.
2. Select the required language. If more than four languages have been selected under **Settings**, it is possible to scroll in the list from the keyboard.
   > The keyboard is adapted to the selected language and other word suggestions are given.

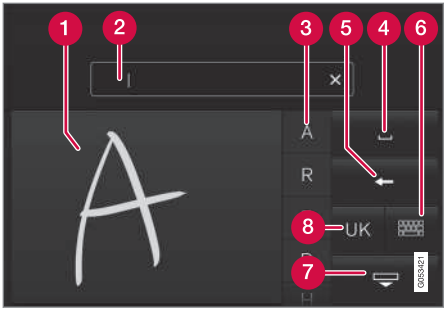
Variants of a letter or character



To enter a variant of a letter/character, e.g. **é** or **è**:

1. Press and hold the letter/character.
   > A box with possible variants of the letter/character opens.
2. Press the required variant. If none of the variants are selected, the original letter/character is entered.

Writing characters/letters by hand on the screen



1. Area for writing letters/characters.
2. Text field where letters/characters are entered as they are drawn out on the screen.
3. Suggested letters/characters. The list is scrollable.
4. Space.
5. Undo entered text. Press briefly to delete one letter/character at a time. Wait a moment before pressing again to delete the next letter/character, etc.
6. Return to the keyboard with regular character input.
7. Hide the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
8. Change text input language.

Writing characters/letters by hand

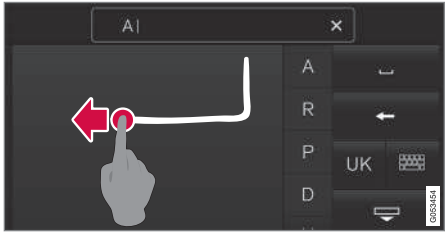
1. Write a character/letter in the area for handwritten letters (1).
   > A number of suggested characters or letters is shown (3). The most likely choice is found at the top of the list.
2. Enter the character/letter by waiting a moment.
   > The character/letter at the top of the list is entered. It is also possible to select a different character by pressing the required character/letter in the list.

Deleting/changing characters/letters written by hand

Delete all characters in the text field (2) by swiping across the handwriting field (1).

– There are several options for deleting/changing characters/letters:
  - Press the intended letter in the list (3).
  - Press the text undo button (5) to delete the letter and begin again.
  - Swipe horizontally from right to left[12] over the area for handwritten letters (1). Delete multiple letters by swiping over the area several times.
  - Pressing the X in the text field (2) deletes all of the entered text.

Changing row in the free text field with handwriting



Change row by hand by drawing the above character in the handwriting field[13].

Related information

- Settings view (p. 161)
- Operating the centre display (p. 33)
- Managing text messages (p. 428)
- Changing system settings in the settings view (p. 163)

12 For Arabic keyboard - swipe in the opposite direction. Swiping from right to left creates a space.
13 For Arabic keyboards - draw the same character, but reversed.

SAFETY

Safety

The vehicle is equipped with several safety systems that work together to protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The car is equipped with a number of sensors that react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as different types of airbags and seatbelt tensioners. Depending on the specific accident situation, such as collisions at different angles, rollover or driving off the road, the systems react in different ways to provide the best protection.

There are also purely mechanical safety systems such as Whiplash Protection System. The car is also constructed so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to beams, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

The car's safety mode may be activated after a collision if an important function in the car has been damaged.

Warning symbol in driver display

The warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display when the car's electrical system is set in ignition position **II**. The symbol is extinguished after approx. 6 seconds if the car's safety system is fault-free.

WARNING

If the warning symbol remains illuminated or is switched on during driving and the message **SRS airbag Service urgent Drive to workshop** is shown in the driver display, it means that part of one of the safety systems does not have full functionality. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted as soon as possible.

If the specific warning symbol is broken then the general warning symbol is illuminated instead and the driver display shows the same message.

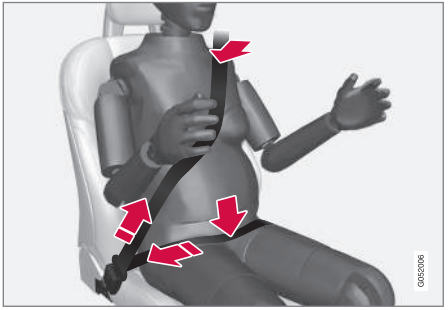
Related information

- Safety during pregnancy (p. 52)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)
- Airbags (p. 58)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 53)
- Safety mode (p. 64)
- Child safety (p. 66)

Safety during pregnancy

It is important that the seatbelt is used correctly during pregnancy, and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position.

Seatbelt



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

Seating position

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehi-

cle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Related information

- Safety (p. 52)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)
- Manual front seat (p. 110)
- Power front seat* (p. 111)

Whiplash Protection System

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) is a protection against whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy-absorbing backrests and seat cushions, and specially designed head restraints in the front seats.

WHIPS is deployed in the event of a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

When WHIPS is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. This reduces the risk of whiplash injury.

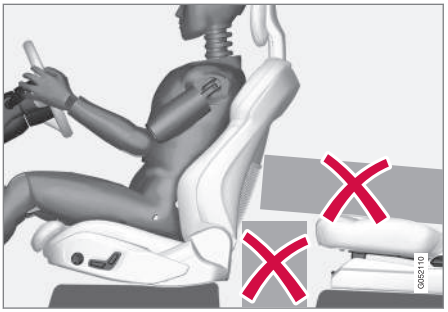
WARNING

WHIPS is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the front seats have been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the seats must be replaced. Some of the seats' protective properties may have been lost even if they do not appear damaged.



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or in the seat row behind the driver's seat/passenger seat that may prevent WHIPS from functioning.

WARNING

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is folded down, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not make contact with the folded backrest.

Seating position

For optimum protection from WHIPS the driver and passenger must have the correct seating

position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Set the correct seating position in the front seat before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by WHIPS.

A child seat/booster cushion can be placed on the front passenger seat provided that the car does not have an activated airbag on the front passenger side.

Related information

- Safety (p. 52)
- Manual front seat (p. 110)
- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 319)

Seatbelt

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide maximum protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

WARNING

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

- Safety (p. 52)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)
- Fastening/unfastening a seatbelt (p. 56)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 57)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Seatbelt tensioner

The car is fitted with pyrotechnic and electric seatbelt tensioners that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions.

Seatbelt tensioner during collision

All the seatbelts are equipped with a pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioner.

The pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioner tensions the seatbelt in the event of a collision with sufficient force in order to more effectively restrain the occupant.

Seatbelt tensioner during critical situations

The driver and front passenger seatbelts are equipped with an electric seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt tensioners work together and can be activated together with the driver support systems City Safety and Rear Collision Warning. In critical situations, such as panic braking, sharp evasive action, driving off the road (e.g. the car rolls over into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits some off-road object), skidding, or risk of collision, the seatbelt can be tensioned by the seatbelt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seatbelt tensioner adjusts the occupant to a better position, reducing the risk of striking the car's interior and improving the effect of safety systems, such as the car's airbags.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner

Once the critical situation has passed, the seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset automatically.

If the belt still remains tensioned:

1. Stop the car at a safe place.
2. Unfasten the seatbelt and then refasten it.
   > The seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

- Seatbelt (p. 54)
- Fastening/unfastening a seatbelt (p. 56)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 57)
- City Safety (p. 310)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 319)
- Activating/deactivating the passenger airbag* (p. 61)

Fastening/unfastening a seatbelt

Make sure that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts before starting to drive.

Fastening a seatbelt

1. Pull out the seatbelt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

   Make sure that the seatbelt is correctly in the belt guide available for the second seat row's centre seat.

NOTE

The seatbelt locks and cannot be withdrawn:

- if it is pulled out too quickly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the car leans heavily.

2. Lock the belt by inserting the locking tab in the intended buckle.

   > A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.

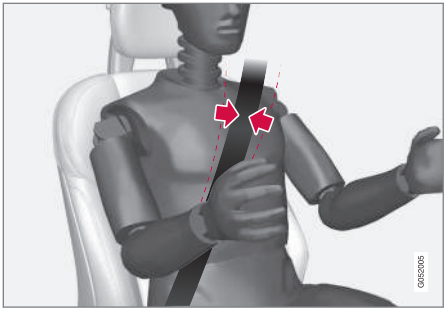
WARNING

Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. The seatbelts and buckles would otherwise possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

3. In the front seats and in the outer seats in the second seat row the seatbelt can be adjusted for height.

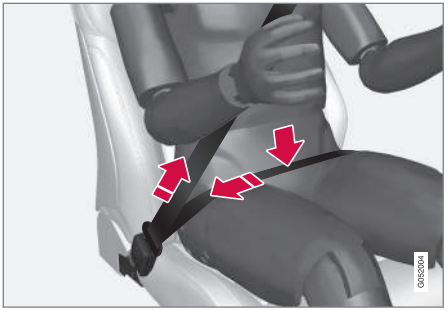
Press together the seat mounting and move the seatbelt up or down.

Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.



The seatbelt must pass over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

4. Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.



The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).

WARNING

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

WARNING

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

Unfastening a seatbelt

1. Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract.
2. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

   Make sure that the seatbelt is correctly in the belt guide available for the second seat row's centre seat.

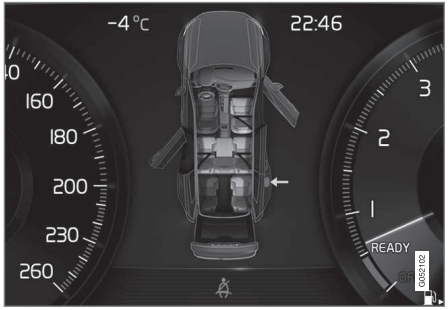
Related information

- Seatbelt (p. 54)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 57)

Door and seatbelt reminder

The system reminds unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt, and also warns about an open door, bonnet, tailgate or fuel filler flap.

Driver display graphics



Graphics in the driver display with different types of warnings. The warning colour on the door and tailgate is dependent on the vehicle's speed.

The driver display's graphics show which seats in the car are occupied by belted and unbelted passengers.

The same graphic also shows if the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or any door is open.

The graphics are cleared automatically after approximately 30 seconds of driving, or by pressing on the right-hand the steering wheel keypad's **O** button.

Seatbelt reminder

Visual reminder in the roof console.

A visual reminder is given in the roof console and by means of the warning symbol in the driver display.

The acoustic reminder is dependent on speed, driving time and distance.

The belt status of the driver and passengers is shown in the driver display graphics when a belt is buckled or unbuckled.

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Front seat

A visual and acoustic reminder remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts are being used in the rear seat. The driver display's graphics are shown when the seatbelts are in use.
- Reminding that a seatbelt in the rear seat is unfastened during a journey by means of a visual and acoustic reminder. The reminder stops when the seatbelt is refastened, or it can be acknowledged manually by pressing the **O** button on the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Reminder for doors, bonnet, tailgate and fuel filler flap

If the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or a door is not closed properly, the driver display's graphics show what is open. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the source of the warning.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's warning symbol illuminates.

Related information

- Seatbelt (p. 54)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)
- Fastening/unfastening a seatbelt (p. 56)

Airbags

The car is equipped with airbags and inflatable curtains for driver and passengers.

WARNING

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the starter battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Deployed airbags

If any of the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.

⚠ WARNING

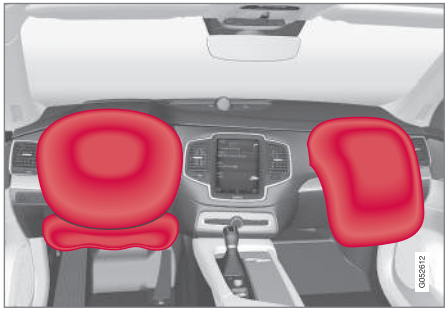
Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

Related information

- Safety (p. 52)
- Driver and passenger airbags (p. 59)
- Side airbag (p. 63)
- Inflatable curtain (p. 64)

Driver and passenger airbags

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with airbags on the driver and passenger sides in the front seat.



Driver and passenger airbags.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbags help to protect the head, face and chest of the driver and passenger as well as the knees and legs of the driver.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag/airbags is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

NOTE

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

⚠ WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Driver airbags

Airbag in the steering wheel

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked **AIRBAG**.

Knee airbag

The airbag is folded up in the lower part of the instrument panel on the driver's side. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

WARNING

Do not place or attach any object on the top or front of the panel where the knee airbag is stowed.

Passenger airbag

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

WARNING

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

WARNING

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never sit a child on a booster cushion, in a child seat or in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 58)
- Activating/deactivating the passenger airbag* (p. 61)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

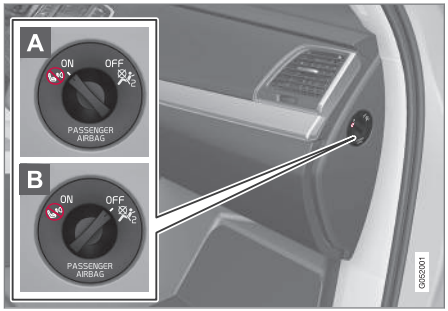
Activating/deactivating the passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

Switch

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



A **ON** - the airbag is activated and adults can sit safely in the passenger seat.

B **OFF** - The airbag is deactivated and children can sit safely in the passenger seat.

WARNING

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating the passenger airbag

1 Pull the switch outward and turn from **OFF** (B) to **ON** (A).

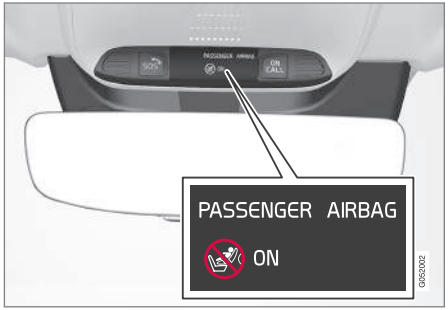
> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on Please acknowledge**.

NOTE

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

▶▶

2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.



> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

WARNING

Never sit a child on a booster cushion, in a child seat or in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Deactivating the passenger airbag

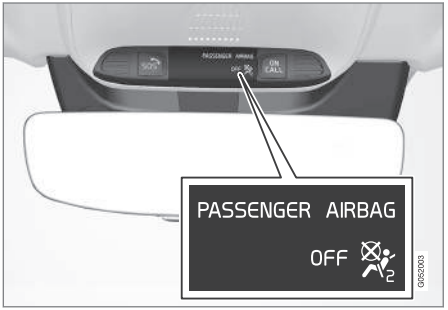
1 Pull the switch outward and turn from **ON** (A) to **OFF** (B).

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off Please acknowledge**.

NOTE

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.



> A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

WARNING

No one taller than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Do not allow anyone to sit in the front passenger seat if the message in the roof console indicates that the airbag is deactivated and if at the same time this symbol and the message **SRS airbag Service urgent Drive to workshop** are shown in the driver display. This indicates that a serious malfunction has occurred. Visit a workshop as soon as possible. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Related information

- Driver and passenger airbags (p. 59)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)

Side airbag

The side airbags on the driver and passenger seats protect the chest and hip in the event of a collision.

The side airbags are fitted in the outer backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.

Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.

WARNING

Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Side airbag and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

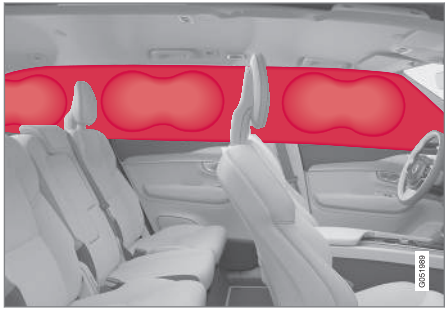
A child seat/booster cushion can be placed on the front passenger seat provided that the car does not have an activated airbag on the front passenger side.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 58)

Inflatable curtain

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



The inflatable curtain is mounted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and outer seat passengers of the car. The panels are labelled with **IC AIRBAG**.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hooks are only designed for light coats and jackets (not for solid objects such as umbrellas).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends only using Volvo genuine parts that are approved for fitting within these areas.

WARNING

Leave 10 cm space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

WARNING

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 58)

Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been involved in a collision, the text **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is shown in the driver display together with the warning symbol. This means that the car has reduced functionality.

If the car is set in safety mode, it is possible to try to reset the system and then start and move the car from a dangerous position.

WARNING

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends that engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information
- Safety (p. 52)
- Starting/moving the car after safety mode (p. 65)

Starting/moving the car after safety mode

If the car is set in safety mode, it is possible to try to start and then move the car from a dangerous position.

Starting the car after safety mode

1. First, check that no fuel is leaking from the car. There must be no smell of fuel either.

   If everything seems normal and you have checked for indications of fuel leakage, you may attempt to start the car.

WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

2. Turn the start knob to **STOP** and release it.
3. Then try to start the car.
   > The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status.

IMPORTANT

If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** is shown in the driver display after a start attempt, the car can be moved carefully out of a dangerous position.
2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information
- Safety mode (p. 64)

Child safety

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats, booster cushions and attachment devices) which is designed for fitting in this particular car.

Using Volvo's child safety equipment, the optimum conditions are obtained for the child to travel safely in the car. In addition, the child safety equipment fits well and is simple to use.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Volvo recommends that children travel in rear-facing child seats until as late an age as possible, at least up to 3-4 years of age, and then in front-facing booster cushions/child seats up to 10 years of age.

NOTE

In the event of questions when fitting child safety products, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Related information

- Safety (p. 52)
- Child seats (p. 66)
- Integrated booster cushion* (p. 76)

Child seats

The position of a child in the car and the choice of equipment are dictated by the child's weight and size.

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is being used correctly.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

NOTE

When using child safety products it is important to read the installation instructions included.

Location of child seats

Child seats and airbags are not compatible.

Always place child seats/booster cushions in the second or third* seat rows if the passenger seat airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the airbag in the passenger seat is deactivated, a child seat/booster cushion can be placed in the front passenger seat.

NOTE

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never sit a child on a booster cushion, in a child seat or in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Child seat installation

The following points are important to consider when a child seat is being fitted in the car.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

⚠ WARNING

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not secure the straps for the child seat into the seat's horizontal adjustment bar or in springs, rails or beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

Installation in the front seat

- Check that the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- ISOFIX child seats can only be fitted when the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console[1] accessory.
- Adjust the seat to its rearmost position. If a child seat is also used in the second row, then an exception can be made. In which case, always check that the child seat is still fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, Volvo recommends that the lower mounting points are used with these[1].
- The ISOFIX guide can be used in order to facilitate child seat installation.

Installation in the second seat row

- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved[2] or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- A child seat with support legs must not be fitted in the centre seat.
- The outer seats are equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and are approved for i-Size[3].
- All seats are equipped with upper mounting points. Volvo recommends that child seat's upper straps should be pulled through the hole in the head restraint before being tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the seat manufacturer.
- In cars with a third seat row*, the second seat row must be adjusted to its rearmost position. If a child seat is also used in the third row then an exception can be made. In which case, always check that the child seat is still fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, never adjust the position of the seat in front after the straps have been fitted in the lower mounting points. Always remember to remove the lower straps when the child seat is not installed.
- The ISOFIX guide must not be used when fitting child seats.

Installation in the third seat row*

- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- Child seats with support legs must not be fitted in the third row of seats.
- If necessary, adjust the second seat row forward in order to make enough space. If a child seat is also fitted on the second seat row, check that the child seat is still fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1 The accessory range varies depending on market.
2 Does not apply to the centre seat.
3 Varies depending on market.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Related information

- Child safety (p. 66)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 68)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 69)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points (p. 72)
- Activating/deactivating the passenger airbag* (p. 61)

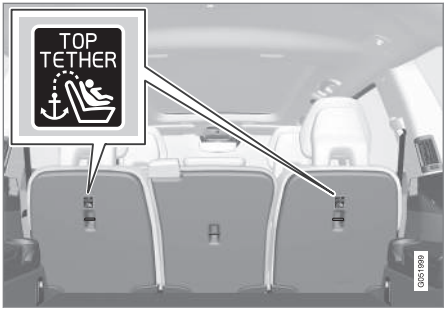
Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats on the outer second row seats.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the upper mounting points.

The location of the mounting points



Mounting point locations are indicated by symbols on the rear of the backrest.

The mounting points are located on the rear of the outer second row seats.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

WARNING

The child seat's upper straps must be routed through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the seat manufacturer.

NOTE

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats.

NOTE

In cars with a cargo cover over the luggage compartment, this must be removed before child seats can be attached to the securing points.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 66)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 69)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points (p. 72)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 70)

Lower mounting points for child seats

The vehicle is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the second row of seats.

The lower mounting points are designed to be used in conjunction with certain rear-facing child seats.

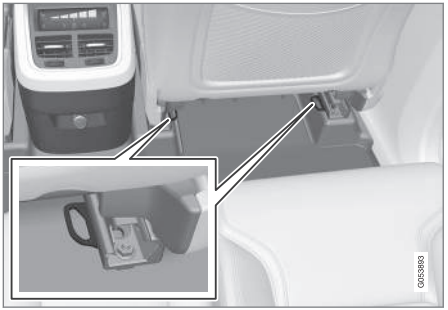
Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the lower mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations in the front seat.

The mounting points in the front seat are located on the sides of the passenger seat's legroom.

The mounting points in the front seat are only mounted if the vehicle is equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag*.



Mounting point locations in the second row of seats.

The mounting points in the second row of seats are located on the rear section of the front seat's floor rails.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 66)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 68)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points (p. 72)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 70)
- Activating/deactivating the passenger airbag* (p. 61)

Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts

The table gives a recommendation for which child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

NOTE

Always read the section "Child seats" before fitting a child seat in the car.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag)	Second row of seats, outer seat	Second row of seats, centre seat	Third seat row*
Group 0 max 10 kg	U[A, B], L	U[B], L	L[B]	U, L
Group 0+ max 13 kg	U[A, B], L	U[B], L	L[B]	U, L
Group 1 9-18 kg	U[A], L[C]	U, L[C]	L	U, L
Group 2 15-25 kg	U[A, D], L[C]	U[D], L[C]	B*[, E], L[D]	U[D], L

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag)	Second row of seats, outer seat	Second row of seats, centre seat	Third seat row*
Group 3 22-36 kg	U[A, F], L	U[F], L	B*[, E], L[F]	U[F], L

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

B: Built-in restraint approved for this mass group.

A Move the backrest of the seat to the upright position.
B Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat (type approval E1 04301146).
C Volvo recommends: Volvo reversible seat in the rear-facing position (type approval E5 04192).
D Volvo recommends: Volvo reversible seat in the rear-facing position (type approval E5 04192); booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster cushion with backrest (type approval E1 04301169).
E Volvo recommends: Integrated booster cushion (type approval E5 04218).
F Volvo recommends: booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster cushion with backrest (type approval E1 04301169).

WARNING

Never place the child in the passenger seat if the car is fitted with an activated airbag.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 66)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 68)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 73)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 75)

i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points

The vehicle is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX[4] mounting points for child seats in the second row of seats.

i-Size/ISOFIX is a fixture system for car child seats that is based on an international standard.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations are indicated by symbols[4] on the upholstery of the backrest.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX are concealed behind the lower section of the second seat row's backrest, in the outer seats.

Press the seat cushion down to access the mounting points.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 66)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 68)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 69)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 75)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 73)

4 Name and symbol depending on market.

Table for location of ISOFIX child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which ISOFIX child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R44 and the car model must be included in the manufacturer's vehicle list.

NOTE

Always read the section "Child seats" before fitting a child seat in the car.

Weight	Size class[A]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag)[B]	Second row of seats, outer seat	Second row of seats, centre seat	Third seat row*
Group 0 max 10 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL[B, C], X[D]	IL[C]	X	X
Group 0+ max 13 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL[B, C], X[D]	IL[C]	X	X
	C	Rear-facing child seat				
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

Weight	Size class[A]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag)[B]	Second row of seats, outer seat	Second row of seats, centre seat	Third seat row*
Group 1 9-18 kg	A	Front-facing child seat	IL[B, E], X[D]	IL[E], IUF[E]	X	X
	B	Front-facing child seat				
	B1	Front-facing child seat				
	C	Rear-facing child seat	IL[B], X[D]	IL[F]	X	X
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems. These child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.

A For child seats with the ISOFIX fixture system there is a size classification to help users choose the right type of child seat. The size class can be read on the child seat's label.
B Works for the installation of ISOFIX child seats that are semi-universally approved (IL) if the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console accessory (the accessory range varies depending on market).
C Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat secured using the ISOFIX fixture system (type approval E1 04301146).
D Applicable if the car is not fitted with an ISOFIX bracket.
E Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.
F Volvo recommends: BeSafe iZi Kid X3 ISOfix (type approval E5 04200).

WARNING

Never place the child in the passenger seat if the car is fitted with an activated airbag.

NOTE

If an i-Size/ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

NOTE

Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo dealer for information about which i-Size/ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 66)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points (p. 72)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 75)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 70)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Table for location of i-Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which i-Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

NOTE

Always read the section "Child seats" before fitting a child seat in the car.

Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag)	Second row of seats, outer seat	Second row of seats, centre seat	Third seat row*
i-Size child seats	X	i-U[A]	X	X
i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child seat, front-facing and rear-facing.				
X: Not suitable for universally approved child seats.				

[A] Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.

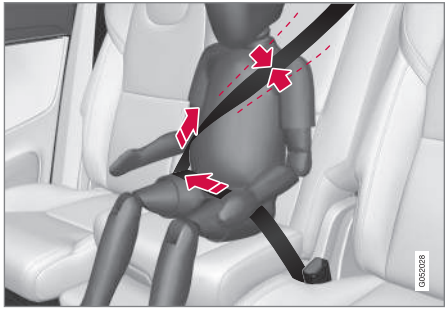
Related information

- Child seats (p. 66)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points (p. 72)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 73)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 70)

Integrated booster cushion*

The integrated booster cushion on the centre seat in the second seat row allows children to sit comfortably and safely.

The booster cushion is specially designed to provide optimum safety. In combination with the seatbelt it is approved for children who weigh between 15 and 36 kg and who are at least 97 cm in height.



Correct position, the seatbelt must pass over the shoulder.

Check before driving that:

- the integrated booster cushion is in locked mode
- the seatbelt is in contact with the child's body and is not slack or twisted
- the seatbelt does not lie across the child's throat or below the shoulder
- the lap section of the seatbelt is positioned low over the pelvis to provide optimal protection
- the head restraint is adjusted at the same height as the child's head, if possible, so that it covers the entire back of the head.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that repair or replacement is only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not make any modifications or additions to the booster cushion. If an integrated booster cushion has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire booster cushion must be replaced. Even if the booster cushion appears to be undamaged, it may not afford the same level of protection. The booster cushion must also be replaced if it is heavily worn.

WARNING

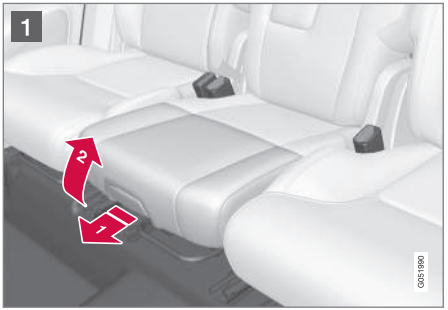
If the instructions for the integrated booster cushion are not followed then the child could sustain serious injury in the event of an accident.

Related information

- Child safety (p. 66)
- Folding up the integrated booster cushion* (p. 76)
- Folding down the integrated booster cushion* (p. 77)

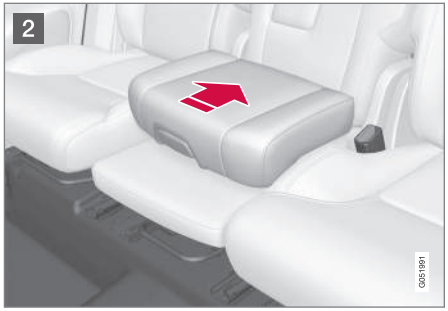
Folding up the integrated booster cushion*

The integrated booster cushion on the centre seat in the second seat row folds up for use.



1 Pull the handle forward and up in order to release the booster cushion.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



2 Press the booster cushion backwards to lock.

WARNING

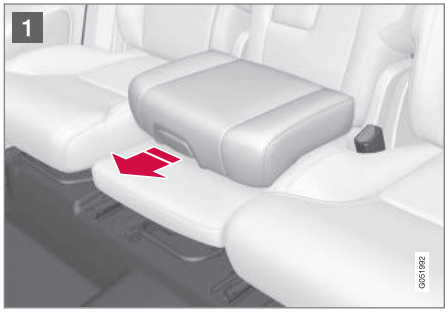
If the instructions for the integrated booster cushion are not followed then the child could sustain serious injury in the event of an accident.

Related information

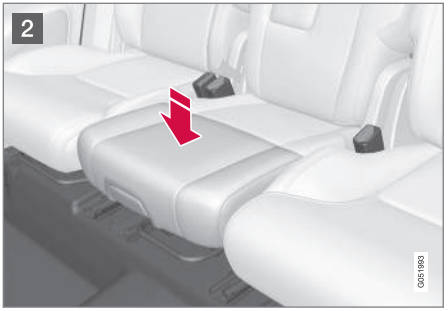
- Integrated booster cushion* (p. 76)
- Folding down the integrated booster cushion* (p. 77)

Folding down the integrated booster cushion*

The integrated booster cushion on the centre seat in the second seat row can be folded down when not in use.



1 Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion.



2 Press down with your hand in the centre of the cushion in order to lock it.

IMPORTANT

Check that there are no loose objects (e.g. toys) left behind in the space under the cushion before lowering.

NOTE

Before the rear backrest is lowered, the booster cushion must be lowered first.

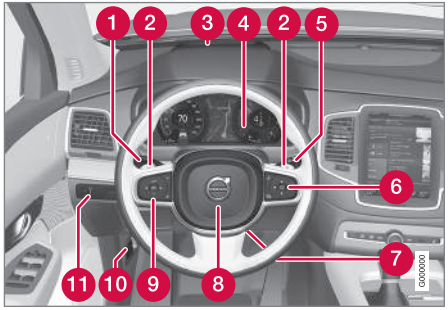
Related information

- Integrated booster cushion* (p. 76)
- Folding up the integrated booster cushion* (p. 76)

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Instruments and controls, left-hand drive car

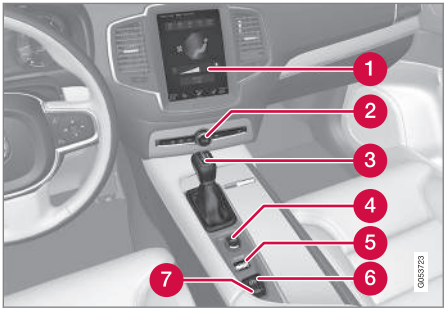
The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.



	Display/function/control
1	Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2	Manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox*
3	Head-up display*
4	Driver display
5	Wipers and washing, rain sensor*

	Display/function/control
6	Right-hand steering wheel keypad
7	Steering wheel adjustment
8	Horn
9	Left-hand steering wheel keypad
10	Bonnet opening
11	Display lighting, tailgate unlocking, tailgate opening/closing*, halogen headlamp levelling

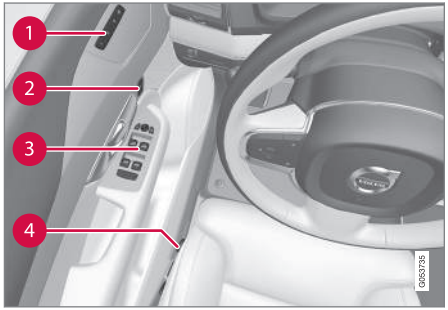
	Display/function/control
1	Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2	Panorama roof*
3	Display in roof console
4	Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror



	Display/function/control
1	Centre display
2	Hazard warning flashers, max defroster/heated windscreen*, media, glovebox door opening
3	Gear selector

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

	Display/function/control
4	Ignition dial
5	Drive modes*
6	Parking brake
7	Automatic braking when stationary

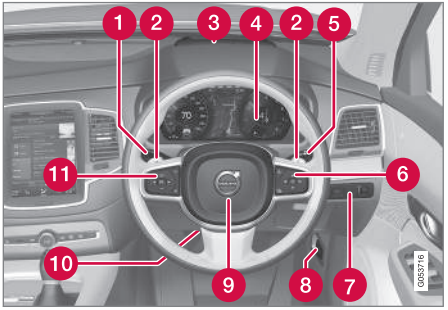


	Display/function/control
1	Memory for setup of: • power front seat* • Door mirrors • Head-up display*
2	Door opening, locking/unlocking of side doors and tailgate

	Display/function/control
3	Power windows, door mirrors
4	Adjusting front seat

Instruments and controls, right-hand drive car

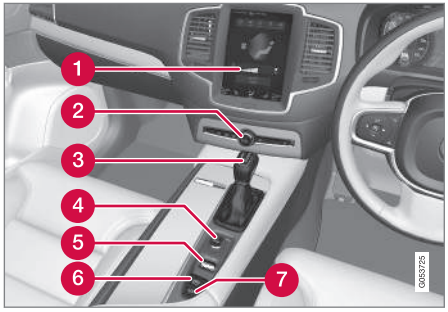
The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.



	Display/function/control
1	Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2	Manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox*
3	Head-up display*
4	Driver display
5	Wipers and washing, rain sensor*

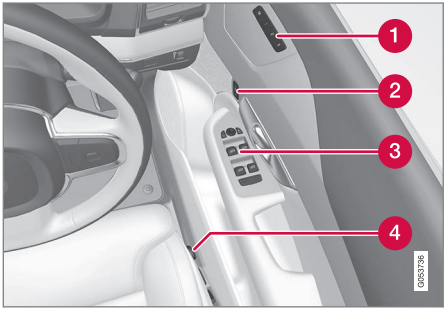
	Display/function/control
6	Right-hand steering wheel keypad
7	Display lighting, tailgate unlocking, tailgate opening/closing*, halogen headlamp levelling
8	Bonnet opening
9	Horn
10	Steering wheel adjustment
11	Left-hand steering wheel keypad

	Display/function/control
1	Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2	Panorama roof*
3	Display in roof console
4	Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror



	Display/function/control
1	Centre display
2	Hazard warning flashers, max defroster/heated windscreen*, media, glovebox door opening
3	Gear selector

	Display/function/control
4	Ignition dial
5	Drive modes*
6	Parking brake
7	Automatic braking when stationary



	Display/function/control
1	Memory for setup of: • power front seat* • Door mirrors • Head-up display*
2	Door opening, locking/unlocking of side doors and tailgate

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

	Display/function/control
3	Power windows, door mirrors
4	Adjusting front seat

Driver display

The driver display shows information about the car and driving.

The driver display contains gauges, indicators and indicator and warning symbols. The content of the driver display depends on the car's equipment, settings and which functions are active at that time.

The driver display is available in two versions, 12-inch and 8-inch.

WARNING

In the event of a fault in the driver display the information on e.g. brakes, airbags or other safety systems may not be shown. In which case, the driver cannot check the status of the car's systems or receive current warnings and information.

WARNING

If the driver display should extinguish, not illuminate on activation/start or be fully or partially illegible, the car must not be used. You should visit a workshop immediately. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.

Driver display, 12-inch

On the left

- Speedometer
- Trip meter
- Odometer
- Cruise control and speed limiter information
- Road sign information

In the middle
- Indicator and warning symbols
- Outside temperature gauge
- Clock
- Messages, in some cases with graphics
- Distance to empty tank
- Door and seatbelt information
- Compass
- Media player
- Navigation map
- Phone
- Voice recognition

On the right
- Tachometer (depending on selected drive mode).
- Fuel gauge
- Gear shift indicator
- Selected drive mode. Selectable drive modes are Comfort, Off Road, Eco, Dynamic and Individual
- ECO gauge (depending on drive mode selected)
- Status of the Start/Stop function
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)

Driver display, 8-inch

On the left
- Tachometer (depending on selected drive mode)
- Selected drive mode. Selectable drive modes are Comfort, Off Road, Eco, Dynamic and Individual
- Distance to empty tank
- Gear shift indicator
- Outside temperature gauge
- Indicator and warning symbols
- Fuel gauge
- ECO gauge (depending on drive mode selected)

In the middle
- Messages, in some cases with graphics
- Road sign information
- Speedometer
- Cruise control and speed limiter information
- Door and seatbelt information

On the right
- Compass
- Media player
- Phone
- Navigation information
- Clock
- App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Odometer
- Trip meter
- Indicator and warning symbols
- Voice recognition
- Engine temperature gauge

Activating the driver display

The driver display is activated as soon as a door is opened, i.e. in ignition position **0**. The driver display extinguishes after a while if it is not used. To reactivate it, proceed with one of the following:
- Depress the brake pedal
- Turn the ignition knob to ignition position to **I** or
- Open one of the doors.

Driver display settings

Some settings for what is shown in the driver display can be set in the app menu; see section "Application menu in the driver display".

The following settings can be made in the **Settings ➔ My Car ➔ Displays** menu in the top view of the centre display:

- **Driver Display Centre Area**. Select what is shown in the background of the driver display (**Show no information in background**, **Show information for current playing media** or **Show navigation even if no route is set**[1]). The 12-inch driver display shows the information in the centre and the 8-inch driver display shows the information in the top right-hand field.
- **Themes**. Select a theme (appearance) for the driver display (**Glass**, **Minimalistic**, **Performance** or **Chrome Rings**).

The system language can be changed in **Settings ➔ System ➔ Choose system language**. A change will affect the language in all displays.

Related information

- Indicator symbols in the driver display (p. 85)
- Warning symbols in the driver display (p. 87)
- Application menu in the driver display (p. 95)
- License agreement for the driver display (p. 90)

Indicator symbols in the driver display

The indicator symbols alert the driver that a function is activated, that a system is operating, or that a fault or abnormal condition exists.

Symbol	Specification
	**Information, read display text** When one of the car's systems does not behave as intended, this information symbol illuminates and a text appears on the driver display. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	**Fault in brake system** The symbol lights up when there is a fault in the parking brake.
	**ABS fault** If this symbol illuminates then the system is not working. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.

[1] The 8-inch driver display only shows guidance, the map is only shown in the 12-inch driver display. For more information, see the section "Displays and controls for map navigation" and "Map navigation in the driver display"

Symbol	Specification
	**Automatic brake on** The brake holds the car stationary when it has stopped. The symbol illuminates when the function is activated and the foot brake or parking brake is acting.
	**Tyre pressure system** The symbol illuminates when tyre pressure is too low. If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.
	**Emissions system** If the symbol illuminates after the engine has been started then it may be due to a fault in the car's emissions system. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Symbol	Specification
	**Left and right-hand direction indicator** The symbols flash when the direction indicators are used.
	**Position lamps/daytime running lights** The symbol lights up when the position lamps/daytime running lights are on.
	**ABL fault** The symbol illuminates if a fault has arisen in the ABL function (Active Bending Lights).
	**Active main beam on** The symbol lights up blue when the automatic main beam is on.
	**Active main beam off** The symbol lights up white when the automatic main beam is off.

Symbol	Specification
	**Main beam On** The symbol illuminates when main beam is on and with main beam flash.
	**Active main beam on** The symbol lights up blue when active main beam is on. Position lamps/daytime running lights are on.
	**Active main beam off** The symbol lights up white when active main beam is off. Position lamps/daytime running lights are on.
	**Main beam On** The symbol lights up when the main beam and position lamps/daytime running lights are on.
	**Front fog lamps on** This symbol illuminates when the front fog lamp is switched on.
	**Rear fog lamp on** This symbol illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

Symbol	Specification
	**Rain sensor on** This symbol illuminates when the rain sensor is on.
	**Preconditioning on** The symbol illuminates when the engine block and passenger compartment heater/air conditioning are preconditioning the car.
	**Stability system** A flashing symbol indicates that the stability system is operating. If the symbol illuminates with constant glow then there is a fault in the system.
	**Stability system, sport mode** Sport mode allows for a more active driving experience. The system then detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding of the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car. The symbol illuminates when the sport mode is activated.

Symbol	Specification
	**Lane assistance** White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected. Yellow symbol: Lane assistance warns/intervenes.
	**Lane assistance and rain sensor** White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Rain sensor is on. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected. Rain sensor is on.

Reminder for doors, bonnet, tailgate and fuel filler flap

If the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or door is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol and graphics illuminate in the driver display.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)
- Warning symbols in the driver display (p. 87)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 57)

Warning symbols in the driver display

The warning symbols alert the driver that an important function is activated or that a serious fault or condition exists.

WARNING

If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The loss of brake fluid must be investigated by a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

If the BRAKE and ABS symbols are lit at the same time, there is a risk that the rear end will skid during heavy braking.

Symbol	Specification
	**Warning** The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	**Seatbelt reminder** This symbol flashes if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.
	**Airbags** If the symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, a fault has been detected in one of the car's safety systems. Read the message in the driver display. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Symbol	Specification
	**Fault in brake system** If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Visit the nearest authorised workshop to have the brake fluid level checked and rectified.
	**Parking brake applied** This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied. A flashing symbol means that a fault has arisen. Read the message in the driver display.

Symbol	Specification
	**Low oil pressure** If this symbol illuminates during driving then the engine's oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol illuminates and the oil level is normal, contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	**Alternator not charging** This symbol illuminates during driving if a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Reminder for doors, bonnet, tailgate and fuel filler flap

If the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or door is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol and graphics illuminate in the driver display.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)
- Indicator symbols in the driver display (p. 85)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 57)
- Safety (p. 52)

Outside temperature gauge

The outside temperature gauge is shown in the driver display.

A sensor detects the temperature outside of the car.

Outside temperature gauge location in the driver display.

If the car has been stationary, the gauge may display a temperature reading that is too high.

When the outside temperature is within the range +2°C to -5°C, a snowflake symbol is shown in the driver display as a warning for potentially slippery conditions. The snowflake symbol is also illuminated briefly in the head-up display, if the car is equipped with one.

Outside temperature gauge setting

Change the unit for the temperature gauge via the centre display's top view.

- Select **Settings** ➔ **System** ➔ **Units** and select the required unit type, **Metric**, **Imperial** or **US**.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 169)

Clock

The clock is shown in both the driver display and the centre display.

Location

Clock location in the 12-inch and 8-inch driver display.

In the centre display, the clock is located at the top right of the status bar.

In certain situations, messages and information may cover the clock in the driver display.

Settings for time and date

Select **Settings** ➔ **System** ➔ **Date & Time** in the centre display's top view to change settings for time and date format.

Adjust time and date by pressing the up or down arrow on the touch screen.

Automatic time for cars with GPS

If the car is equipped with a navigation system then **Automatic Time** can be selected. The time zone is then adjusted automatically based on the location of the car. For certain types of navigation systems, the current location (country) must also be set to obtain the right time zone. If **Automatic Time** is not selected, time and data are adjusted with arrow up or arrow down on the touch screen.

Summer time

In certain countries, it is possible to select automatic setting of summer time with **Auto**. For other countries, summer time can be set with **On** or **Off**.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)
- Settings view (p. 161)

License agreement for the driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer/developer.

BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License

Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1990, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License

Copyright (c) 2011-2014, Yann Collet.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the organisation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derive from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

BSD 2-clause “Simplified” license

Copyright (c) **<**YEAR**>**, **<**OWNER**>** All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The views and conclusions contained in the software and documentation are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing official policies, either expressed or implied, of the FreeBSD Project.

FreeType Project License

1. 1 Copyright 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg Introduction The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free

software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we are be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. Legal Terms 0. Definitions Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType archive, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType project is copyright (C) 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below. 1. No Warranty THE FREETYPE ARCHIVE IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

2. Redistribution Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`licence.txt') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType code, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.
3. Advertising The names of FreeType's authors and contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'.
4. Contacts There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@freetype.org Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the

documentation. o devel@freetype.org Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. o http://www.freetype.org Holds the current FreeType web page, which will allow you to download our latest development version and read online documentation. You can also contact us individually at: David Turner <david.turner@freetype.org> Robert Wilhelm <robert.wilhelm@freetype.org> Werner Lemberg <werner.lemberg@freetype.org>

Libpng License

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence.

libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors

Simon-Pierre Cadieux

Eric S. Raymond

Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

Willem van Schaik

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler

Kevin Bracey

Sam Bushell

Magnus Holmgren

Greg Roelofs

Tom Tanner

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger

Dave Martindale

Guy Eric Schalnat

Paul Schmidt

Tim Wegner

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or

portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated.

A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson randeg@alum.rpi.edu
April 15, 2002

MIT License

Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

zlib License

The zlib/libpng License Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

SGI Free Software B License Version 2.0.

SGI FREE SOFTWARE LICENSE B (Version 2.0, Sept. 18, 2008)

Copyright (C) [dates of first publication] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person

obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)

Application menu in the driver display

Application menu (app menu) in the driver display provides quick access to commonly used functions for certain apps.

The app menu in the driver display can be used instead of using the centre display.

The app menu is shown in the driver display and is controlled using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The app menu makes it easy to switch between different apps or functions within the apps without having to let go of the steering wheel and take your eyes off the road.

App menu functions

Different apps give access to different types of functions. The following apps and their associated functions can be controlled from the app menu:

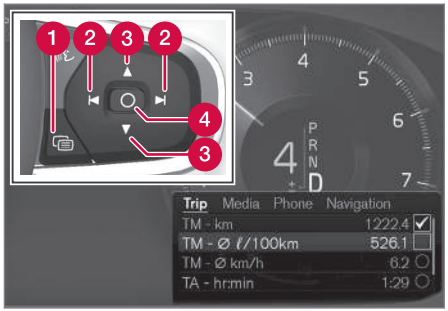
App	Functions
Trip computer	Selection of trip meter, selection of what to show in the driver display, etc.
Media player	Selection of active source for the media player.
Phone	Calling a contact from the call list.
Navigation	Pause guide, start guide to recently used destination, etc.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)
- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)
- Using the application menu in the driver display (p. 96)

Using the application menu in the driver display

The application menu (the app menu) in the driver display is operated with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.



The app menu and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

1. Open/close
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

Opening/closing the app menu

– Press on open/close (1).

(It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message must be confirmed before the app menu can be opened.)

> The app menu opens/closes.

The app menu closes automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain options have been selected.

Navigating and selecting in the app menu

1. Navigate between the different apps that are available by tapping on left or right (2).
   > Functions for previous/next app are shown in the app menu.
2. Browse through the functions for the selected app by tapping on up or down (3).
3. Confirm or highlight an option for the function by pressing on confirm (4).
   > The function is activated and for some options the app menu then closes.

If the app menu is opened again, the functions of the most recently selected app are shown first.

Related information

- Application menu in the driver display (p. 95)

Messages in the driver display and the centre display

The driver display and centre display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.

Driver display

Message in the driver display[2].

Message in the driver display[3].

The driver display shows messages that are of high priority for the driver.

The messages can be shown in different parts of the driver display depending on what other information is currently being displayed. After a while, or when the message has been acknowledged/action taken if required, the message disappears from the driver display. If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of important service messages and their meanings.

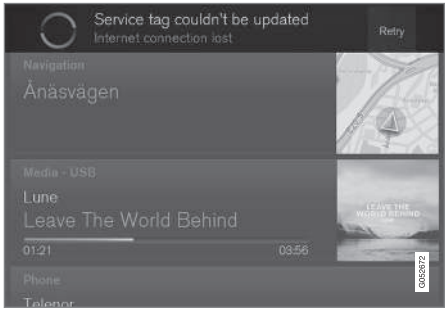
Message	Specification
Stop safely[A]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop[B].
Turn off engine[A]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop[B].
Service urgent Drive to workshop[A]	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car immediately.
Service required[A]	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car as soon as possible.
Regular maintenance **Book time for maintenance**	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B]. Shown before the next service date.
Regular maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B].

2 With 8-inch driver display.
3 With 12-inch driver display.

Message	Specification
Time for maintenance	Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance **Maintenance overdue**	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B]. Shown when the service date has passed.
Temporarily off[A]	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.

A Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.
B An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Centre display



Message in the centre display.

The centre display shows messages that are of lower priority for the driver.

Most messages are shown above the centre display's status bar. After a while, or when any required action related to the message has been taken, the message disappears from the status bar. If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or a button for activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Pop-up messages

In some cases, a message is shown in the form of a pop-up window. Pop-up messages have higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgement/action before they disappear. Messages that need to be saved are positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 83)
- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)
- Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 98)
- Managing messages saved from the driver display and centre display (p. 100)

Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display

Messages in the driver display and centre display are managed with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad and in the centre display's views.

Driver display

Message in the driver display[4] and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Message in the driver display[5] and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

1. Left/right
2. Confirm

Some messages in the driver display contain one or more buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

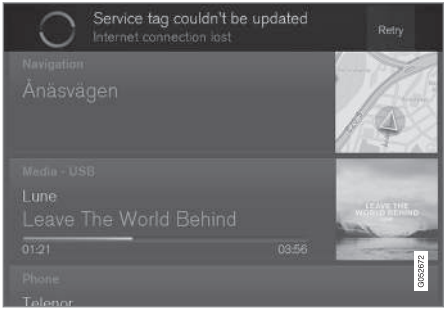
1. Navigate between the different buttons that are available by tapping on left or right (1).
2. Confirm the selection by pressing on confirm (2).
   > The message disappears from the driver display.

For messages without buttons:

– Close the message by pressing on confirm (2), or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
  > The message disappears from the driver display.

If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Centre display



Message in the centre display.

Some messages in the centre display have a button (or several buttons in the pop-up messages)

4 With 8-inch driver display.
5 With 12-inch driver display.

for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

– Press the button to perform the action or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
  > The message disappears from the status bar.

For messages without buttons:

– Close the message by tapping on it, or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
  > The message disappears from the status bar.

If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

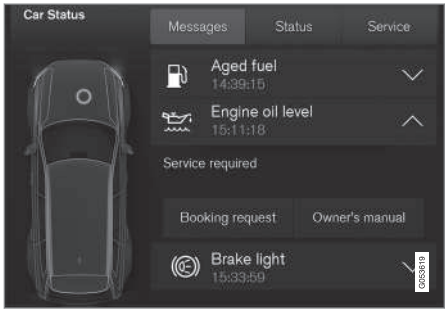
Related information

- Messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 97)
- Managing messages saved from the driver display and centre display (p. 100)

Managing messages saved from the driver display and centre display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.

Messages saved from the driver display



Saved messages and possible options in the **Car status** app.

Messages that are shown in the driver display and that need to be saved are added in the **Car status** app in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Reading a saved message

To read a saved message immediately:

– Press the button to the right of the **Car message stored in Car status application** message in the centre display.
  > The saved message is shown in the **Car status** app.

To read a saved message later:

1. Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display.
   > The app is opened in the bottom subview of the home view.
2. Select the **Messages** tab in the app.
   > A list of saved messages is shown.
3. Press on the arrow to the right to maximise/minimise a message.
   > More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

In maximised mode, some messages have two buttons available to book service or read the owner's manual.

To book service for a saved message:

– In maximised mode for the message, press **Request appoint.Call to make Appointment**[6] for help in booking service.
  > With **Request appoint.**: The **Appointments** tab opens in the app and creates a request to book service and repair work.

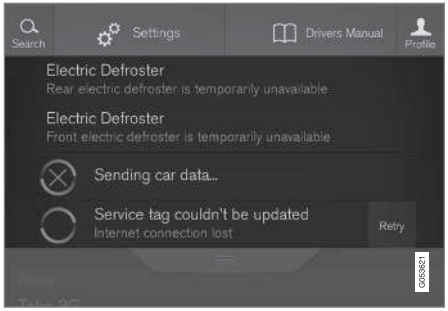
  With **Call to make Appointment**: The phone app is initiated and calls a service centre to book service and repair work.

To read the owner's manual for a saved message:

– In maximised mode for the message, press **Owner's manual** to read about the message in the owner's manual.
  > The owner's manual opens in the centre display and shows information linked to the message.

Saved messages in the app are deleted automatically each time the engine is started.

Messages saved from the centre display



Saved messages and possible options in the top view.

Messages that are shown in the centre display that need to be saved are added in the top view of the centre display.

Reading a saved message

1. Open the top view in the centre display.
   > A list of saved messages is shown. Messages with an arrow to the right can be maximised.
2. Press on the arrow to maximise/minimise the message.

Managing a saved message

Some messages have a button for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

– Press the button to perform the action.

Saved messages in the top view are deleted automatically when the car is switched off.

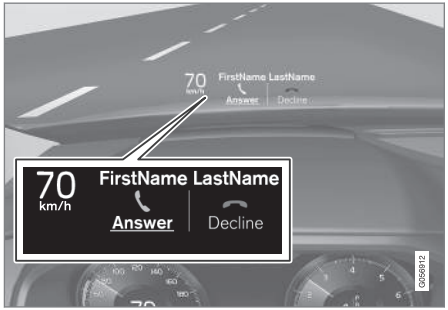
Related information

- Messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 97)
- Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 98)

6 Depending on market.

Head-up display*

The head-up display shows warnings and information relating to speed, cruise control functions, navigation, etc. in the driver's field of vision. Road sign information and incoming phone calls are also shown in the head-up display.

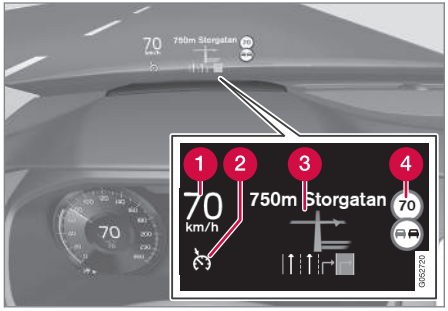


Incoming phone calls.

The head-up display supplements the car's driver display and projects information onto the windscreen. The projected image can only be seen from the driver position.

IMPORTANT

The display unit from which the information is projected is located in the instrument panel. To avoid damage to the display unit's cover glass - do not store any objects on the cover glass and make sure that no objects fall down onto it.



Examples of what can be shown in the display.

1. Speed
2. Cruise control
3. Navigation
4. Road signs

A number of symbols, e.g. the following, may be shown temporarily in the head-up display:

If the warning symbol illuminates - read the warning message in the driver display.

If the information symbol illuminates - read the message in the driver display.

NOTE

When City Safety* is activated, the information in the head-up display is replaced by a graphic for City Safety. This graphic is illuminated even if the head-up display is switched off.

The graphic for City Safety flashes in order to catch the driver's attention.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

The driver's ability to see the information in the head-up display is impaired by the following:

- use of polarising sunglasses
- a driving position which means that the driver is not sitting centred in the seat
- objects on the display unit's cover glass
- unfavourable light conditions.

NOTE

Certain visual defects may cause headaches and a feeling of stress during the use of the head-up display.

NOTE

Activation/deactivation and adjustment of the head-up-display can only be performed when it shows a projected image. The car's engine must be running.

Activating/deactivating the head-up display

This function can be activated/deactivated in two ways via the centre display:

Via the function view

Press the **Head-up display** button.

Via settings

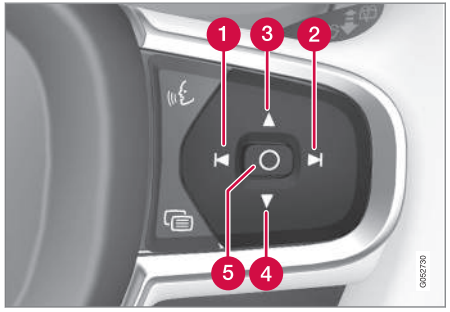
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Displays**.
3. Select/deselect **Head-Up Display**.

Selecting display options

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Displays** ➔ **Head-Up Display Options**.
3. Select **Show Navigation In Head-Up Display**, **Road Sign Information In Head-Up Display**, **Show Driver Support In Head-Up Display** or **Show Phone In Head-Up Display**.

Adjusting brightness and vertical position

1. Press the **Head-up display adjustments** button in the function view in the centre display.
2. Adjust the brightness and vertical position of the projected image in the driver's field of vision using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.



1. Reducing the brightness
2. Increasing the brightness

3. Raising the position
4. Lowering the position
5. Confirm

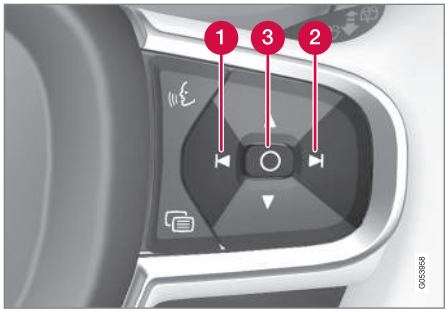
Adjusting the brightness
The brightness of the graphics is automatically adapted to their background light conditions. The brightness is also affected by the adjustment of the brightness in the car's other displays.

Memory function in power front seat*
The vertical position can be stored in the memory function of the power front seat.

Calibrate the horizontal position

The head-up display's horizontal position may need to be calibrated if the windscreen or display unit is replaced. Calibration means that the projected image is rotated clockwise or anticlockwise.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Select **My Car** ➔ **Displays** ➔ **Head-Up Display Calibration**.
3. Calibrate the image's horizontal position with the steering wheel's right keypad.



1. Rotate anticlockwise
2. Rotate clockwise
3. Confirm

Cleaning

Gently wipe the display's cover glass with a clean and dry microfibre cloth. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth.

Never use strong stain removers. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

Replacing the windscreen

Cars with head-up display are equipped with a special type of windscreen that meets the requirements for displaying the projected image.

When replacing the windscreen - contact an authorised workshop[7]. The correct version of the windscreen must be fitted in order that the head-up display's graphics shall be displayed correctly.

Related information

- Function view with buttons for car functions (p. 44)
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Steering wheel (p. 124)
- Using the memory function in the power front seat* (p. 112)
- Driver display (p. 83)

7 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

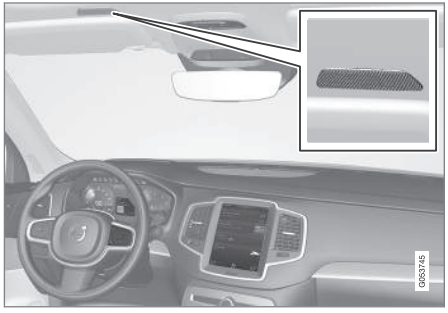
Voice recognition

The voice recognition system allows the driver to use voice recognition to control certain functions of the media player, Bluetooth-connected phone, the climate system and Volvo's navigation system*.

Voice commands offer convenience and help the driver to avoid being distracted, and instead concentrate on driving and focus attention on the road and the traffic conditions.

WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.



Voice recognition control takes place in dialogue form with spoken commands from the user and verbal response from the system. The voice recognition system uses the same microphone as the Bluetooth handsfree system and the voice recognition system's replies come via the car's speakers. In some cases, a text message is also shown in the driver display. Functions are controlled from the right-hand steering wheel keypad. Settings are made via the centre display.

System updating

The voice recognition system is continuously improved. Download updates for optimal performance, see support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Using voice recognition (p. 105)
- Voice recognition control of the phone (p. 107)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Voice recognition control of climate control (p. 108)
- Voice recognition and map navigation (p. 109)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)

Using voice recognition

Basic instructions for using voice recognition control.

Depress the steering wheel button for voice recognition to activate the system and initiate a dialogue using voice commands.

Remember the following during communication:

- For a command - speak after the tone in a normal voice at normal speed.
- Do not speak while the system is replying (the system cannot understand commands during this time).
- Avoid background noise in the passenger compartment by having the doors, windows and tailgate closed.

Voice recognition can be deactivated as follows:

- by saying "**Cancel**".
- with a long press on the voice recognition button on the steering wheel .

To speed up communication and skip the prompts from the system, press the steering wheel button for voice recognition when the system voice is speaking and say the next command.

Example of voice recognition control

Press , say "**Call [Forename] [Surname] [number category]**" - calls the selected contact from the phone book if the contact has more than one phone number (e.g. home, mobile, work), e.g.:

Press , say "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".

Commands/phrases

The following commands are always available for use:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the last voice instruction in the ongoing dialogue.
- "**Cancel**" - discontinue the dialogue
- "**Help**" - starts a help dialogue. The system replies with the commands available in the current situation, a prompt or an example.

Commands for specific functions are described in the corresponding sections, e.g. Voice recognition control of the phone.

Digits

The number commands are stated differently depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Phone numbers and postcodes** must be spoken individually, number by number, e.g. zero three one two two four four three (03122443).
- **House numbers** can be spoken individually or in groups, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For English and Dutch, several groups can be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple can be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers can be given within the range 0-2300.
- **Frequencies** can be spoken as ninety eight point eight (98.8), a hundred and four point two or hundred four point two (104.2).

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Voice recognition control of the phone (p. 107)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Voice recognition control of climate control (p. 108)
- Voice recognition and map navigation (p. 109)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)

Settings for voice recognition

Several settings for the voice recognition system can be made.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Voice Control** and select settings.
   - **Repeat Mode**
   - **Gender**
   - **Speech Rate**

Audio settings

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Sound** ➔ **System Volumes** ➔ **Voice Control** and select settings.

Change language

Voice recognition is not possible for all languages. Languages available for voice recognition are marked with an icon in the language list - .

Changing the language also affects menu, message and help texts.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Language** and select language.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Using voice recognition (p. 105)

Voice recognition control of the phone

Command for voice recognition control of a Bluetooth-connected mobile phone to e.g. call a contact, a number, or to listen to a message.

To specify a contact in the phone book, the voice recognition command must include contact information that is entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers then the number category can also be stated, e.g. **Home** or **Mobile**: **"Call Robin Smith Mobile"**.

Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- **"Call [contact]"** - dials the selected contact from the phone book.
- **"Call [phone number]"** - dials the phone number.
- **"Recent calls"** - displays the call list.
- **"Read message"** - message is read out. If there are several messages - select which message should be read out.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Using voice recognition (p. 105)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)

Voice recognition control of radio and media

Command for voice recognition control of radio and media player.

Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- **"Media"** - starts a dialogue for media and radio and shows examples of commands.
- **"Play [artist]"** - plays back music by the selected artist.
- **"Play [song title]"** - plays back the selected song.
- **"Play [song title] from [album]"** - plays back the selected song from the selected album.
- **"Play [TV channel name]"** - starts the selected TV channel.
- **"Play [radio station]"** - starts playing back the selected radio channel.
- **"Tune to [frequency]"** - starts the selected radio frequency in the current frequency band. If no radio source is active, the FM band is started by default.
- **"Tune to [frequency] [wavelength]"** - starts the selected radio frequency in the selected frequency band.
- **"Radio"** - starts FM radio.
- **"Radio FM"** - starts FM radio.
- **"Radio AM"** - starts AM radio.

- **"DAB "** - starts DAB radio.
- **"TV"** - starts playback from TV*.
- **"CD"** - starts playback from CD*.
- **"USB"** - starts playback from USB.
- **"iPod"** - starts playback from iPod.
- **"Bluetooth"** - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- **"Similar music"** — plays back music similar to the music currently playing back from USB devices.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Using voice recognition (p. 105)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)

Voice recognition control of climate control

Voice recognition commands for the climate control system to e.g. change temperature, activate a heated seat or change fan level.

Press and say one of the following commands:

- **"Climate"** - starts a dialogue for climate control and shows examples of commands.
- **"Set temperature to X degrees"** - sets the desired temperature.
- **"Raise temperature"/"Lower temperature"** - raise/lower the temperature setting one step.
- **"Sync temperature"** - synchronises the temperature for all climate zones in the car with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- **"Air on feet"/"Air on body"** - opens the desired air flow.
- **"Air on feet off"/"Air on body off"** - closes the desired air flow.
- **"Set fan to max"/"Turn off fan"** - changes the air flow to **Max/Off**.
- **"Raise fan speed"/"Lower fan speed"** - raises/lowers the fan level one step.
- **"Turn on auto"** - activates automatic climate regulation.
- **"Air condition on"/"Air condition off"** - activates/deactivates the air conditioning.
- **"Recirculation on"/"Recirculation off"** - activates/deactivates the air circulation.
- **"Turn on defroster "/"Turn off defroster"** - activates/deactivates defrosting of windows and mirrors.
- **"Turn on max defroster"/"Turn max defroster off"** - activates/deactivates the max defroster.
- **"Turn on electric defroster"/"Turn off electric defroster"** - activates/deactivates the heated windscreen*.
- **"Turn on rear defroster"/"Turn off rear defroster"** - activates/deactivates the heated rear window and door mirrors.
- **"Turn steering wheel heat on"/"Turn steering wheel heat off"** - activates/deactivates the heated steering wheel*.
- **"Raise steering wheel heat"/"Lower steering wheel heat"** - raises/lowers the setting for the heated steering wheel* one step.
- **"Turn on seat heat"/"Turn off seat heat"** - activates/deactivates the heated seat*.
- **"Raise seat heat"/"Lower seat heat"** - raises/lowers the setting for the heated seat* one step.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

- **"Turn on seat ventilation"/"Turn off seat ventilation"** - activates/deactivates the seat ventilation*.
- **"Raise seat ventilation"/"Lower seat ventilation"** - raises/lowers the setting for the ventilated seat* one step.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Using voice recognition (p. 105)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)
- Climate control (p. 168)

Voice recognition and map navigation

With voice recognition control, many functions in the navigation system can be activated by spoken words.

Voice recognition is comprehensively described in the "Voice recognition", ""Use voice recognition" and "Voice recognition settings" sections.

Voice commands

The following are some examples of voice commands that are unique to map navigation.

Press the steering wheel button and say one of the following commands:

- **"Navigation"** - Initiates a navigation dialogue and shows examples of commands.
- **"Take me home"** - Guidance is given to the **Home** position.
- **"Go to [City]"** - Specifies a town as the destination. E.g. "Drive to Coventry".
- **"Go to [Address]"** - Specifies an address as a destination. An address should contain city and street. E.g. "Drive to 5 King Street, Coventry".
- **"Set [intersection]"** - Specifies an intersection as a destination. Search for intersection takes place within the search area specified.
- **"Go to [Post code]"** - Specifies a post code as the destination. E.g. "Drive to LE5 4PQ".
- **"Go to [contact]"** - Specifies an address from the telephone book as the destination. E.g. "Drive to Robin Smith".
- **"Search [POI category]"** - Searches for POI[8] category (e.g. restaurant), which are always sorted "around the car". To sort the list along the route - say **"Along the route"** when the result list is shown.
- **"Set [country]/[state]**[9], [10]**"** - Changes the search area for navigation.
- **"Show favourites"** - Shows favourited positions in the driver display.
- **"Clear itinerary"** - Erases all the stored intermediate destinations and final destination in an itinerary.
- **"Repeat voice guidance"** - Repeats the last spoken guidance.
- **"Pause guidance"** - Pauses the guidance on the map.
- **"Resume guidance"** - Resumes the paused guidance on the map.
- **"Turn off voice guidance"** - Switches off voice guidance.
- **"Turn on voice guidance"** - Starts the switched-off voice guidance.

8 The user has the option of calling the POI or specifying it as a destination.
9 In European countries, “Country” is used instead of “State”.
10 For Brazil and India, the search area is changed via the centre display.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Using voice recognition (p. 105)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)

Manual front seat

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort.

1. Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion* by pumping up/down.
2. Adjust the seat forward/backward by lifting the handle and adjusting the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.
3. Change the lumbar support* by pressing the button upward/downward/forward/back.
4. Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
5. Change the backrest rake by turning the control knob.

WARNING

Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Multi-functional front seat* (p. 113)
- Activating/deactivating heating of the seats* (p. 189)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Power front seat*

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort. The power seat can be moved forward/backward and up/down. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered and the backrest rake can be changed. The lumbar support can be adjusted upward/downward/forward/backward.

The power seats have overload protection which is tripped if a seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, remove the object and then operate the seat again.

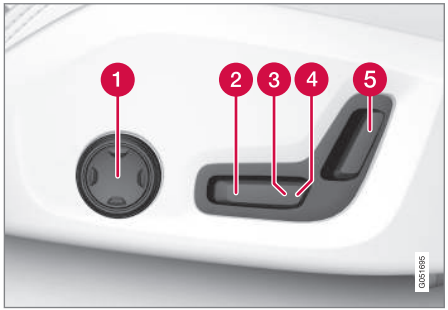
The seat can be adjusted for a period of time after unlocking the door without the engine running. Seat adjustment can always be performed when the engine is running. Adjustment can also be performed for a period of time after the engine has been switched off.

Related information

- Multi-functional front seat* (p. 113)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 111)
- Using the memory function in the power front seat* (p. 112)
- Manual front seat (p. 110)
- Activating/deactivating heating of the seats* (p. 189)
- Easy entry to and exit from the driver's seat* (p. 117)

Adjusting the power front seat*

Set to desired sitting position using the control on the front seat's seating section.



1. Change the lumbar support by pressing the button upward/downward/forward/back.
2. Raise/lower the seat cushion front edge by adjusting the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
5. Change the backrest rake by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

The backrests of the front seats cannot be lowered fully forward.

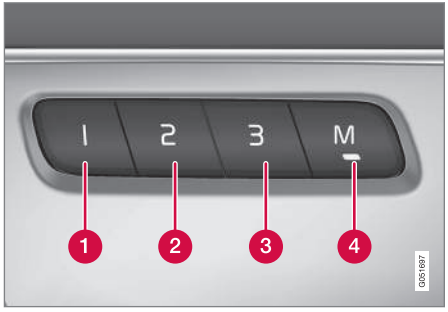
Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Using the memory function in the power front seat* (p. 112)
- Multi-functional front seat* (p. 113)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)

Using the memory function in the power front seat*

The memory function stores settings for the seat, outer rearview and door mirrors, and head-up display*.

It is possible to store three different settings with the memory function. The memory function keypad is located either on one front door or both*.



1. Memory button
2. Memory button
3. Memory button
4. Button **M** for storing settings.

Store setting

1. Adjust seat, door mirrors and head-up display to the desired position.
2. Push the **M** button and release. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, depress button **1**, **2** or **3**.
   > When the position has been stored in the selected memory button an acoustic signal sounds and the light indicator in the **M** button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the **M** button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat must be adjusted again before a new memory can be set.

Using a stored setting

A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Front door open

– Press one of the memory buttons **1** - **3** with a brief touch. Seat, door mirrors and head-up display move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

Front door closed

– Hold one of the memory buttons **1** - **3** depressed until seat, door mirrors and head-up display stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat, door mirrors and head-up display will be stopped.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of crushing! Make sure that children do not play with the keypad. Check that there are no objects in front of, behind or under the seat during adjustment. Make sure that none of the passengers in the rear seat is in danger of becoming trapped.

Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 111)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Multi-functional front seat*

Enhance seating comfort using the multi-function control.

Multi-function control, located on the side of the seat's seating section.

The multi-function control can, in some variants, be used to adjust the lumbar support*, side support for the back*, cushion length and massage settings*. Settings made with the multi-function control are shown in the centre display*. Certain function selections can also be made directly in the centre display.

Centre display

The driver and the passenger seat settings that are made with the multi-function control are shown in the centre display. If the settings for only one of the front seats are shown in the centre display, the settings are positioned centred in the screen. When it is possible to show setting options for both the front seats, the driver's setting options are shown in the upper half and the passenger's in the lower half.

To stop showing the seat settings view in the centre display, press the home button, which is located under the centre display.

Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Adjusting functions in the multi-functional front seat* (p. 113)
- Activating/deactivating heating of the seats* (p. 189)

Adjusting functions in the multi-functional front seat*

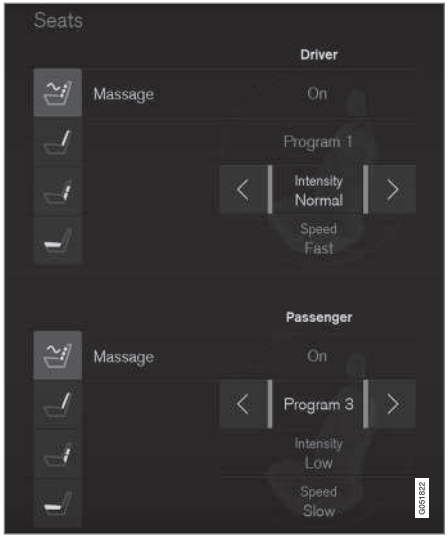
Both the multi-function control on the seat and the centre display can be used in order to change the settings. The range of settings is shown in the centre display*.

Multi-function control, located on the side of the seat's seating section.

To activate the multi-function control, turn the control upwards/downward.

Adjusting massage settings* in the front seat

The front seat has massage in the backrest. The massage is performed by air cushions that can massage with different settings.



View for massage in the centre display.

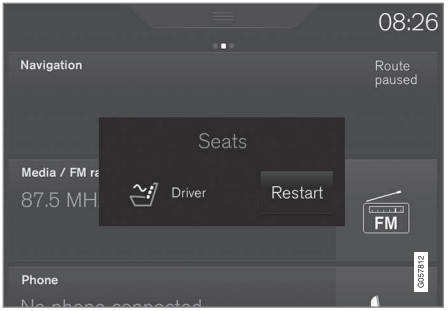
1. Activate the multi-function control by turning the control upward/downward. The seat settings view will be shown on the centre display.
2. Select **Massage** in the seat settings view.
3. To choose between the different massage functions, select either directly in the touch screen or by moving the cursor up/down using the multi-function control's upper/lower button. Change the setting in the selected function by selecting directly in the touch screen or by pressing the arrows, or by using the multi-function control's front/rear button.

Settings for massage

The following setting options are available for massage:

- **On/Off**: Select **On/Off** in order to switch on/off the massage function.
- **Programs 1-5**: There are 5 preset massage programs. Select between **Swell**, **Tread**, **Advanced**, **Lumbar** and **Shoulder**.
- **Intensity**: Select between **Low**, **Normal** and **High**.
- **Speed**: Select between **Slow**, **Normal** and **Fast**.

Restarting massage



Button for restarting massage in the centre display.

The massage function is deactivated automatically after 20 minutes. The function is reactivated manually.

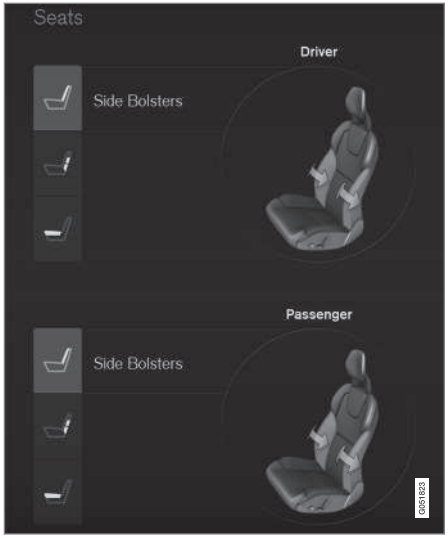
– Tap on **Restart** in the centre display in order to restart the selected massage program.

It is not possible to use the massage function when the engine is switched off.

Adjusting side support* in the front seat backrests

The sides of the backrest can be adjusted to provide side support.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



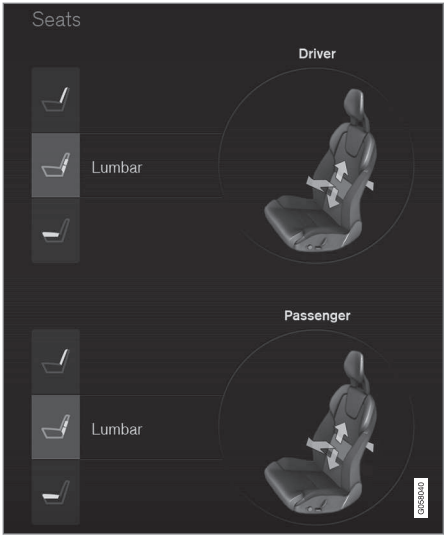
View for adjustable side support in the centre display.

To adjust the side support:

1. Activate the multi-function control by turning the control upward/downward. The seat settings view will be shown on the centre display.
2. Select **Side bolsters** in the seat settings view.
   - Press the front seat button in order to increase the side support.
   - Press the rear seat button in order to reduce the side support.

Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat

The lumbar support can be adjusted upward/downward/forward/backward.



View for lumbar support in the centre display.

To adjust the lumbar support:

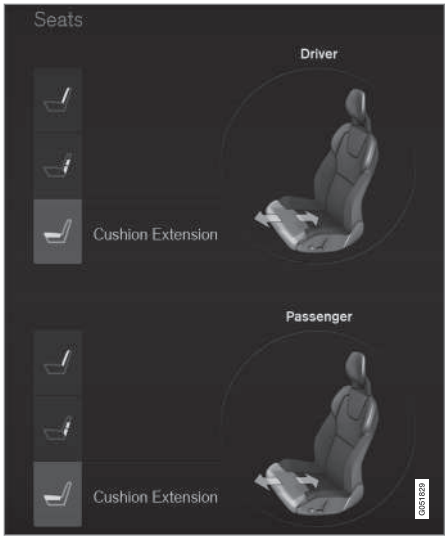
1. Activate the multi-function control by turning the control upward/downward. The seat settings view will be shown on the centre display.

▶▶

2. Select **Lumbar** in the seat settings view.
   - Press the seat button up/down to move the lumbar support up/down.
   - Press the front seat button in order to increase the lumbar support.
   - Press the rear seat button in order to decrease the lumbar support.

Extending the seat cushion in the front seat

Seat cushion length can be adjusted by using the multi-function control on the seat.



View for extension of the cushion in the centre display.

1. Activate the multi-function control by turning the control upward/downward. The seat settings view will be shown on the centre display.
2. Select **Cushion extension** in the seat settings view.
   - Press the front seat button in order to extend the seat cushion.
   - Press the rear seat button in order to retract the seat cushion.

Related information

- Multi-functional front seat* (p. 113)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Easy entry to and exit from the driver's seat*

The **Easy Ingress & Egress** function can be used in order to make it easier for the driver to get in and out of the driver's seat.

Easy exit

The function makes it easier for the driver to get out of the driver's seat by simultaneously lowering the seat, reducing the side support, and retracting the seat cushion.

For the seat to be set in easy exit position, the function must be activated in the centre display.

1. Select gear position **P**.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Release the seatbelt.
4. Open the driver's door.
   > The seat, side support and seat cushion move simultaneously to the easy exit position.

Easy entry

The seat remains in the exit position when the driver leaves the car. When the driver returns to the car, he/she will be able to enter and seat himself/herself easily and comfortably. When the driver has sat down in the seat, fastened the seatbelt and put the car's electrical system in at least ignition position **1**, the seat will be adjusted to the driver's personal setting.

Activating/deactivating easy entry and exit

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Seats**.
3. Select **Easy Ingress & Egress** to activate/deactivate.

Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Adjusting the passenger seat from the driver's seat*

The front passenger seat can be adjusted from the driver's seat.

Activating the function

The function can be activated in two ways via the centre display:

Via the function view

Press the **Adjust passenger seat** button to activate.

Via settings

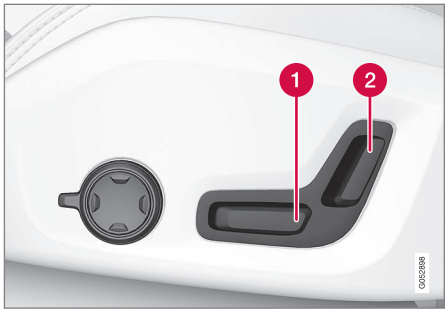
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Seats**.
3. Select **Adjust Passenger Seat From Driver Position** to activate.

Adjust passenger seat

From activation of the function, the driver must adjust the passenger seat within 10 seconds. If no adjustment is made within this time the function is deactivated.

The driver adjusts the passenger seat using the controls on the driver's seat:

▸▸



1. Move the passenger seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
2. Change the passenger seat's backrest rake by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 111)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 111)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)

Rear seat

Depending on whether the car has 5 or 7 seats* the rear seat has either one or two* rear seat rows. The second seat row has three individual seats, while the third seat row has two individual seats.

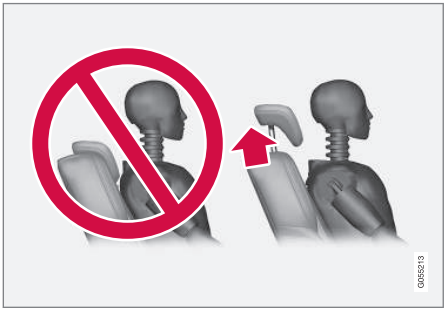
Related information

- Adjusting the head restraints in the second seat row (p. 118)
- Adjusting the seat longitudinally in the second seat row* (p. 120)
- Adjusting the backrest rake in the second seat row (p. 120)
- Lowering backrests in the second seat row (p. 121)
- Entry/exit for third seat row* (p. 123)
- Lowering backrests in the third seat row* (p. 124)
- Activating/deactivating heating of the seats* (p. 189)

Adjusting the head restraints in the second seat row

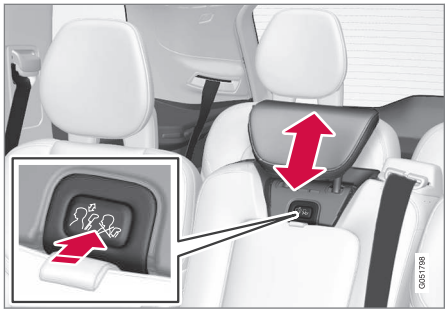
Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger. Fold down the outer seat head restraints* to improve rearward visibility.

Adjusting the head restraint, centre seat



The centre seat's head restraint must be adjusted according to the passenger's height so that, if possible, the whole of the back of the head is covered. Slide it up manually as required.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



To lower the head restraint, the button (located in the centre between the backrest and head restraint, see illustration) must be pressed in while the head restraint is pressed down carefully.

WARNING

The centre seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the centre seat is not used. When the centre seat is used, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the height of the passenger so that it covers the whole of the back of the head if possible.

Electrical lowering of the rear seat's outer head restraints*

The outer head restraints can be lowered in two ways via the centre display:

Via the function view

Press the **Headrest fold** button to activate/deactivate lowering.

Via settings

The car's electrical system must be in the ignition position **II**.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Seats**.
3. Select **Fold Headrest On Second Row Seats** to lower the rear outer head restraints.

WARNING

Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are passengers in any of the outer seats.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

WARNING

The head restraints must be in locked position after being raised.

WARNING

The head restraints on the outer seats in the second seat row must always be raised when the third seat row* is occupied by passengers.

Related information

- Rear seat (p. 118)
- Lowering backrests in the second seat row (p. 121)

Adjusting the seat longitudinally in the second seat row*

In a car with 7 seats*, the seats in the second seat row can be adjusted forward or back individually in order to create optimal legroom for the second and third row passengers. It is not possible to adjust the rear seat longitudinally in a car with 5 seats.

1. Lift the handle that is located under the seat.
2. Slide the seat forward or backward to the desired position.
3. Release the handle and slide the seat until the catch engages.

Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.

WARNING

Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.

Related information

- Rear seat (p. 118)
- Adjusting the backrest rake in the second seat row (p. 120)

Adjusting the backrest rake in the second seat row

Backrest rake can be adjusted individually for each seat in the second seat row.

Centre seat

1. Pull the strap located on the centre seat's right-hand side.
2. Adjust the backrest rake forward/backward by reducing/increasing the load against the backrest.
3. Release the strap to lock the backrest position and slide the backrest until the catch engages.

Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Outer seats

1. Pull the handle on the side of the seat upwards.
2. Adjust the backrest rake forward/backward by reducing/increasing the load against the backrest.
3. Release the handle to lock the backrest position and slide the backrest until the catch engages.

Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.

WARNING

Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.

Related information

- Rear seat (p. 118)
- Adjusting the seat longitudinally in the second seat row* (p. 120)
- Lowering backrests in the second seat row (p. 121)
- Seatbelt (p. 54)

Lowering backrests in the second seat row

The second seat row has three individual seats. The backrests can be lowered forward individually.

WARNING

Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.

IMPORTANT

There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

IMPORTANT

The integrated booster cushion* on the centre seat must be lowered before lowering the seat.

The armrest* for the centre seat must be raised before lowering the seat.

NOTE

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and/or the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be fully folded forward.

The rear seats may also need to be moved backwards.

Centre seat

To lower the backrest:

1. Lower the head restraint manually.
2. Pull the strap located on the centre seat's right-hand side.
3. Lower the backrest forward until it locks into position. The seat cushion folds down/forward when the backrest is lowered in order to create a flat surface.

To raise the backrest to the upright position:

1. Pull the strap.
2. Raise the backrest and release the strap. Slide the backrest until the catch engages.
3. If necessary, raise the head restraint.

Outer seats

To lower the backrest:

1. Pull the handle on the side of the seat upwards and hold the handle in the raised position while lowering the backrest.
2. Make sure that the backrest with head restraint does not come into contact with the front seat when lowered. Lower the backrest forward until it locks into position.
   > The seat cushion folds down/forward when the backrest is lowered in order to create a flat surface. The head restraint lowers automatically when the rear seat is lowered.

WARNING

Make sure the backrests are properly locked after they are lowered.

To raise the backrest to the upright position:

1. Pull the handle on the side of the seat upwards and hold the handle in the raised position while raising the backrest.
2. Make sure that the backrest with head restraint does not come into contact with the front seat when raised. Raise the backrest and release the handle.
3. Slide the backrest until the catch engages.
4. The head restraint is raised manually.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

WARNING

The head restraints on the outer seats in the second seat row must always be raised when the third seat row* is occupied by passengers.

Related information

- Rear seat (p. 118)
- Adjusting the backrest rake in the second seat row (p. 120)
- Lowering backrests in the third seat row* (p. 124)
- Adjusting the head restraints in the second seat row (p. 118)

Entry/exit for third seat row*

In order to smoothly and easily be able to get in and out of the third seat row, the second seat row can be adjusted.

1. Pull upward/forward on the handle located at the top of the outer seats in the second seat row.
2. Fold the backrest forward and slide the whole seat forward.

To raise the seat to the upright position:

– Slide back the seat and raise the backrest until it locks.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

Related information

- Adjusting the seat longitudinally in the second seat row* (p. 120)
- Adjusting the backrest rake in the second seat row (p. 120)
- Lowering backrests in the second seat row (p. 121)

Lowering backrests in the third seat row*

The third seat row has two individual seats. These can be lowered forward individually.

IMPORTANT

To be able to lower the third seat row backrests, it may be necessary to change the position and angle of the seats in the second seat row.

1. Pull upward/forward on the handle that is located on the top of the backrest.
2. Make sure that the backrest with head restraint does not come into contact with the seat in front when lowered. Fold the backrest forward.
   > The seat cushion folds down/forward when the backrest is lowered in order to create a flat surface. The head restraint lowers automatically when the rear seat is lowered.

To raise the seat, raise the backrest manually until it locks. The head restraint is raised manually.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

Related information

- Rear seat (p. 118)
- Lowering backrests in the second seat row (p. 121)
- Adjusting the backrest rake in the second seat row (p. 120)
- Adjusting the seat longitudinally in the second seat row* (p. 120)

Steering wheel

The steering wheel has controls for horn, driver support systems and voice recognition, amongst other things.

Keypads and paddles* in the steering wheel.

1. Controls for driver support systems[11].
2. Paddle shifter* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox.
3. Controls for voice recognition, head-up display settings, and menu, message and phone handling.

[11] Speed Limiter*, Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Horn

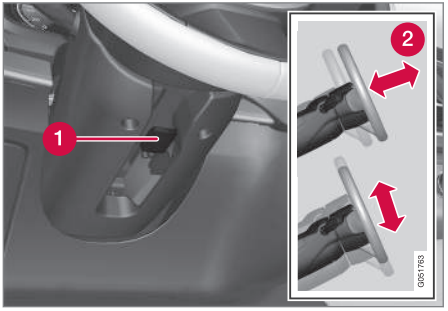
The horn is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

Related information

- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 125)
- Activating/deactivating heating of steering wheel* (p. 191)
- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Distance Warning* (p. 307)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles* (p. 364)
- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Head-up display* (p. 102)
- Using the application menu in the driver display (p. 96)
- Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 98)
- Phone (p. 424)

Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions.



Adjusting the steering wheel.

1. Lever - releasing the steering wheel
2. Possible steering wheel positions

The steering wheel can be adjusted for both height and depth:

1. Push the lever downwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you move the lever back.

WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away.

With speed related power steering the level of steering force can be adjusted. Steering force is regulated according to the car's speed in order to give the driver enhanced road responsiveness.

Related information

- Steering wheel (p. 124)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 258)

Headlamp control

Use the light controls in the left-hand stalk switch to activate external lighting. Use the headlamp control in the instrument panel to adjust headlamp levelling[12] and the brightness of the interior lighting.

Rotating ring in the steering wheel stalk switch

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or the engine is running. Main beam flash can be used.
	Daytime running lights and position lamps when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or the engine is running. Position lamps when the car is parked[A]. Main beam flash can be used.
	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.

12 Applies to vehicles with halogen headlamps.

Position	Specification
AUTO	Daytime running lights and position lamps in daylight when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or the engine is running. Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when rear fog lamps are activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
ECA	Active main beam on/off.

A Also at idle when the motor is running, provided that the rotating ring is moved to this position from another position.

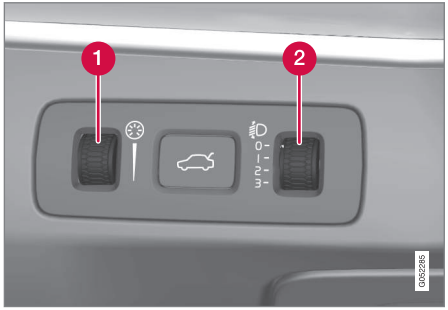
Volvo recommends that AUTO mode is used when the vehicle is driven.

WARNING

The car's audio system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Controls in the instrument panel



1. Thumbwheel for adjusting interior brightness
2. Thumbwheel for headlamp levelling

A car with LED[13] headlamps* has automatic headlamp levelling and therefore does not have the thumbwheel for headlamp levelling.

Adjusting the interior brightness

The lamps inside the car come on differently depending on the ignition position used.

The thumbwheel adjusts the brightness of display lighting, control lighting, ambient lighting and mood lighting.

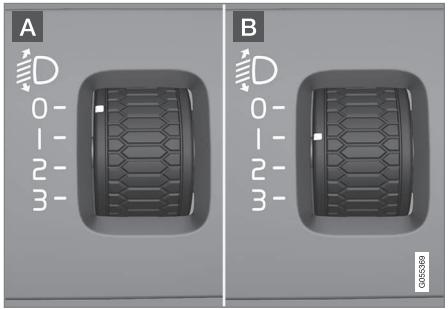
13 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Headlamp levelling

The load in the car changes the vertical alignment of the headlamp beam, which could dazzle oncoming motorists. Avoid this by adjusting the height of the beam. Lower the beam if the car is heavily laden.

1. Leave the engine running, or have the car's electrical system in ignition position **I**.
2. Roll the thumbwheel up/down to raise/lower beam alignment.

The position in which the thumbwheel should be set for a number of load cases is shown below.



Thumbwheel positions for the different load cases.

A Thumbwheel in position 0

B Thumbwheel in position 1

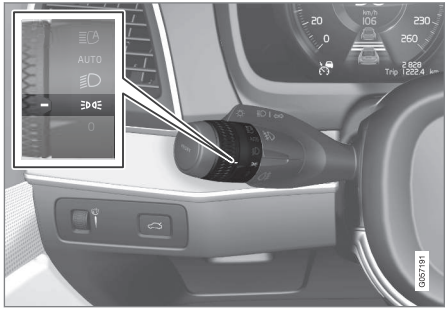
Load case	Thumbwheel
Only driver.	Position 0
Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat.	Position 0
Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat. Three passengers in the second seat row.	Position 0
Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat. Three passengers in the second seat row. 220 kg load in the cargo area.	Position 1
Driver and maximum load in the cargo area.	Position 1
Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat. Three passengers in the second seat row. Two passengers in the third seat row.	Position 1
Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat. Two passengers in the third seat row.	Position 0

Related information

- Passenger compartment lighting (p. 137)
- Activating/deactivating main beam (p. 131)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Position lamps

The position lamps are switched on with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.



Stalk switch rotating ring in position lamps position.

Turn the rotating ring to the ≡D◐≡ position (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or the engine is running then the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps.

If the tailgate is opened when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps come on (if not already switched on) to warn road users approaching from behind. This takes place irrespective of the position of the rotating ring or the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

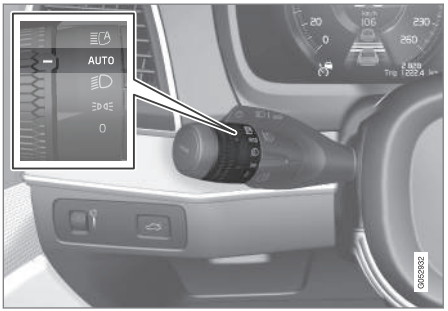
Related information

- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights are switched on when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position 0 , ≡D◐≡ or AUTO as well as when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or the engine is running. For the AUTO position, this only applies in daylight. In other conditions, dipped beam is switched on instead.

Daytime running lights during the day. DRL



Stalk switch rotating ring in **AUTO** position.

If the stalk switch rotating ring is in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (Daytime Running Lights - DRL) are switched on when the car is driven in daylight. The car automatically switches the lighting from daytime running lights to dipped beam at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Switching to dipped beam

also takes place when the rear fog lamps are activated.

WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

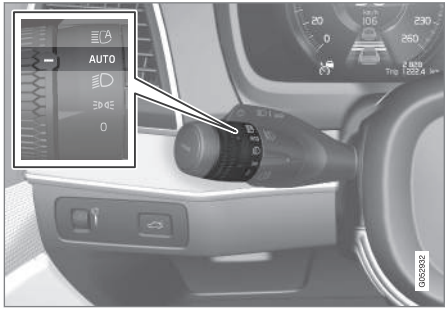
Related information

- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Dipped beam (p. 130)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Dipped beam

With the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring in AUTO position, and with the car's electrical system in ignition position **II** or the engine running, dipped beam is activated automatically in poor light conditions.

Dipped beam



Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

With the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring in AUTO position, dipped beam is activated automatically at dusk or when daylight becomes too weak. Dipped beam is also activated automatically when the rear fog lamps are activated.

With the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring in position, dipped beam is always switched on when the engine is running or when ignition position **II** is active.

Tunnel detection

The car detects when it is about to drive into a tunnel and switches from daytime running lights to dipped beams.

Note that the rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch must be in AUTO mode for tunnel detection to work.

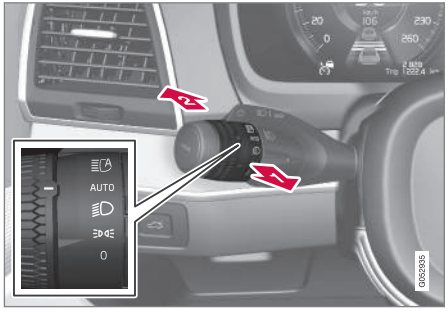
Related information

- Daytime running lights (p. 129)
- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Activating/deactivating main beam

Main beam is activated with the stalk switch.

Active main beam is activated with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.



Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

1. Position for main beam flash
2. Position for main beam

Main beam flash

Move the stalk switch backwards slightly to the main beam flash position. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam

Main beam can be activated when the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO [14] or . Activate main beam by moving the stalk switch forwards. Deactivate by moving the stalk switch backwards.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the driver display.

Active main beam

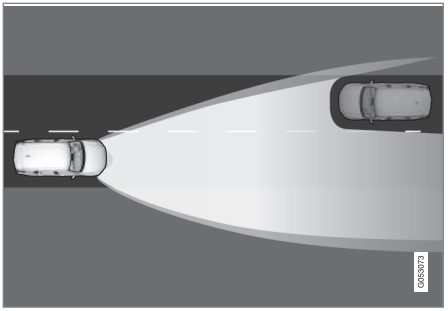
Active main beam is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam. The function can also take streetlights into account.

Car with halogen headlamps

The lighting returns to main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

Car with LED[15] headlamps*

Unlike what happens during conventional dimming, the light beam continues with main beam on both sides of oncoming traffic or vehicles ahead - only the part of the light beam that points directly to the vehicle is dimmed.



Dipped beam directly towards oncoming vehicle, but continued main beam on both sides of the vehicle.

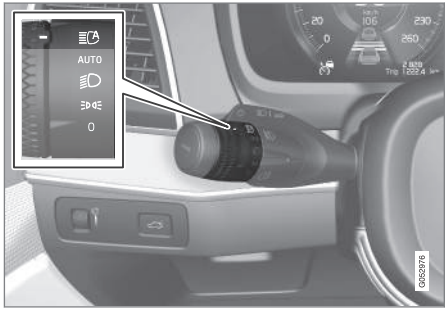
The lighting returns to full main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

14 When dipped beam is activated.
15 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Activate/deactivate

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.

Activate/deactivate active main beam by turning the stalk switch's rotating ring to position and release. If active main beam is deactivated while main beam is on, the lighting is immediately reset to dipped beam.



When active main beam is activated, the symbol illuminates with a white glow in the driver display.

When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue. This also applies for LED headlamps if the main beam is partially dimmed, i.e. as soon as the light beam shines with slightly more than dipped beam.

Manual operation

NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

If this symbol is shown in the driver display, together with the message **Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable**, then switching between main and dipped beam must be performed manually. The rotating ring on the stalk switch can still be in the AUTO position. The symbol extinguishes when these message are shown.

The same applies if this symbol is shown together with the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**.

Active main beam may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When active main beam becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message goes out and the symbol illuminates.

WARNING

Active main beam is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

IMPORTANT

Examples of when manual switching between main and dipped beam may be required:

- In heavy rain or dense fog
- In freezing rain
- In snow flurries or slush
- In moonlight
- When driving in poorly lit built-up areas
- When the traffic ahead has weak lighting
- If there are pedestrians on or beside the road
- If there are highly reflective objects such as signs in the vicinity of the road
- When the lighting from oncoming traffic is obscured by e.g. a crash barrier
- When there is traffic on connecting roads

- On the brow of a hill or in a hollow
- In sharp bends.

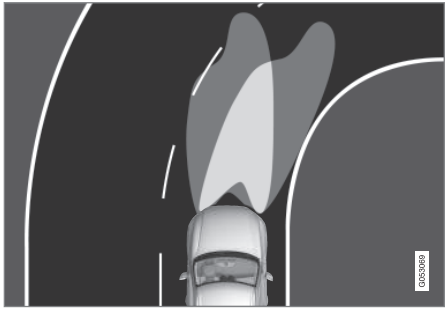
Read more about the camera sensor's limitations in the article "Limitations for City Safety".

Related information
- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 315)

Active bending lights

Active bending lights are designed to provide maximum illumination in bends and junctions.

Cars with LED[16] headlamps* have active bending lights.



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

LED headlamps include the active bending lights function. Active bending lights follow steering wheel movements to provide maximum illumination in bends and junctions and thereby increase safety.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started. In the event of a fault in the function, the symbol illuminates in the driver display at the same time as the driver display shows an explanatory text.

The function is only active in twilight or darkness and only when the car is moving.

Deactivating/activating the function

The function is in activated mode when the car is delivered from the factory and can be deactivated/activated via the centre display in two ways:

Via the function view

Press the **Active Bending Lights** button.

Via settings

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Exterior Lights**.
3. Deselect/select **Active Bending Lights**.

Related information
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 134)

16 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Adapting the beam pattern from the headlamps

If the car is equipped with active LED headlamps and the Active main beam function is used, then the headlamp pattern must be reset when changing from right to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

Halogen headlamps

The headlamp pattern does not need to be adjusted. The headlamp pattern is designed in such a way that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

LED headlamps*

Headlamp pattern adjustment is required if the Active main beam function is used. The car must be stationary with the engine running when the headlamp pattern is shifted between right and left-hand traffic.

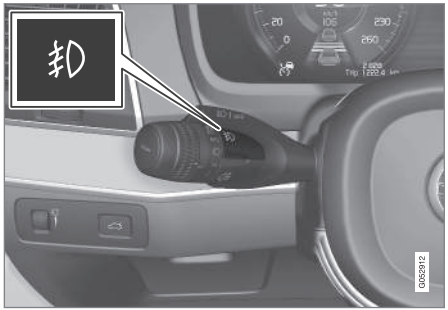
1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Exterior Lights**.
3. Select **Temporary Right Hand Traffic/ Temporary Left Hand Traffic**.

Related information

- Settings view (p. 161)
- Activating/deactivating main beam (p. 131)

Front fog lamps/cornering lights*

The front fog lamps have cornering lights that shine diagonally to the side.



Button for front fog lamps.

The front fog lamps can be switched on when ignition position **II** is active or the engine is running and the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO, or .

Press the on/off button. The indicator symbol in the driver display illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.

The front fog lamps are switched off automatically when the ignition knob is turned to **STOP** or when the stalk switch's rotating ring is turned to position 0 .

NOTE

Regulations on the use of fog lamps vary from country to country.

Cornering lights

The front fog lamps include the Cornering lights function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated when main beam or dipped beam is used and the car's speed is lower than approx. 30 km/h (20 mph).

In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing.

Related information

- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 135)
- Active bending lights (p. 133)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Rear fog lamp

When visibility is reduced by fog the rear fog lamp can be used so that other road users can detect the vehicle in front at an early stage.

Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when:

- ignition position **II** is active or the engine is running and the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO or
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched on.

Press the on/off button. The indicator symbol in the driver display illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when:

- the ignition knob is turned to **STOP** or when the stalk switch's rotating ring is set in position 0
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched off.

NOTE

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

Related information

- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 134)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is switched on when the brake pedal is depressed. In addition, it is switched on when one of driving support systems Adaptive cruise control, City Safety or Rear Collision Warning brakes the car.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 378)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- City Safety (p. 310)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 319)

Hazard warning flashers

The hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicator lamps flashing simultaneously when this function is activated.

Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

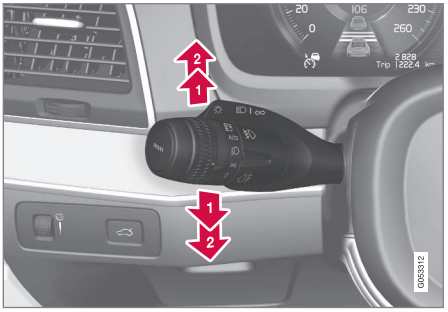
The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated when the car brakes so powerfully that the emergency brake lights are activated and the speed is low. The hazard warning flashers remain active when the car has stopped and are deactivated automatically when you start driving again; they can also be deactivated by pressing the button.

Related information

- Using direction indicators (p. 136)
- Emergency brake lights (p. 378)

Using direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.



Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

1. Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. The function can be activated/deactivated in the centre display.

Continuous flash sequence

2. Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

Related information

- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 136)
- Settings view (p. 161)

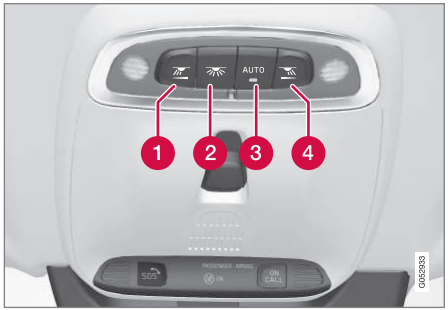
Passenger compartment lighting

The passenger compartment lighting is activated/deactivated with the buttons in the overhead controls above the front seats and the rear seat/rear seats*.

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually within 30 minutes from when:

- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in ignition position **0**
- the car has been unlocked but the engine has not been started.

Front lighting



Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

1. Reading lamp, left-hand side
2. Passenger compartment lighting
3. Auto function for passenger compartment lighting
4. Reading lamp, right-hand side

Front reading lamps

The reading lamps on the right and left-hand sides can be turned on and off by briefly pressing the buttons in the roof console. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Passenger compartment lighting

The floor lighting and interior roof lighting are switched on or off with a short press on the button in the roof console.

Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The automatic function is activated by a short press on the **AUTO** button in the roof console. The light indicator in the button illuminates when the automatic function is activated. Press the **AUTO** button to switch the passenger compartment lighting on and off in accordance with the following.

Passenger compartment lighting:

- comes on when the car is unlocked and when the engine is switched off
- goes off when the engine is started and when the car is locked
- comes on and goes off, respectively, when a side door is opened or closed.
- remains on for two minutes if one of the side doors is open.

Rear lighting

The rear area of the car has reading lighting, which is also used as passenger compartment lighting.

The reading lamps are located in the interior roof.

Reading lamps above the second[17] and third seat row*.

Reading lamp above the second seat row in cars with panorama roof*.

The reading lamps are switched on or off by briefly pressing the button on the lamp. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Vanity mirror lighting

The lighting for the vanity mirror in the sun visor is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Ground lighting

The ground lighting is switched on and off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Door sill lighting

The door sill lighting is switched on and off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on and off respectively when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Ambient light

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Interior Lighting** ➔ **Ambient Lighting**.
3. Choose between the following settings:
   - Under **Ambient Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.
   - Under **Ambient Light Level**, select from **Reduced** and **Full**.

[17] In cars with panorama roof* there are two lamp units, one on each side of the roof.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Controls located next to the steering wheel.

The intensity of the ambient light can be adjusted using the control in the instrument panel:

– Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the intensity.

Ambience lights*

The car is equipped with a number of LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the engine is running.

The ambience lights can be changed via the centre display:

Changing the brightness of the lights

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Interior Lighting** ➔ **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Under **Interior Mood Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.

Changing the colour of the light

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Interior Lighting** ➔ **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Choose between **By Temperature**, **By Theme** and **Theme Colours** in order to change the colour of the light.

   With colour option **By Temperature**, the colour of the light changes according to the set passenger compartment temperature.

Controls located next to the steering wheel.

The intensity of the mood light can be adjusted using the controls in the instrument panel:

– Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the intensity.

Related information

- Headlamp control (p. 126)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Settings view (p. 161)

Home safe light duration

Home safe lighting consists of dipped beams, position lamps, lighting in outer handles*, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting and floor lighting.

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

1. Switch off the car.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch forward toward the instrument panel and release.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

When the function is activated, the dipped beams, position lamps, lighting in outer handles*, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting and floor lighting will switch on.

The length of time that home safe lighting remains on can be set via the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Exterior Lights** ➔ **Home Safety Lights**.
3. Select from **Off**, **30 sec**, **60 sec** and **90 sec**.

Related information

- Approach light duration (p. 140)
- Settings view (p. 161)

Approach light duration

Approach lighting consists of position lamps, lighting in outer handles*, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting and floor lighting.

Approach lighting is switched on when the car is unlocked and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

When the function is activated with the remote control key, the position lamps, lighting in outer handles*, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting and floor lighting will switch on.

The function can be deactivated/activated via the centre display:

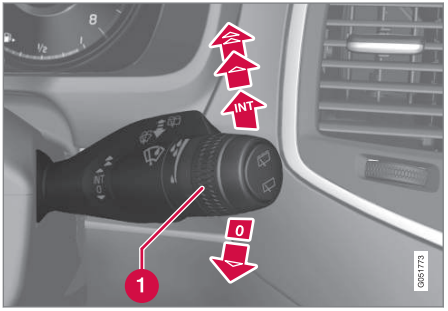
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights** ➔ **Exterior Lights**.
3. Deselect/select **Welcome Light**.

Related information

- Home safe light duration (p. 140)
- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Settings view (p. 161)

Using windscreen wipers

The windscreen wiper cleans the windscreen. Different settings for the windscreen wiper are made with the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

1 Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

Single sweep

Lower the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Windscreen wipers off

0 Move the stalk switch to position **0** to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Intermittent wiping

INT Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Continuous wiping

Raise the stalk switch for the wipers to sweep at normal speed.

Raise the stalk switch further for the wipers to sweep at high speed.

IMPORTANT

Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen (and rear window) is scraped away.

IMPORTANT

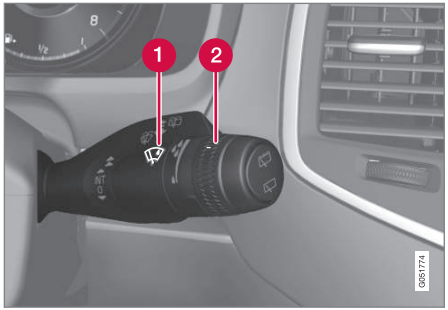
Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

Related information

- Activating/deactivating the rain sensor (p. 141)
- Windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 142)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 497)

Activating/deactivating the rain sensor

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel on the right-hand stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

1. Rain sensor button
2. Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol is shown in the driver display.

Activating the rain sensor

When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or the electrical system in ignition position **I** or **II** while the windscreen wiper stalk switch must be in position **0** or in the position for a single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Press the stalk switch down for the wipers to make an extra sweep.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the stalk switch up to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically in ignition position **0** or when the engine is switched off.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when wiper blades are set in service position. The rain sensor is reactivated when service position has been deactivated.

IMPORTANT

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Deactivate the rain sensor while the car is running or when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **I** or **II**. The symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Activating/deactivating the memory function

The memory function for the rain sensor can be activated in such a way that the rain sensor button does not need to be depressed each time the car is started:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Wipers**.
3. Select **Rain Sensor Memory** to activate/deactivate the memory function.

Related information

- Using windscreen wipers (p. 140)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 497)
- Rear window wiper and washer (p. 143)

Windscreen and headlamp washers

Windscreen and headlamp washers clean the windscreen and headlamps. Washing/wiping is started by means of the right-hand stalk switch.

Starting windscreen and headlamp washers

Washing function, right-hand stalk switch.

– Move the right-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.

  > The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps once the stalk switch has been released.

IMPORTANT

Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the washer reservoir is empty, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Heated washer nozzles*

The washer nozzles are heated automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

Headlamp washing*

To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at every fifth windscreen wash cycle.

Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message **Washer fluid Level too low, refill**, together with the symbol, is shown in the driver display, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is in order to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it.

Related information

- Using windscreen wipers (p. 140)
- Rear window wiper and washer (p. 143)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 500)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

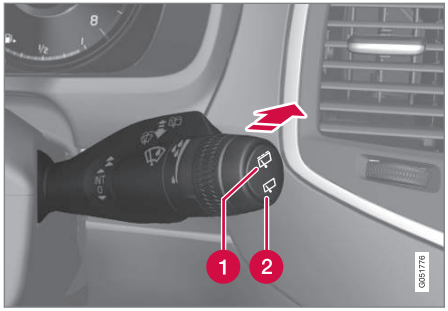
Rear window wiper and washer

Rear window wiper and washer clean the rear window. Washing/wiping is started and settings are changed by means of the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.

NOTE

The rear window wiper is equipped with overheating protection which means that the motor is switched off if it overheats. The rear window wiper works again after a cooling period (30 seconds or longer, depending on the heat in the motor and the outside temperature).

Using the rear window wiper and washer



1. Select for intermittent wiping with the rear window wiper.
2. Select for continuous speed with the rear window wiper.

– Move the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch forward to start rear window washing and wiping.

Activating/deactivating wiping when reversing

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Wipers**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Wiper** to activate/deactivate wiping when reversing.

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are on initiates rear window wiping. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

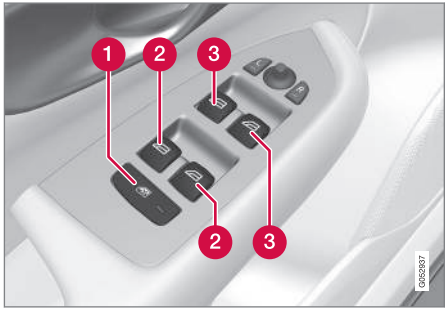
If the rear window wiper is already on at continuous speed, no change is made.

Related information

- Using windscreen wipers (p. 140)
- Windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 142)
- Activating/deactivating the rain sensor (p. 141)

Power windows

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors operate their respective power window.



Driver's door control panel.

1. Electric child safety locks for opening doors* and rear windows
2. Rear window controls
3. Front window controls

Related information

- Operating power windows (p. 144)
- Child safety locks (p. 247)

Operating power windows

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors operate their respective power window.

WARNING

Check that no children or other passengers are trapped when the windows are closed from the driver's door.

WARNING

Check that no children or other passengers are trapped if/when the windows are closed using the remote control key.

WARNING

If there are children in the car - remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.

Operating

Operating the power windows.

1. Operating without auto
2. Operating with auto

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors can only each operate their respective power window. Only one control panel can be operated at a time.

In order for the power windows to be used, the ignition position must be at least **I**. The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the engine has been switched off and after the ignition has been switched off - although not after a door has been opened.

Closing of the windows is stopped and the window is opened if anything prevents its movement. It is possible to override the pinch protection

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

when closing has been interrupted, e.g. if ice has formed on the window. After two successive closing interruptions the pinch protection will be overridden and the automatic function deactivated for a short while, now it is possible to close by holding the button in its raised position.

NOTE

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

Operating without auto

Move one of the controls up/down gently. The power windows move up/down as long as the control is held in position.

Operating with auto

Move one of the controls up/down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

Operating with the remote control key, door handle or central locking button

To control the power windows from the outside with the remote control key or door handle, or from the inside with the central locking button, see the section "Remote control key", "Locking/unlocking from the outside" or "Locking/unlocking from the inside".

Resetting

If the battery is disconnected then the function for automatic opening must be reset so that it can work correctly.

1. Gently raise the front section of the button to raise the window to its end position and hold it there for one second.
2. Release the button briefly.
3. Raise the front section of the button again for one second.

WARNING

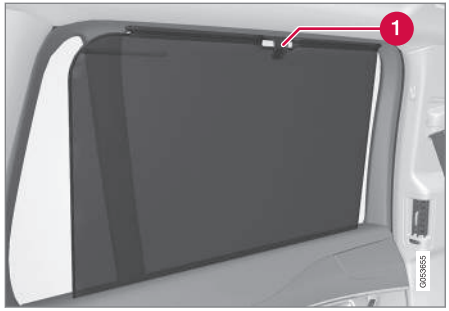
A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

Related information

- Power windows (p. 144)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Locking/unlocking from the outside (p. 227)
- Locking/unlocking from the inside (p. 231)

Using the sun blind

Sun blinds are built into each rear door.



1 Hook with associated catch

1. Pull up the sun blind and attach it to the hook in the upper door frame.
2. Lock the sun blind by moving the catch upwards.

The window can still be opened and closed with the sun blind up.

Adjusting the door mirrors

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door controls.

Door mirror controls.

Adjusting

1. Press the **L** button for the left-hand door mirror or the **R** button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the **L** or **R** button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

WARNING

Both mirrors are the wide-angle type to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear further away than they actually are.

Memory function in power front seat*

Door mirror positions can be saved in the memory function of the power front seat.

Angling the door mirror when parking[18]

The door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking for example.

– Engage reverse gear and press the **L** or **R** button.

When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after approx. 10 seconds, or earlier by pressing the button labelled **L** or **R** respectively.

Automatic angling of the door mirror when parking[18]

When reverse gear is engaged the door mirror is automatically angled down so that the driver can see the side of the road when parking for example. When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after a short time.

Settings for this function are set in the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors**.
3. Under **Tilt Mirror in Reverse**, select **Off**, **Driver**, **Passenger** or **Both** to activate/deactivate and to select which review mirror should be angled.

Automatic retraction when locking[18]

When the car is locked/unlocked with the remote control key the door mirrors are automatically retracted/extended.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors**.
3. Select **Fold Mirrors When Locking** to activate/deactivate.

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to the neutral position for electric retracting/extending to work correctly:

1. Retract the mirrors with the **L** and **R** buttons.

18 Only in combination with power seat with memory.

2. Fold them out again with the **L** and **R** buttons.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are now reset in neutral position.

Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the rearview mirrors.

For the door mirrors to be fitted with this function requires that the interior rearview mirror also has automatic dimming, see the section "Interior rearview mirror".

Automatic dimming is always active while driving, apart from when gearbox reverse position is selected. Dimming sensitivity can be adjusted in three levels and will affect the interior rearview and the door mirrors.

NOTE

When sensitivity is changed there is no immediately noticeable change in dimming, but the change will be complete after a while.

Settings for this function are set in the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors**.
3. Under **Auto Dim Mirrors**, select **Normal**, **Dark** or **Light**.

Retractable power door mirrors*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces:

1. Depress the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously (ignition position must be at least **I**).
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

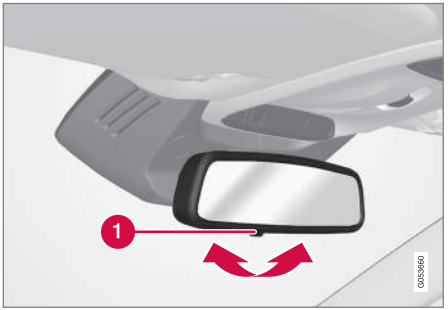
Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

Related information

- Interior rearview mirror (p. 147)
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Using the memory function in the power front seat* (p. 112)

Interior rearview mirror

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge. Alternatively, the rearview mirror dims automatically.



1 Control for dimming

Manual dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirror and dazzle the driver. Use dimming with the dimming control when lights from behind are distracting:

1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal mode by moving the control towards the windscreen.

Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the rearview mirror. The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic dimming.

The rearview mirror contains two sensors - one forward facing and one rearward facing - that work together to identify and eliminate dazzling light. The forward facing sensor detects ambient light, while the rearward facing sensor detects the light from vehicle headlights behind.

NOTE

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

Automatic dimming is always active while driving, apart from when gearbox reverse position is selected. Dimming sensitivity can be adjusted in three levels and will affect the interior rearview and the door mirrors.

NOTE

When sensitivity is changed there is no immediately noticeable change in dimming, but the change will be complete after a while.

Settings for this function are set in the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors**.
3. Under **Auto Dim Mirrors**, select **Normal**, **Dark** or **Light**.

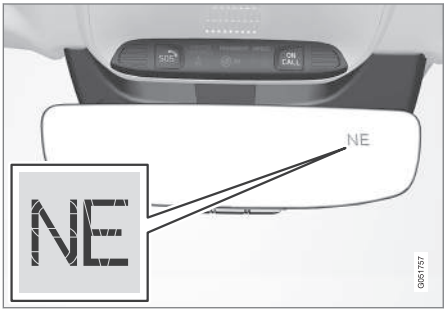
Only the rearview mirror with automatic dimming can be equipped with a compass.

Related information

- Adjusting the door mirrors (p. 146)
- Settings view (p. 161)

Compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing.



Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different compass directions are shown by their English abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (north east), **E** (east), **SE** (south east), **S** (south), **SW** (south west), **W** (west) and **NW** (north west).

Activating/deactivating the compass

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started or when the car's electrical system is in position **II**.

To deactivate/activate the compass:

– Depress the button on the underside of the rearview mirror using e.g. a paper clip.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Related information

- Calibrating the compass* (p. 149)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Activating/deactivating defrost of windows and mirrors (p. 180)

Calibrating the compass*

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass should be calibrated if the car is moved between several magnetic zones.

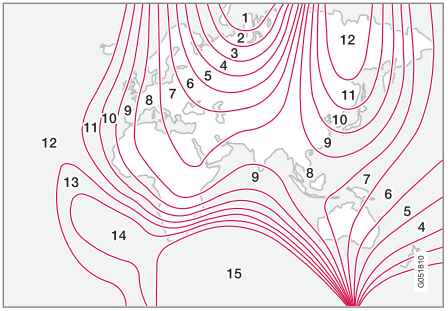
Proceed as follows to perform calibration:

1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.

NOTE

Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.

3. Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed (use a paper clip or similar) for approx. 3 seconds. The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.



Magnetic zones.

4. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (**1–15**) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
5. Wait until the display returns to showing the character **C**, or hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds until the character **C** is shown.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.

7. **Cars with heated windscreen*:** If the character **C** is shown in the display when the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated.

8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

Related information

- Compass* (p. 148)

Panorama roof*

The panorama roof is divided into two glass sections. The front section can be opened vertically at the rear edge (ventilation position) or horizontally (open position). The rear section is fixed roof glass.

The panorama roof has a sun blind made of perforated fabric and located under the glass roof to provide extra protection from factors such as strong sunlight.

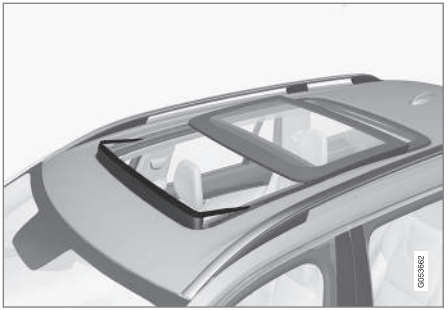
The panorama roof and curtain are operated with a control located in the roof. The control is activated when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **I** or **II**.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the panorama roof's moving parts.

- Always operate the panorama roof with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the panorama roof by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.

Wind deflector



The panorama roof has a wind deflector that is raised when the panorama roof is in the open position.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Related information

- Operating the panorama roof* (p. 151)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Operating the panorama roof*

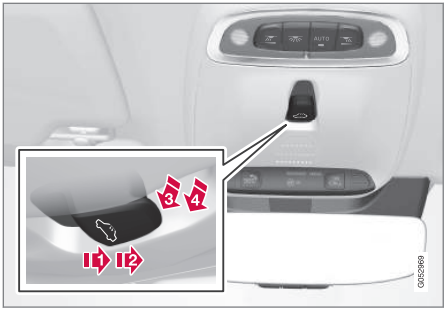
During automatic and manual operation, the sun blind/roof is opened to maximum position.

In ventilation position the front section of the roof is raised at the rear.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the panorama roof's moving parts.

- Always operate the panorama roof with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the panorama roof by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.



1. Opening, manual
2. Opening, automatic
3. Closing, manual
4. Closing, automatic

In order for the panorama roof and blind to be operated, the car's electrical system must be in at least ignition position **I**.

Manual operation

1. To open the curtain - press the control backwards to the position for manual opening. The sun blind moves towards maximum opening as long as the button is depressed.

2. Open the panorama roof - press the control backwards a second time to the position for manual opening. The panorama roof first reaches comfort position[19]. In order to open to maximum position - press the control a third time backward.

The movement of the panorama roof stops if the control is released or when it reaches the comfort position or the maximum opening or closing position.

Close the roof/blind by repeating the previous procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward instead and hold depressed until the roof/blind reaches the closing position.

NOTE

For manual opening, the curtain must be fully open before the panorama roof can be opened. For the reverse procedure, the panorama roof must be fully closed before the curtain can be closed.

Automatic operation

1. Open the sun blind to maximum position - press the control backward to the position for automatic opening and release.
2. The panorama roof can be opened in two positions:
   - To open to the comfort position - press the control a second time backward to the position for automatic opening and release.
   - To then open to the maximum position - press the control a third time backward to the position for automatic opening and release.

Close the roof/blind by repeating the previous procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward instead and release.

The movement of the roof is stopped when the glass reaches the comfort position or the maximum opening or closing position. The movement is also stopped if the control is operated again.

The movement of the roof is not stopped when the glass reaches the comfort position when closing from maximum opening position.

Rapid opening/closing

The panorama roof and sun blind can be opened/closed simultaneously:

– To open - press the control rearward to the automatic operation position twice and release.
– To close - press the control forward/downward to the automatic operation position twice and release.

The movement of the roof stops when it reaches the comfort or closing position. The movement is also stopped if the control is operated again.

The movement of the roof is not stopped when the glass reaches the comfort position when closing from maximum opening position. The blind's movement is never stopped when the roof is in comfort position.

Ventilation position

Ventilation position, vertically at the rear edge.

1. Open by pressing the control upward.
2. Close by pressing the control forward/downward.

19 Comfort position is an open position for the glass cover, where wind noise and resonance noise are at a comfortably low level while driving.

When the ventilation position is selected the front section is raised at its rear edge. If the sun blind is fully closed when ventilation position is selected - then it opens automatically approx. 50 mm.

The panorama roof can be operated from the open position directly to the ventilation position by pressing the control upward. The movement is stopped if the control is operated again.

Automatic closing of the sun blind

When the car is parked in sunny/hot weather, the sun blind closes automatically 15 minutes after the car is locked. This is in order to lower the passenger compartment temperature and protect the car upholstery from being bleached by the sun.

The function is deactivated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated/deactivated:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**.

   Select **Auto Close Sun Curtain** to activate/deactivate.

Closing using the remote control key, central locking button or door handles

Remote control key

– Give a long press on the remote control key's lock button until the panorama roof and sun blind start moving towards the closed position.

Movement stops if the remote control key's lock button is pressed again or when the roof/blind has reached the closed position.

Central locking button

Central locking button.

When the car's electrical system is put in at least ignition position **I**, the central locking button in the driver's door or passenger door* can be used to close the panorama roof.

– Give a long press on the central locking button until the panorama roof and sun blind start moving towards the closed position.

Movement stops if the central locking button is pressed again or when the roof/blind has reached the closed position.

Door handle

Cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking* have a touch-sensitive recess on the outer part of the outside door handle.

– Place your finger against the touch-sensitive recess on the outside of one of the door handles until the panorama roof and sun blind start moving towards the closed position.

Movement stops if you place your finger against the door handle recess again or once the roof/blind has reached the closed position.

WARNING

If the panorama roof is closed with the remote control key, the central locking button or door handle, check that no one risks being trapped.

IMPORTANT

Check that the panoramic roof is properly closed when closing.

▶▶

Pinch protection

The panorama roof has pinch protection that is triggered if the glass cover or the sun blind is blocked by an object during closing. In the event of blocking, the glass cover or sun blind is then opened automatically to approx. 50 mm from the blocked position (or to full ventilation position). The pinch protection is also active when the glass cover or sun blind is opened.

It is possible to override the pinch protection when closing has been interrupted e.g. if ice has formed around the glass cover, by continually holding the control pressed forward or down until the glass cover is closed.

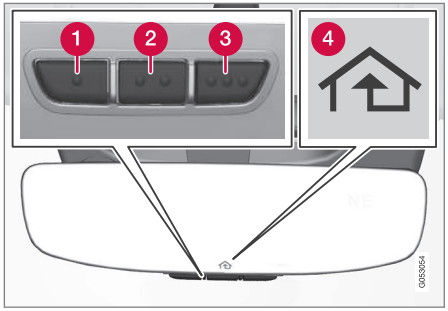
Related information

- Panorama roof* (p. 150)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Locking/unlocking from the inside (p. 231)
- Locking/unlocking from the outside (p. 227)

HomeLink®*[20]

HomeLink® is a programmable remote control that is integrated into the car's electrical system.

General



1. Button 1
2. Button 2
3. Button 3
4. Indicator lamp

HomeLink®[21] is a programmable remote control that can remotely control up to three different devices (e.g., garage door openers, alarm systems, outdoor and indoor lighting, etc.) and thus replace their remote controls. HomeLink® is supplied built into the interior rearview mirror. The HomeLink® panel consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

For more information about HomeLink®, visit www.HomeLink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or call the toll-free number 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277).

WARNING

- If HomeLink® is used to control a garage door or gate, ensure that nobody is near the door or gate while it is in motion.
- While programming HomeLink, the garage door or gate being programmed may activate. For this reason, make sure that nobody is in the vicinity of the door or gate while programming is in progress.
- The car should be outside the garage while a garage door opener is being programmed.
- Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

Save the original remote controls for future programming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle). It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons is

20 Applies to certain markets.
21 HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

deleted when the car is sold; see the section "Programming HomeLink®".

Related information

- Programming HomeLink®* (p. 155)

Programming HomeLink®*[23]

Instructions for programming HomeLink®.

Programming HomeLink®

NOTE

In certain vehicles the ignition must be switched on or in "accessory position" before HomeLink® can be programmed or used. For quicker programming and better radio signal transmission, it is advisable to fit new batteries in the remote control that is to be replaced by the HomeLink®. The HomeLink® buttons should be reset before programming, see section “Reset HomeLink® buttons” below. After resetting, the HomeLink® is set in “learn mode” and is ready for programming.

1. Press the[24] button on HomeLink® you want to program. The indicator lamp[24] on HomeLink® should flash yellow once per second. It is not necessary to hold the button depressed.
2. Aim the remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it 2-8 cm from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.

   Note: Some remote controls can program HomeLink® better at a distance of 15-20 cm. Bear this in mind if you encounter problems during programming.
3. Press and hold the button on the original remote control to be programmed on HomeLink® and keep an eye on the indicator lamp. Do not release the button until the indicator lamp has switched from flashing yellow once per second to either flashing green 10 times per second or illuminating in a constant green glow. The button on the remote control can be released once the indicator lamp flashes or illuminates in green.

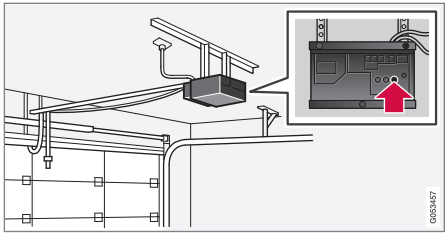
   Note: For some receivers, programming step 3 may need to be replaced with the instructions in step 4.
4. Press and release the button on the original remote control every other second until the indicator lamp has changed from flashing yellow once per second to either flashing green 10 times per second or illuminating in a constant green glow.

23 Applies to certain markets.
24 See section "HomeLink®*" for the location of buttons and indicator lamp.

5. Depress the programmed HomeLink® button and check the indicator lamp.
   > **Constant green glow:** If the indicator lamp illuminates in a constant green glow, **programming is complete**. The garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed button is depressed.

   Flashes green 10 times per second: Depress the button being programmed, **hold it depressed for 2 seconds and then release it**. Repeat the sequence of pressing/holding/releasing a second time and, depending on the receiver model, even a third time. Programming should now be complete and the garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed button is depressed.

   If the receiver is still not activated: Continue with programming steps 6-8 to complete programming.



6. Locate programming button[25] on the receiver for the garage door or similar. It is normally located near the antenna bracket on the receiver.
7. Depress and release the receiver's programming button. Step 8 must be completed within 30 seconds of the button being depressed.
8. Depress the button being programmed, **hold it depressed for 2 seconds and then release it**. Repeat the sequence of pressing/holding/releasing a second time and, depending on the receiver model, even a third time. **Programming is now be complete** and the garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed button is depressed.

Operation

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Depress the programmed button. The garage door, gate, alarm system or similar is activated (may take a few seconds). The indicator lamp illuminates or flashes when the button has been depressed. Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.

NOTE

If the ignition is switched off, HomeLink® will work for 30 minutes after the driver's door has been opened.

In the event of programming problems, contact HomeLink® at www.HomeLink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or call the toll-free number 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277).

Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all of the HomeLink® buttons at the same time, not each button individually. However, individual buttons can be reprogrammed; see the section "Programming individual buttons" below.

25 Button designation and colour vary depending on manufacturer.

1. Depress buttons 1 and 3 on HomeLink® and hold them depressed until the indicator lamp begins flashing green (about 10 seconds).
2. Release the buttons.
   > HomeLink® is now set to "learn mode" and is ready to be reprogrammed; see the section "Programming HomeLink®" above.

Programming individual buttons

To reprogram an individual HomeLink® button, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the required button and **do not release**.
2. After approx. 20 seconds when the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash yellow, start with step 1 from the section "Programming HomeLink®" above.

   Note: If the button to be reprogrammed is not programmed with a new unit, it will resume the previously saved programming.

For more information or to provide feedback about HomeLink®, visit www.HomeLink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or call the toll-free number 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277).

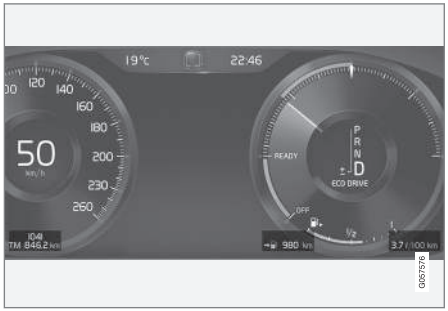
Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 154)

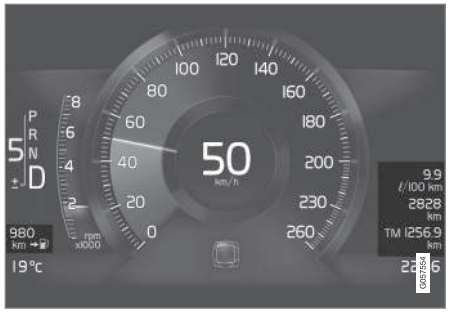
Trip computer

The car's trip computer records and calculates vales such as e.g. distance, fuel consumption and average speed whilst driving.

In order to facilitate fuel-efficient driving, information is recorded about both instantaneous and average fuel consumption. The information from the trip computer can be shown in the driver display.



12-inch driver display.



8-inch driver display.

The following meters are included in the trip computer:

- Trip meter
- Odometer
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Distance to empty tank
- Tourist - alternative speedometer

Trip meter

There are two trip meters, TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the car is not used for at least four hours.

The following information is registered while driving:

- Mileage
- Driving time

- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption.

The values apply from the trip meter's latest reset.

Odometer

The odometer records the car's total mileage. This value cannot be reset to zero.

Instantaneous fuel consumption

This gauge shows the fuel consumption that the car has at the moment. The value is updated approximately every second.

Distance to empty tank

The trip computer calculates the remaining mileage with the fuel available in the tank.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km and the remaining driveable fuel quantity.

No guaranteed range remains when the gauge shows "----". In which case, refuel as soon as possible.

NOTE

There may be a slight deviation if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance.

Tourist - alternative speedometer

The alternative digital speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are in a different unit than that shown in the car's instruments.

The digital speed is then shown in the opposite unit to that shown in the analogue speedometer. If the analogue speedometer is graduated in **mph**, the digital speedometer shows the corresponding speed in **km/h** and vice versa.

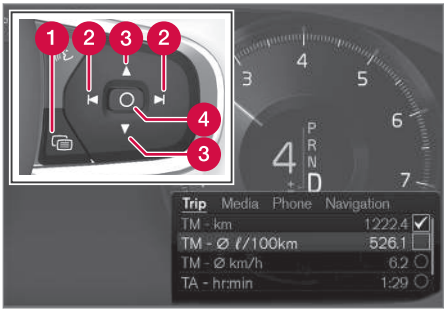
Related information

- Show trip data in the driver display (p. 158)
- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 160)

Show trip data in the driver display

The trip computer's recorded and calculated values can be shown in the driver display.

The values are saved in a trip computer app. Via the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display.



Open and navigate in the app menu[27] using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1. App menu
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

27 The appearance of the display may vary depending on instrument variant.

1. Open the app menu in the driver display by pressing (1).

   (It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message must be confirmed before the app menu can be opened.)
2. Navigate to the trip computer app to left or right with (2).
   > The top four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TA. Scroll up or down in the list with (3).
3. Scroll down to the option buttons to select which information to show in the driver display:
   - Instantaneous fuel consumption
   - Distance to empty tank
   - Odometer
   - Mileage for trip meter TM, TA, or no display of mileage
   - Tourist (alternative speedometer).

   Select or deselect an option with the **O** button (4). The change is made immediately.

Resetting the trip meter

Reset the trip meter TM with one long press on the **RESET** button on the left-hand stalk switch.

Trip meter TA only has automatic resetting. The meter is reset if the car is not used for four hours or more.

Change unit

Change the units for mileage, speed, etc. via the centre display as follows:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Units**.
3. Under **Units**, select the required unit standard: **Metric**, **Imperial** or **US**.

NOTE

In addition to in the trip computer, these units are also changed in Volvo's navigation system*.

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 157)
- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 160)
- Using the application menu in the driver display (p. 96)

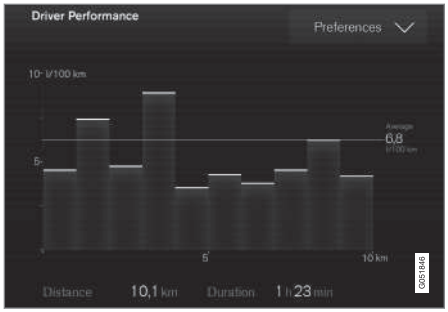
Show trip statistics in the centre display

Trip statistics from the trip computer are displayed graphically in the centre display and provide an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

Each bar in the diagram symbolises a distance of 1, 10 or 100 km, alternatively miles. The bars are filled in from the right as driving progresses. The bar on the far right shows the value for the current distance.

The average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated since the last time the trip statistics were reset.



Trip statistics from the trip computer[28].

Settings for trip statistics

Press **Preferences** to

- change graph scale. Select resolution 1, 10 or 100 km/mi for the bar.
- reset data after every trip. Performed when the car has been stationary for more than 4 hours.
- reset data for the current trip.

Trip statistics, calculated average consumption and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Change unit

Change the unit for mileage, fuel consumption, etc. via the centre display as follows:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Units**.
3. Under **Units**, select the required unit standard: **Metric**, **Imperial** or **US**.

Related information

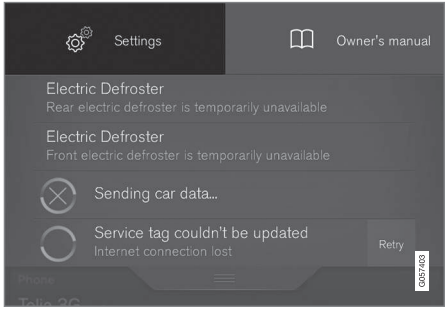
- Trip computer (p. 157)
- Show trip data in the driver display (p. 158)

28 The figure is schematic, the layout may vary depending on selected unit standard or updated software.

Settings view

Settings and information for many of the car's functions can be managed in the centre display's settings view.

Opening/closing and navigating in the settings view

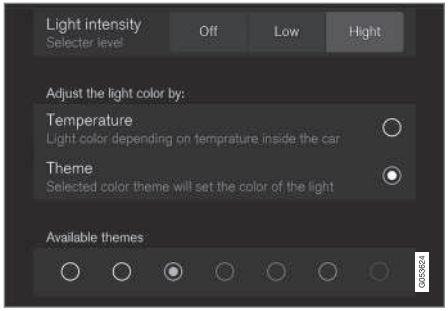


Top view with button for **Settings**.

1. Drag down the tab at the top of the centre display to open the top view.
2. Press **Settings** to open the settings view.
3. Press one of the categories shown and navigate to subcategories and settings by pressing again.
4. Press **Back** to go back in the settings view.

   Press **Close** to close the settings view.

Changing a setting



A subcategory in the settings view with different types of settings (here, a multi-selector button and radio buttons).

1. Press on categories and subcategories to navigate to the required setting.
2. Change one or more settings. Different types of settings are changed in different ways (see the table below for a description of each type).

   > The changes are saved immediately.

Types of settings

There are several different types of settings:

Setting type	Description
Trigger function	Starts an app or separate view for more advanced settings through a press on the text, e.g. to connect a device with Bluetooth.
Radio button	Select a setting from several options by pressing the required radio button, e.g. to select a system language.
Multi-selector button	Select a level for something by pressing the required part of the button, e.g. to select a sensitivity level for City Safety.
Checkbox	Activate/deactivate a function by pressing on the box to select/deselect it, e.g. to select automatic start of seat heating.
Slider	Select a level for something within an interval by pressing and dragging the slider, e.g. to select volume level.
Display of information	No actual setting. Shows information about something, e.g. the car's identification number.

Related information

- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)
- Categories in the settings view (p. 162)

Categories in the settings view

The settings view has a number of main categories and subcategories where settings and information for many of the car's functions are collected.

The settings view has 7 main categories: **My Car**, **Sound**, **Navigation**, **Media**, **Communication**, **Climate** and **System**.

In turn, each category contains a number of subcategories and setting options. The tables below show the first level of subcategories. The setting options for a function or area are described in more detail in the corresponding section of the owner's manual. For system settings not described in the corresponding section, see the section "Changing system settings in the settings view".

My Car

Subcategories
Displays
IntelliSafe
Park Assist
Drive Mode/Individual Drive Mode*
Lights
Mirrors
Locking and Unlocking Feedback
Electric Parking Brake
Seats
Wipers
Suspension

Audio

Subcategories
Sound Experience*
Tone
Balance
System Volumes

Navigation

Subcategories
Map
Route
Traffic
Guidance
System

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Media

Subcategories
AM/FM radio
DAB
Gracenote ®
Video

Communication

Subcategories
Phone
Text Messages
Bluetooth
Wi-Fi
Car Wi-Fi Hotspot
Car Modem Internet
Volvo On Call
Volvo Service Networks

Climate control

The main category **Climate** has no subcategories.

System

Subcategories
Date & Time
Language
Keyboard Layouts
Voice Control
Units
Storage
Software Updates
Factory reset
Services

Related information

- Settings view (p. 161)
- Changing system settings in the settings view (p. 163)

Changing system settings in the settings view

The **System** category in the settings view collects general settings and information for car systems, such as language and units.

The system settings under **Date & Time**, **Keyboard Layouts**, **Voice Control**, **Software Updates**, **Factory reset** and **Services** are described in the corresponding section of the owner's manual.

Changing system language

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Language**.
3. Select system language. Languages that support voice recognition have a voice recognition symbol.
   > The language in the driver display, centre display and head-up display is changed.

Changing system units

Changing length and volume units

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Units** ➔ **Units**.
3. Select from the following unit standards:
   - **Metric** - kilometres, litres and degrees Celsius.
   - **Imperial** - miles, gallons and degrees Celsius.
   - **US** - miles, gallons and degrees Fahrenheit.

   > The units in the driver display, centre display and head-up display are changed.

Changing the tyre pressure unit

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Units** ➔ **Tyre Pressure**.
3. Select a tyre pressure unit.

   > The unit for tyre pressure in the **Car status** app in the centre display is changed.

See storage information

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Storage**.

   > Storage information for the car's hard disk is shown, including total capacity, available capacity and how much space installed applications are using.

See the car's vehicle identification number

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Car Identification Number**.

   > The car's vehicle identification number (VIN[29]) is shown.

Related information

- Categories in the settings view (p. 162)
- Clock (p. 89)
- Using the keyboard in the centre display (p. 46)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)
- System updates (p. 481)
- Resetting settings in the settings view (p. 164)
- Book service and repair (p. 478)

Resetting settings in the settings view

It is possible to reset all modified settings in the settings view to their default values at once.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Factory reset**.
3. Press **OK** to confirm the reset.

Related information

- Changing system settings in the settings view (p. 163)
- Resetting user data for change of ownership (p. 165)

29 Vehicle Identification Number.

Changing settings for apps

All of the car's apps are listed in the app view. The app settings that relate to the car's embedded functions can be changed from the centre display's top view.

Apps for embedded functions - basic apps

The apps installed in the car from the beginning, e.g. **FM radio** and **USB**, are a part of Sensus and are part of the car's embedded functions. Settings for these apps can be changed directly in the top view in the centre display.

Change the settings for a basic app

1. Tap on the app, e.g. **FM radio**.
2. Drag down the top view.
3. Press **FM Radio Settings**.
4. Change settings as desired and confirm the selections.
5. Press either the physical home button or tap anywhere outside of the top view to exit the settings view. It is also possible to drag up the top view or tap on the tab at the bottom of the top view.

Most of the car's basic apps have this contextual setting option, but not all. Refer to the section "Categories in the settings view" for more information on how settings are changed.

Third party apps

Third party apps are not included in the car's system from the beginning, but are the type that can be downloaded e.g. **Volvo ID**. Here the settings are always made inside the app and not from the top view.

Related information

- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 37)
- Settings view (p. 161)
- Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps (p. 436)
- Categories in the settings view (p. 162)

Resetting user data for change of ownership

In the event of a change of ownership, user data and system settings should be restored to factory settings.

The settings in the car can be reset at different levels. Restore all user data and system settings to the original factory settings in the event of a change of ownership. In the event of a change of ownership it is also important to change the owner of the Volvo On Call* service.

Related information

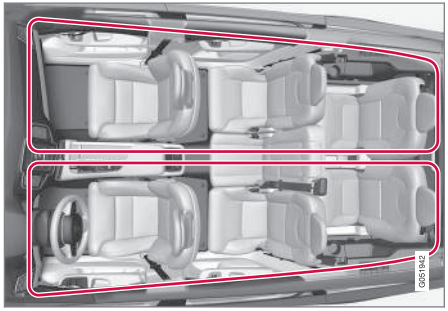
- Resetting settings in the settings view (p. 164)
- Volvo ID (p. 20)

CLIMATE CONTROL

Climate control

The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

2-zone climate

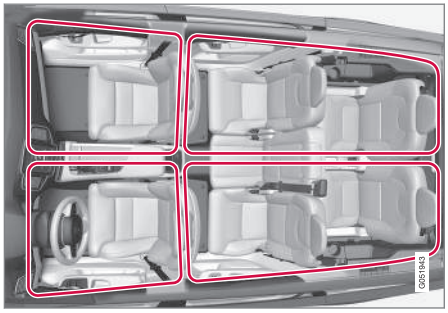


Climate zones with 2-zone climate.

With 2-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console.

4-zone climate*



Climate zones with 4-zone climate.

With 4-zone climate the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides in both the front and rear seat.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console. The functions for the rear seat can also be controlled from the climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console.

Related information

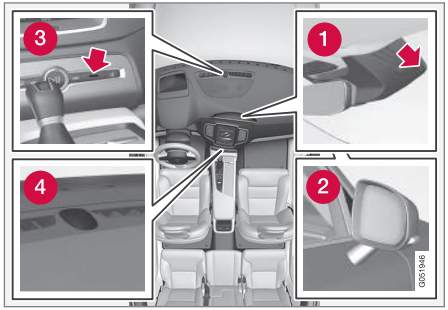
- Climate control - sensors (p. 169)
- Perceived temperature (p. 169)
- Air quality (p. 170)
- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Air distribution (p. 183)
- Parking climate* (p. 192)
- Voice recognition control of climate control (p. 108)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Climate control - sensors

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the climate in the car.

Sensor location



1. Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.
2. Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.
3. Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.
4. Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.

NOTE

Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

With the Interior Air Quality System* there is also an air quality sensor that is fitted into the climate control system air intake.

Related information

- Climate control (p. 168)
- Perceived temperature (p. 169)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 171)

Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on the perceived temperature, not on actual temperature.

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physically perceived temperature as affected by factors such as the ambient temperature, air speed, humidity, solar radiation, etc. in and around the car at the time.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand side's air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

Related information

- Climate control (p. 168)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 169)
- Regulating the temperature (p. 177)

Air quality

The materials selected for the passenger compartment and the air cleaning system ensure that the air quality in the passenger compartment is high.

Materials in the passenger compartment

The interior of the passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

Tested materials have been developed in order to minimise the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean.

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo to clean the interior.

Air cleaning system

In addition to the passenger compartment filter, the modifications for Clean Zone Interior Package* and the air quality system Interior Air Quality System* also help to maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

Related information

- Climate control (p. 168)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 170)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 171)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 171)
- Cleaning the interior (p. 523)

Passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

Replacing the passenger compartment filter

The filter must be replaced at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 170)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 171)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 171)
- Volvo service programme (p. 478)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Clean Zone Interior Package*

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is unlocked with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

NOTE

To maintain the CZIP standard in cars with CZIP, the IAQS filter must be changed after 15 000 km or once per year, depending on whichever occurs first. However, up to 75 000 km over 5 years.

In cars without CZIP and where the customer does not want to retain the CZIP standard, the IAQS filter must be changed during a normal service.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 170)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 170)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 171)

Interior Air Quality System*

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air quality system that separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and contaminants in the passenger compartment.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the air quality sensor senses that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated.

NOTE

The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the defrost functions for windscreen, side windows and rear window should be used.

NOTE

To maintain the CZIP standard in cars with CZIP, the IAQS filter must be changed after 15 000 km or once per year, depending on whichever occurs first. However, up to 75 000 km over 5 years.

In cars without CZIP and where the customer does not want to retain the CZIP standard, the IAQS filter must be changed during a normal service.

Activating/deactivating the air quality sensor

It is possible to set whether the air quality sensor should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Air Quality Sensor** to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

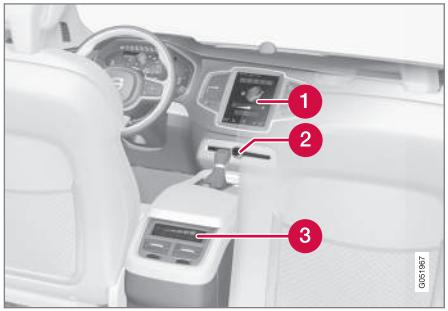
Related information

- Air quality (p. 170)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 170)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 171)
- Activating/deactivating air recirculation (p. 183)

Climate controls

The climate control system's functions are controlled from the centre display, physical buttons in the centre console and the climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console*.

Overview of climate controls



1. Climate controls in the centre display.
2. Defrost buttons in the centre console.
3. Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console*.

Related information

- Climate control (p. 168)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)
- Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console* (p. 174)
- Activating/deactivating defrost of windows and mirrors (p. 180)

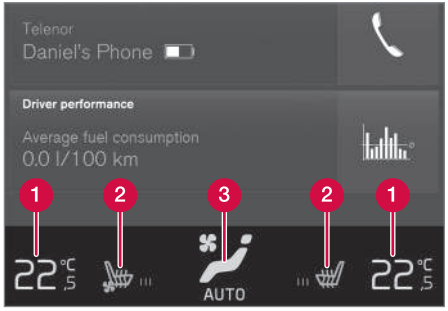
* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Climate controls in the centre display

All climate functions can be regulated from the climate row and the climate view in the centre display.

Climate row

The most common climate functions can be regulated from the climate row.



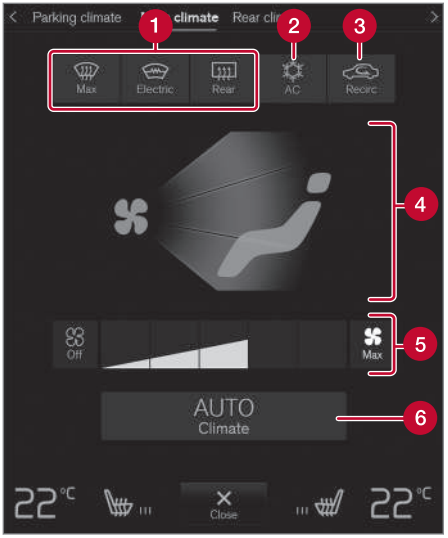
1. Temperature controls for driver and passenger side.
2. Controls for heated* and ventilated* driver and front passenger seat, as well as heated steering wheel*.
3. Button for access to the climate view. The graphic on the button shows activated climate settings.

Climate view

One tap on the centre button in the climate row gives access to the climate view. The climate view is divided into the tabs **Main climate**, **Rear climate*** and **Parking climate** *. Change between the tabs by swiping left/right or by pressing the respective heading.

Main climate

In addition to the climate row's functions, other main climate functions can also be controlled in the **Main climate** tab.

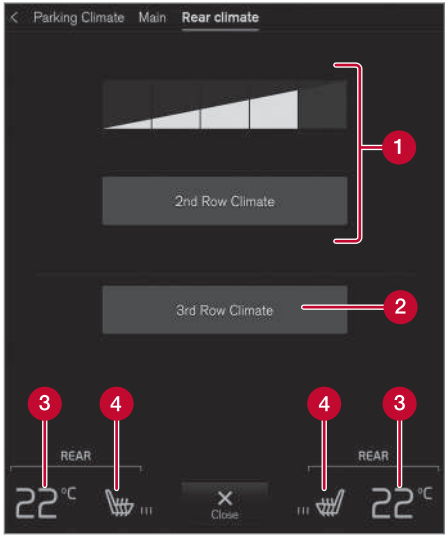


1. **Max**, **Electric**, **Rear** - Controls for defrosting the windows and door mirrors.
2. **AC** - Controls for air conditioning.
3. **Recirc** - Controls for air recirculation.
4. Controls for air distribution.
5. Fan control for front seat (with 2-zone climate, the control is shared with the rear seat).
6. **AUTO** - Auto regulating the climate.

▸▸

Rear climate control*

All climate functions for the rear seat can be regulated in the **Rear climate** tab.



1. Fan controls for rear seat, second seat row.
2. Controls for rear seat fan and air conditioning, third seat row*.
3. Temperature controls for rear seat.
4. Controls for heated rear seat*.

Parking climate*

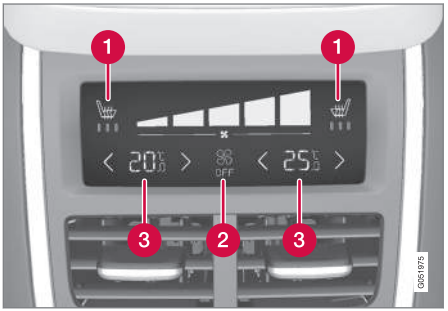
The car's parking climate control can be regulated in the **Parking climate** tab.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Activating/deactivating defrost of windows and mirrors (p. 180)
- Activating/deactivating air conditioning (p. 176)
- Activating/deactivating air recirculation (p. 183)
- Changing the air distribution (p. 184)
- Regulating the fan level (p. 179)
- Auto-regulating the climate (p. 175)
- Regulating the temperature (p. 177)
- Activating/deactivating heating of the seats* (p. 189)
- Activating/deactivating ventilation of the seats* (p. 190)
- Activating/deactivating heating of steering wheel* (p. 191)
- Parking climate* (p. 192)

Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console*

The rear seat's climate functions are controlled from the climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console.



1. Controls for heated rear seat*.
2. Fan controls for rear seat.
3. Temperature controls for rear seat.

If the car is not equipped with a climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console, but has heated rear seats*, there are physical buttons at the rear of the tunnel console for controlling these.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Activating/deactivating heating of the seats* (p. 189)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

- Regulating the fan level (p. 179)
- Regulating the temperature (p. 177)

Auto-regulating the climate

With an auto-regulated climate, several climate functions are controlled automatically by the climate control system.

Auto-regulation button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Give a short or long press on **AUTO**.
   > Auto-regulation of the climate is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

   Auto-regulation automatically controls the air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution.

   Fan level and temperature are changed depending on whether a short or long press is given:

   - Short press - reset to previous settings.
   - Long press - changes to default settings (level **3** and 22 °C/72 °F).

Related information

- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

Activating/deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.

Activating/deactivating the main air conditioning

The air conditioning button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **AC**.
   > The air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

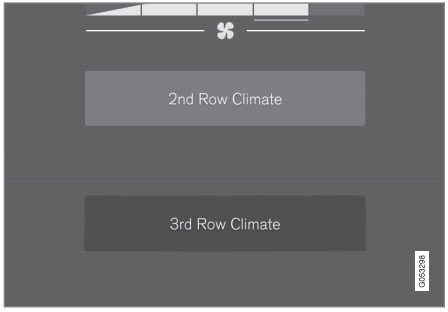
NOTE

Close the side windows and the panorama roof* for air conditioning to work optimally.

NOTE

It is not possible to activate the air conditioning when the fan control is in **Off** position.

Activating/deactivating the third seat row's air conditioning*



The air conditioning button in the tab **Rear climate** in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.
3. Press **3rd row climate**.
   > The air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

It is not possible to activate the third seat row's air conditioning if the main air conditioning is deactivated or the second seat row's climate control* is deactivated.

Activating/deactivating the third seat row's climate control when the engine is started*

It is possible (with 4-zone climate*) to set whether the third seat row's climate control should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Third Row Climate On At Engine Start** to activate/deactivate the third seat row's climate control when the engine is started.

Related information

- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Regulating the temperature

The temperature can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides. With 4-zone climate* the temperature can also be set separately for the front and rear seats.

Regulating temperature for front seat[1]

Temperature buttons in the climate row.

1. Press the left or right-hand side temperature button in the centre display's climate row to open the controls.

Temperature control.

2. Regulate the temperature by either of the following:
   - drag the control to the desired temperature, or
   - press +/– to raise/lower the temperature gradually.

   > The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

Synchronising the temperature

Synchronisation button on the driver's side temperature controls.

1. Press the driver's side temperature button in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls.
2. Press **Synchronise temperature**.

   > The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side and the synchronisation symbol is shown adjacent to the temperature button.

Synchronisation is stopped by a further press on **Synchronise temperature** or by changing the passenger side or rear seat* temperature settings.

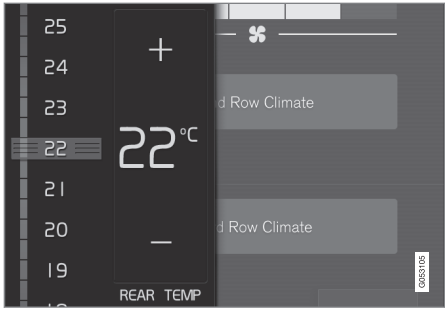
[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

Regulating temperature for rear seat*

From the front seat

Temperature buttons in the **Rear climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.
3. Press the left or right-hand side temperature button to open the control.



Temperature control.

4. Regulate the temperature by means of the following:
   - drag the control to the desired temperature
   - press +/– to raise/lower the temperature gradually.

   > The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

From the rear seat

Temperature control on the climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console.

– Press the left or right-hand side **</>** buttons on the tunnel console's climate panel in order to lower/raise the temperature gradually.

  > The temperature changes and the screen in the climate panel shows the set temperature.

NOTE

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

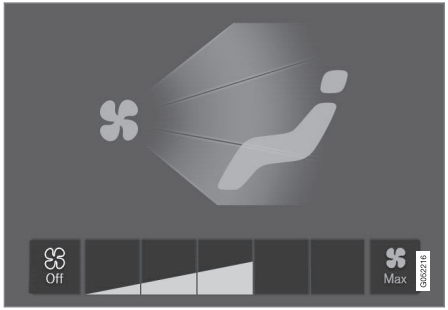
Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)
- Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console* (p. 174)
- Perceived temperature (p. 169)

Regulating the fan level

The fan can be set to five different automatic fan levels as well as **Off** and **Max**. With 4-zone climate* the fan level can be set separately for the front and rear seats.

Regulating fan level for front seat[2]



Fan control buttons in the climate view.

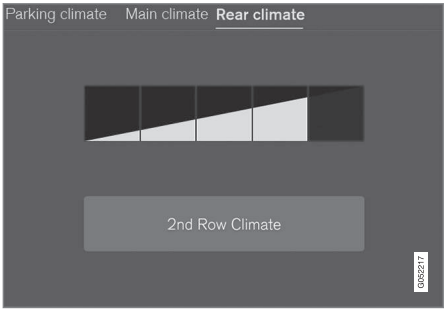
1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Tap on the desired fan level, **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.
   > Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

IMPORTANT

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Regulating fan level for rear seat*

From the front seat



The fan control buttons in the tab **Rear climate** in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.
3. Tap on the desired fan level, **1-5**.

   The fan level for the second and third seat row* can be switched off by tapping on **2nd row climate**.

   Third seat row fan level follows the level for the second seat row, but can be deactivated separately* by tapping on **3rd row climate**.
   > Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

[2] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

From the rear seat

Fan controls on the climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console.

– Press the desired fan level, **Off** or **1-5** on the tunnel console climate panel.
  > Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

NOTE

The fan level for the rear seat cannot be set if the fan level for the front seat is in position **Off**.

NOTE

The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.

Related information

- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)
- Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console* (p. 174)

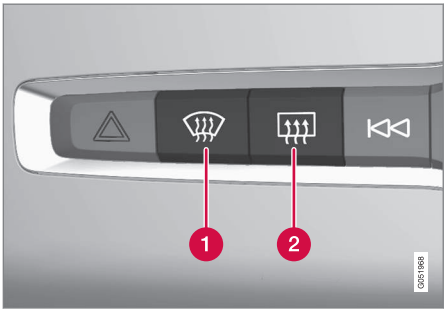
Activating/deactivating defrost of windows and mirrors

The three functions max defroster, heated windscreen*, and heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove misting and ice from the windows and door mirrors.

From physical buttons in the centre console

The centre console contains physical buttons for quick access to the defrost functions.

With heated windscreen* the max defroster can only be activated individually from the climate view in the centre display.



Physical buttons in the centre console.

1. Button for heated windscreen* and max defroster.
2. Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Cars without heated windscreen:

– Press the button (1).
  > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Cars with heated windscreen:

– Press the button (1) repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
  - Activated heated windscreen
  - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
  - Deactivated.
  > Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Rear window and door mirror defrosters:

– Press the button (2).
  > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

From the climate view in the centre display

Activating/deactivating max defroster

Max defroster button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Max**.
   > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

   Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

   When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

NOTE

Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

Activating/deactivating heated windscreen*

The button for heated windscreen in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Electric**.
   > Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

NOTE

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

NOTE

If the heated windscreen is activated when the Start/Stop function has auto-stopped the engine then the engine will be restarted.

Activating/deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors

The button for heated rear window and door mirrors in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Rear**.
   > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating/deactivating automatic start of heated windows

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen* and heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Electric Front Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated windscreen.

   Select **Auto Electric Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

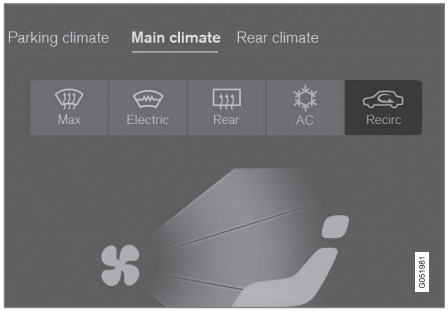
Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Activating/deactivating air recirculation

The air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust fumes, etc. from the passenger compartment, by means of no outside air being drawn into the car.



The air recirculation button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Recirc**.
   > Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

IMPORTANT

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

NOTE

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

Activating/deactivating the timer for air recirculation

It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the air recirculation timer.

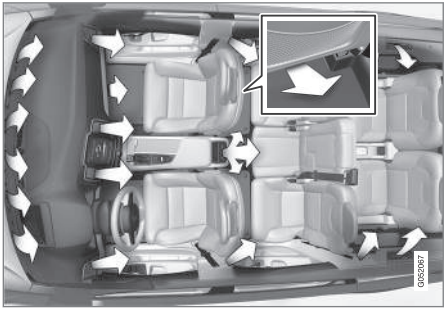
Related information

- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

Air distribution

The climate control system distributes the incoming air via a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

Overview of air distribution



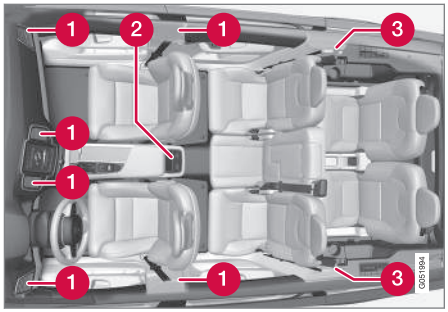
Air distribution in the passenger compartment with 4-zone climate.

Automatic and manual air distribution

With auto-regulated climate running the air distribution takes place automatically. If necessary, the air distribution can be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

There are 6, 8* or 10* adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment depending on the climate control system and number of seats.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

1. With 2-zone climate - four on the instrument panel and one on each of the door pillars between the front and rear doors.
2. Addition with 4-zone climate* - two at the rear of the tunnel console.
3. Addition with 4-zone climate* and seven seats - one on each of the door pillars behind the rear doors.

NOTE

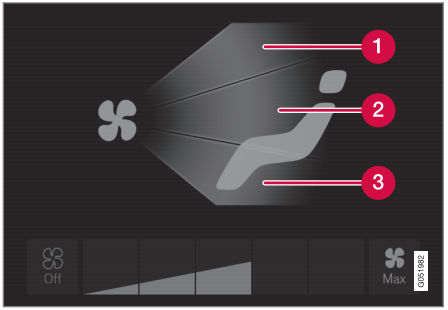
Remember that small children may be sensitive to air flows and draughts.

Related information

- Climate control (p. 168)
- Changing the air distribution (p. 184)
- Opening/closing and aiming the air vents (p. 185)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 187)
- Auto-regulating the climate (p. 175)

Changing the air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.



The air distribution buttons in the climate view.

1. Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents
2. Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console
3. Air distribution - air vents in the floor

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.
   > The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 183)
- Opening/closing and aiming the air vents (p. 185)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 187)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

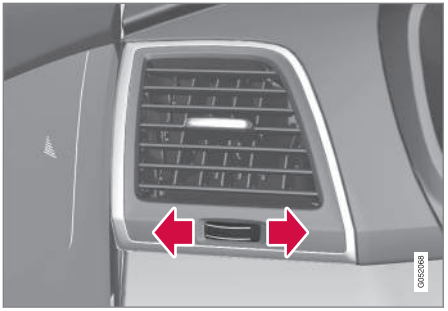
Opening/closing and aiming the air vents

Some air vents in the passenger compartment can be opened, closed and aimed individually.

If the door pillar vents and instrument panel outer vents are aimed toward the side windows, then misting can be removed.

If the door pillar vents are aimed inwards then, in a hot climate, a comfortable environment is obtained in the passenger compartment.

Opening/closing the air vents



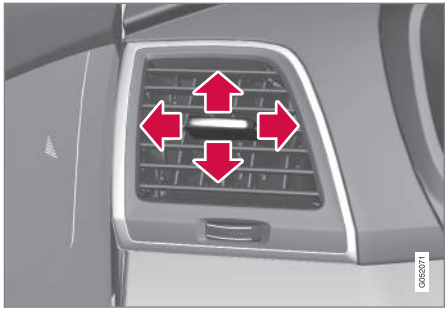
The air vent's thumbwheel[3].

– Roll the thumbwheel in order to open/close the air flow from the nozzle.

  The larger the number of the white lines on the thumbwheel that are visible, the higher the air flow.

3 The illustration is schematic - nozzle design varies depending on location.

Aiming the air vents



The air vent's lever[3].

– Move the lever sideways/vertically in order to aim the air flow from the nozzle.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 183)
- Changing the air distribution (p. 184)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 187)

3 The illustration is schematic - nozzle design varies depending on location.

Table of air distribution options

The air distribution can be changed manually if required. The following options are available for setting.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control.	
	Main air flow from the defroster vents. Some air flows from other air vents.	Counteracts misting and icing in a cold and humid climate (to achieve this, fan level must not be low).
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides efficient cooling in a hot climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides heat or cooling to the floor.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	Main air from the defroster vents and air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort in hot and dry climates.
	Main air flow from the defroster vents and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort and good demisting in a cold or humid climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort in sunny weather with cool outdoor temperatures.
	Main air flow from the defroster vents, from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor.	Provides a cooler temperature near the floor in hot, dry climates, or a warmer temperature in the upper part of the passenger compartment in a cold climate.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 183)
- Changing the air distribution (p. 184)
- Opening/closing and aiming the air vents (p. 185)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

Activating/deactivating heating of the seats*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

Activating/deactivating heating of the front seat*

Steering wheel and seat buttons in the climate row.

1. Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

   If the car is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel, the button for heated seats is immediately available in the climate row.
2. Repeatedly press the button for heated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Middle** and **Low**.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Activating/deactivating heating of the rear seat*

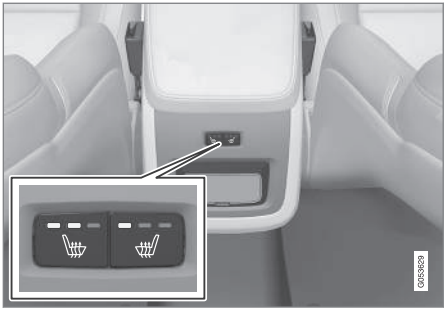
From the front seat*

Buttons for heated seats in the group **Rear climate** in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.
3. Repeatedly press the button for heated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Middle** and **Low**.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

From the rear seat

With 2-zone climate:



Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

– Press repeatedly on the left or right-hand side's physical buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console to switch between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Middle** and **Low**.
  > The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

With 4-zone climate*:

▶▶

Seat heating indication and controls on the climate panel at the rear of the tunnel console.

– Press repeatedly on the left or right-hand side's buttons for heated seats on the tunnel console's climate panel to switch between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Middle** and **Low**.
  > The level changes and the screen in the climate panel shows the set level.

NOTE

Heating of the rear seat is deactivated automatically after 15 minutes.

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Activating/deactivating automatic start of heated seats

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Under **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level**, select **Off**,**Low**,**Middle** or **High** in order to activate/deactivate the automatic starting of the heating for the driver and passenger seats and to select the level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)
- Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console* (p. 174)

Activating/deactivating ventilation of the seats*

The seats can be ventilated, for example, to remove moisture from clothes.

The ventilation system consists of fans in the seats and backrests that draw air through the seat upholstery. The cooling effect increases the cooler the passenger compartment air becomes. The system can be activated when the engine is running and takes seat temperature, solar radiation and outside temperature into consideration.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Activating/deactivating ventilation of the front seat

Steering wheel and seat buttons in the climate row.

1. Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

   If the car is not equipped with heated seats or heated steering wheel, the button for ventilated seats is immediately available in the climate row.

2. Repeatedly press the button for ventilated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Middle** and **Low**.

   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

NOTE

The seat ventilation should be used carefully by people sensitive to draughts. Level **Low** is recommended for long-term use.

IMPORTANT

Seat ventilation cannot be started if the passenger compartment temperature is too low. This is in order to avoid cooling down the person sitting in the seat.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)

Activating/deactivating heating of steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

Activating/deactivating heating of steering wheel

Steering wheel and seat buttons in the climate row.

1. Press the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate row of the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

   If the car is not equipped with heated seats or ventilated seats, the button for heated steering wheel is immediately available in the climate row.

2. Repeatedly press the button for heated steering wheel in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Middle** and **Low**.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Activating/deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Under **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level**, select **Off**,**Low**,**Middle** or **High** in order to activate/deactivate the automatic starting of steering wheel heating and to select the level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 172)
- Climate controls in the centre display (p. 173)
- Steering wheel (p. 124)

Parking climate*

The climate of the car's passenger compartment can be preconditioned or maintained while the car is parked.

Preconditioning and climate comfort retention are controlled from the **Parking climate** tab in the centre display's climate view.

Preconditioning

Preconditioning of the car before driving reduces wear and energy needs during a journey.

Preconditioning can use direct start or be set via the timer.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- The parking heater*, in a cold climate, warms up both the passenger compartment and the engine.
- The ventilation, in a hot climate, cools the passenger compartment to the current outer temperature.

NOTE

During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

Climate comfort retention

The climate in the car's passenger compartment can be maintained while the car is parked, e.g. if the engine needs to be switched off but the driver or passenger(s) wants to remain in the car and maintain the level of climate comfort.

Starting climate comfort retention is only possible via direct start.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- Residual heat from the engine, in a cold climate, heats the passenger compartment to comfort temperature.
- The ventilation, in a hot climate, cools the passenger compartment to the current outer temperature.

NOTE

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

Related information

- Climate control (p. 168)
- Starting/stopping preconditioning* (p. 193)
- Timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Starting/switching off climate comfort retention* (p. 196)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control* (p. 198)
- Heater* (p. 199)
- Parking heater* (p. 200)

Starting/stopping preconditioning*

Preconditioning warms the passenger compartment and engine or cools the passenger compartment before driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display or a mobile phone.

Starting/stopping from the centre display

Preconditioning button in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Preconditioning**.
   > Preconditioning is started/switched off and the button is illuminated/extinguished.

NOTE

The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow inside the front right-hand wheel housing can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Starting from a mobile phone*

Start of preconditioning and information about the selected settings can be managed from a mobile phone that has the Volvo On Call* mobile app. The preconditioning warms the passenger compartment to the comfort temperature or cools it to the current outer temperature.

To be able to also cool the passenger compartment to the comfort temperature (with the car's air conditioning) the Engine Remote Start - ERS[4] via Volvo On Call* mobile app. can be used.

Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 192)
- Timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Starting/switching off climate comfort retention* (p. 196)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control* (p. 198)
- Heater* (p. 199)

Timer for preconditioning*

The timer can be set so that the preconditioning is finished at a predetermined time.

The timer can handle up to 8 different settings for:

- A time on a single date
- A time on one or more days of the week, with or without repetition.

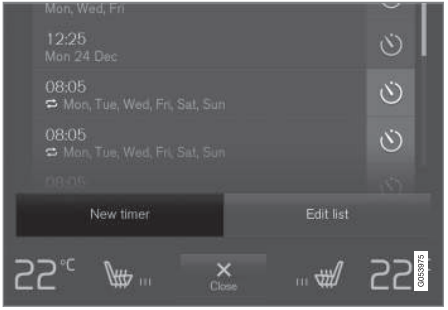
Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 192)
- Setting the timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Activating/deactivating the timer for preconditioning* (p. 196)
- Starting/stopping preconditioning* (p. 193)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control* (p. 198)

Setting the timer for preconditioning*

The timer for preconditioning can manage up to 8 time settings.

Adding a time setting



The button to add a time setting in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.

4 Certain car models and markets.

3. Press **Add timer**.
   > A pop-up window is shown.

NOTE

It is not possible to add a time setting if there already are 8 settings entered for the timer. Delete a time setting in order to be able to add a new one.

4. Tap on **Date** to set the time for a single date.

   Tap on **Days** to set the time for one or more days of the week.

   With **Days**: Activate/deactivate repetition by ticking/unticking the box for **Repeat weekly**.

5. With **Date**: Select the date for preconditioning by scrolling the date list with the arrows.

   With **Days**: Select the days of the week for preconditioning by tapping on the buttons for the days of the week.

6. Set the time when the preconditioning should be finished by scrolling with the arrows.

7. Tap on **Confirm** in order to add the time setting.
   > The time setting is added to the list and is activated.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

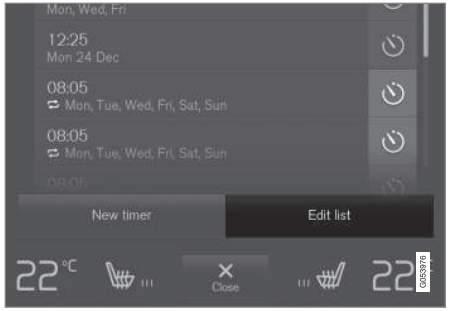
- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow inside the front right-hand wheel housing can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Editing a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press the time setting that is to be changed.
   > A pop-up window is shown.
4. Edit the time setting in the same way as described in "Adding a time setting" above.

Deleting a time setting



The button for editing the list/deleting the time setting in the tab **Parking climate** in the climate view.

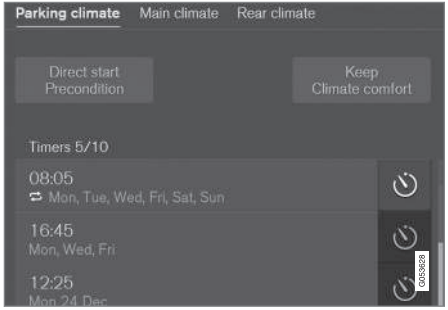
1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Edit list**.
4. Press the delete icon to the right in the list.
   > The icon changes to the text **Delete**.
5. Press **Delete** to confirm.
   > The time setting is removed from the list.

Related information

- Timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Activating/deactivating the timer for preconditioning* (p. 196)
- Heater* (p. 199)

Activating/deactivating the timer for preconditioning*

A time setting in the timer for preconditioning can be activated or deactivated based on need.



The timer buttons in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Activate/deactivate a time setting by tapping on the timer button to the right of the setting.
   > The time setting is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow inside the front right-hand wheel housing can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Related information

- Timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Setting the timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Heater* (p. 199)

Starting/switching off climate comfort retention*

Climate comfort retention maintains the climate in the passenger compartment after driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display.

Button for climate comfort retention in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Keep climate comfort**.
   > Climate comfort retention is started/switched off and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

If there is not enough residual heat in the engine to maintain the passenger compartment climate then it is not possible to start climate comfort retention.

NOTE

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 192)
- Starting/stopping preconditioning* (p. 193)

Symbols and messages for parking climate control*

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	**Parking climate** **Unavailable Fuel level too low**	Parking climate control cannot be activated when the fuel level is too low to start the parking heater*. In some cases, parking climate control can be activated, but has limited functionality. Filling the vehicle's normal fuel tank.
	**Parking climate** **Unavailable Battery level too low**	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the starter battery is too low to start the parking heater*. In some cases, parking climate control can be activated, but has limited functionality. Charging the battery.
	**Parking climate** **Unavailable, fuel and battery level too low**	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the starter battery and the fuel level are too low to start the parking heater*. In some cases, parking climate control can be activated, but has limited functionality. Charge the battery and fill up the car's normal fuel tank.
	**Parking climate** **Service required**	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop[A] to check the function as soon as possible.

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 192)
- Starting/stopping preconditioning* (p. 193)
- Starting/switching off climate comfort retention* (p. 196)
- Timer for preconditioning* (p. 194)
- Heater* (p. 199)
- Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 98)

Heater*

The heater helps the engine and passenger compartment reach the correct temperature before and during driving.

The heater has two subfunctions:

- Parking heater - heats the engine and passenger compartment, if necessary, when the parking climate control's preconditioning* is activated.
- Additional heater - heats the passenger compartment and engine, if necessary, during driving.

The heater is fuel-driven and is fitted in the front right-hand wheel housing.

NOTE

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from the right-hand front wheel housing and a low hum may be heard. This is perfectly normal.

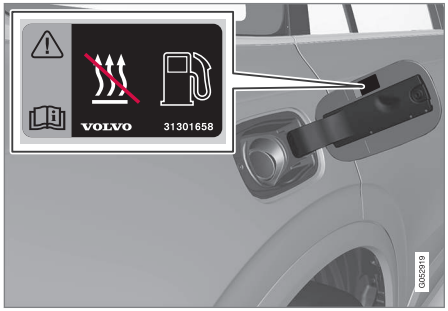
Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's starter battery. If the charge level of the starter battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

NOTE

Make sure that there is enough charge in the battery if the heater needs to be used.

Fuel and refuelling



Warning label on fuel filler flap.

The heater uses fuel from the car's normal fuel tank.

If the car is parked on a steep hill, the front of the car should point downhill to ensure that there is a supply of fuel to the heater.

If the level in the fuel tank is too low then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's normal fuel tank if the heater needs to be used.

WARNING

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Check in the driver display that the heater is switched off. The heat symbol is shown when it is operating.

Related information

- Parking heater* (p. 200)
- Additional heater* (p. 201)
- Parking climate* (p. 192)

Parking heater*

The parking heater helps the passenger compartment reach the correct temperature before driving.

The parking heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted in the front right-hand wheel housing.

NOTE

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from the right-hand front wheel housing and a low hum may be heard. This is perfectly normal.

The parking heater starts automatically when extra heat is required if the parking climate control's preconditioning* is activated.

It is then switched off automatically when the right temperature, the time of a set timer or the heater's maximum running time has been reached.

The heater's maximum running time is 40 minutes.

NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's normal fuel tank if the heater needs to be used.

Make sure that there is enough charge in the starter battery if the heater needs to be used.

IMPORTANT

Repeated use of the parking heater combined with short journeys may discharge the battery and impair starting.

If the heater is used on a regular basis, then the car should be driven for the same amount of time that the heater is used in order to ensure that the car's battery is recharged with the same amount of energy as consumed by the parking heater. The parking heater is used for a maximum of 40 minutes each time.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow inside the front right-hand wheel housing can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

WARNING

If there is a smell of fuel or there are unusual amounts of smoke, black smoke or unusual sounds of burning coming from the parking heater, switch off the heater and, if possible, pull out its fuse. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair.

Related information

- Heater* (p. 199)
- Additional heater* (p. 201)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

- Parking climate* (p. 192)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 508)

Additional heater*

The additional heater helps the passenger compartment and engine reach the correct temperature while driving.

The additional heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted in the front right-hand wheel housing.

NOTE

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from the right-hand front wheel housing and a low hum may be heard. This is perfectly normal.

The additional heater starts and is controlled automatically when heating is required while the car is being driven.

It then switches off automatically when the car is switched off.

NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's normal fuel tank if the heater needs to be used.

Make sure that there is enough charge in the starter battery if the heater needs to be used.

Activating/deactivating automatic start for the additional heater

It is possible to set whether automatic start for the additional heater should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Additional Heater** to activate/deactivate automatic start of the additional heater.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the automatic start for the additional heater should be switched off for short driving distances.

Related information

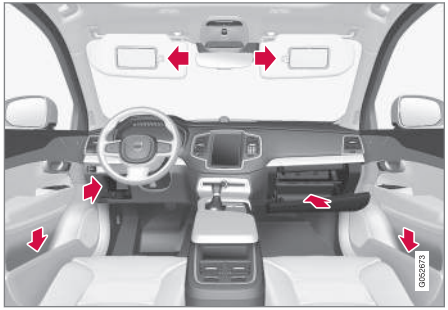
- Heater* (p. 199)
- Parking heater* (p. 200)

LOADING AND STORAGE

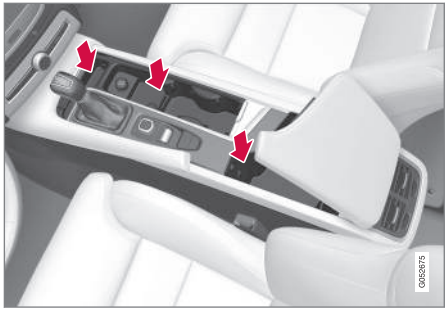
Passenger compartment interior

Overview of the passenger compartment's interior and storage locations.

Front seat

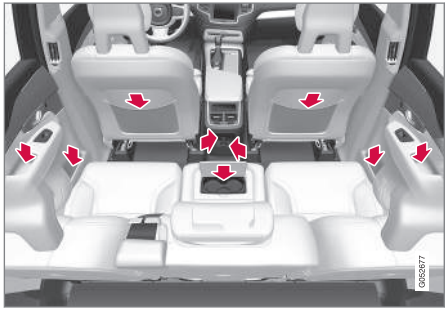


Storage compartment in the door panel and by the steering wheel, glovebox and sun visors.



Storage spaces with cup holder, ashtray*, electrical socket and cigarette lighter* as well as an AUX/USB socket in the tunnel console.

Second seat row



Storage compartment and ashtray* in the door panel, cup holder* in the centre seat backrest, storage pocket* on the front seat backrest and also electrical sockets and cigarette lighter* in the tunnel console.

Third seat row*

Storage compartment and cup holder in the side panel and storage space between the seats.

WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

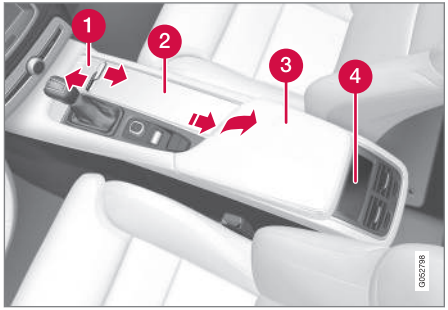
Related information

- Tunnel console (p. 205)
- Using the glovebox (p. 211)
- Sun visors (p. 211)
- Electrical sockets (p. 206)
- Emptying ashtrays* (p. 210)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



1. Storage compartment.
2. Storage compartment with cup holder for driver and passenger as well as 12 V socket. If ashtray and cigarette lighter were specified then there is a cigarette lighter in the 12 V socket and a detachable ashtray in the cup holder.
3. Storage compartment and AUX/USB input under the armrest.
4. Climate controls for the rear seat climate functions* or storage compartment.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 204)
- Electrical sockets (p. 206)
- Using the cigarette lighter*. (p. 210)
- Emptying ashtrays* (p. 210)
- Connecting media via AUX/USB input (p. 419)
- Climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console* (p. 174)

Electrical sockets

In the tunnel console there are two 12 V electrical sockets and one 230 V electrical socket*, in the cargo area there is one 12 V electrical socket*.

For the sockets to supply current, the car's electrical system must be set in the lowest ignition position **I**. The sockets are then active as long as the starter battery level does not become too low.

If the engine is switched off and the car is locked, the sockets are deactivated. If the engine is switched off and the car is not locked, or is locked with blocked lock position temporarily deactivated, then the sockets continue to be active for a further ten minutes.

NOTE

Remember that use of the electrical socket with the engine switched off entails a risk of discharging the starter battery, which can limit functionality.

230 V electrical socket*

230 V electrical socket in tunnel console, second seat row.

The socket can be used for various accessories requiring a 230 V supply, such as chargers and portable computers.

IMPORTANT

Maximum socket output is 150 W.

Using the socket

1. Pull down the socket cover and insert the accessory's plug.
   > The diode on the socket indicates its status.
2. Check that the diode is illuminated with a steady green light - only then is current available at the socket.
3. Disconnect the accessory by pulling out the plug - do not pull on the cable.

   Pull up the cover when the socket is not being used or the socket is left unattended.

IMPORTANT

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy connectors - they can damage the socket or come loose when driving.
- Do not use accessories that can cause interference to the car's radio receiver or electrical system for example.
- Position the accessory so that it is not at risk of injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or collision.
- Keep an eye on connected accessories as they can generate heat that can burn passengers or the interior.

WARNING

- Only use accessories that are undamaged and fault-free. The accessories must be rated for 230 V and 50 Hz with connectors designed for the socket. The accessories must have a CE marking, UL marking or an equivalent safety marking.
- Never allow sockets, connectors or accessories to come into contact with water or other liquids. Do not touch or use the socket if it appears to be dam-

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

aged or has come into contact with water or other liquid.

- Do not connect junction sockets, adapters or extension cables to the socket as these can override the socket's safety features.
- The socket is equipped with a protective cover, ensure that nothing protrudes in or damages the socket preventing the cover from doing its job. Do not leave children in the car unsupervised when the socket is active.

Failure to follow the advice given above can lead to severe or fatal electric shocks.

Status indication
A diode on the socket indicates its status:

Status indication	Reason	Action
Steady green light	The socket is delivering current to a connected device.	None
Blinking orange light	The temperature of the socket's voltage converter is too high (because for example the accessory draws too high a current or the passenger compartment is too warm).	Remove the plug and let the voltage converter cool down before reinserting the plug.
	The connected accessory draws too much current (intermittently or continuously) or is defective.	None The accessory cannot be connected to the socket.

Status indication	Reason	Action
Diode not illuminated	The socket does not sense that a plug has been inserted.	Check that the plug is properly inserted into the socket.
	The socket is not active.	Switch the car's electrical system to the lowest ignition position **I**.
	The socket has been active but is now deactivated.	Start the engine and/or charge the starter battery.

If the problem persists, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

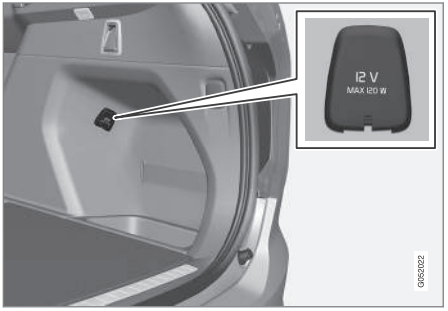
WARNING

Never modify or repair the 230 V electrical socket yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

12 V electrical socket

12 V electrical socket in tunnel console, front seat.

12 V electrical socket in tunnel console, second seat row.



12 V electrical socket in cargo area*.

The sockets can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

The socket in the tunnel console can be complemented with a cigarette lighter*.

IMPORTANT

Maximum socket output is 120 W per socket.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Using the sockets

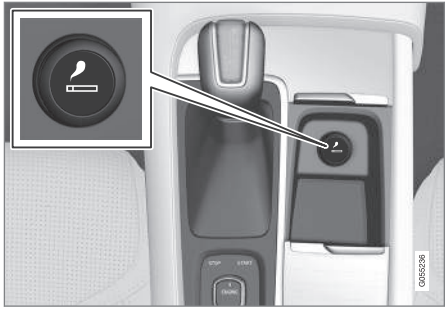
1. Remove the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold down the cover (cargo area) and plug in the accessory.
2. Unplug the accessory and replace the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold up the cover (cargo area) when the socket is not being used or if the socket is left unattended.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 204)

Using the cigarette lighter*.

The cigarette lighter can be mounted in the 12 V sockets in the front and rear sections of the tunnel console.



Cigarette lighter in the tunnel console, front seat.

Cigarette lighter in the tunnel console, second seat row.

1. Press in the button on the lighter.
   > When the lighter is glowing the button hops up.
2. Pull out the lighter from the socket and light a cigarette on the glowing coils.
3. Replace the lighter in the socket.

IMPORTANT

Observe caution when the lighter is activated so that the glowing part does not damage the interior for example.

Related information

- Tunnel console (p. 205)
- Electrical sockets (p. 206)
- Emptying ashtrays* (p. 210)

Emptying ashtrays*

With a cigarette lighter in the car there are detachable ashtrays in the tunnel console's cup holders and in the door panels for the second seat row.

Emptying an ashtray in the tunnel console

1. Detach the ashtray by pulling it straight up from the cup holder and empty the contents.
2. Refit the ashtray in the cup holder.

Emptying an ashtray in the door panels for the second seat row

1. Open the ashtray's cover and press it up to a fully vertical position.
   > The catch that holds the ashtray in place is released.
2. Lift up the ashtray and empty the contents.
3. Refit the ashtray and allow it to slide down in the tracks on the sides.
4. Press carefully on the ashtray's two corners furthest away from the door panel.
   > The catch that holds the ashtray in place reattaches.

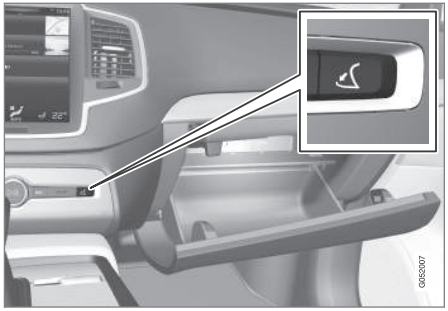
Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 204)
- Tunnel console (p. 205)
- Using the cigarette lighter*. (p. 210)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Using the glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side.



Glovebox and opening button in the centre console.

The printed owner's manual and maps can be kept in the glovebox, for example. There is also a pen holder on the inside of the lid.

Opening the glovebox

– Press the opening button in the centre console.

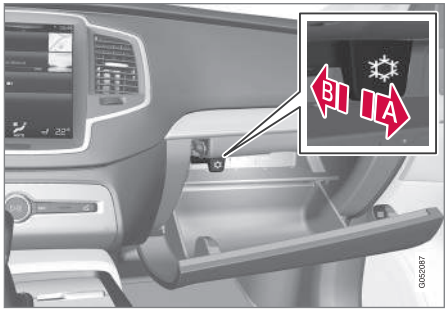
  > The glove box opens.

Locking/unlocking the glovebox

The glovebox can be locked, so-called private locking, e.g. when the car is taken in for service, left at a hotel or similar. Private locking also locks the tailgate.

Using the glovebox as a cooled area*

The glovebox can be used for cooling of e.g. drinks or food. The cooling works when the climate control system is active (i.e. when the car is set in ignition position **II** or when the engine is running).



A Cooling activated

B Cooling deactivated

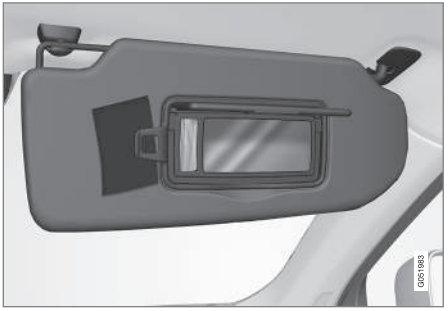
– Activate/deactivate the cooling by moving the control to the end position toward the passenger compartment/glovebox.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 204)
- Activate/deactivate private locking (p. 235)

Sun visors

The rear of each sun visor includes a vanity mirror with card holder.



Vanity mirror with lighting plus card holder.

The vanity mirror lighting* is switched on automatically when the lid is lifted.

The vanity mirror frame incorporates a holder for e.g. cards or tickets.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 204)

Cargo area

The car has a flexible cargo area that makes it possible to transport and secure large objects.

By folding down the backrests in the second and third* rows of seats, the cargo area becomes quite spacious. To facilitate loading and unloading, the rear section of the car can be lowered with the level control function*. Use load retaining eyelets or bag holders to secure the load, and the extendable cargo cover to conceal the load if desired.

The cargo area is also used to store the warning triangle and first-aid kit, and the towing eye and emergency puncture repair kit are stored in the area under the cargo area floor.

Related information

- Lowering backrests in the second seat row (p. 121)
- Lowering backrests in the third seat row* (p. 124)
- Level control* (p. 374)
- Loading (p. 212)
- Tools in the cargo area (p. 472)

Loading

There are a number of things to remember when loading the car.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The tailgate is opened via a button on the lighting panel or on the remote control key ( ).

WARNING

The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

Recommendations for loading

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.

Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down.

- Centre the load.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.
- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

WARNING

A loose object weighing 20 kg can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg.

WARNING

The protection provided by the inflatable curtain in the headlining may be compromised or eliminated by high loads.

- Never load cargo above the backrest.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

WARNING

Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car's occupants.

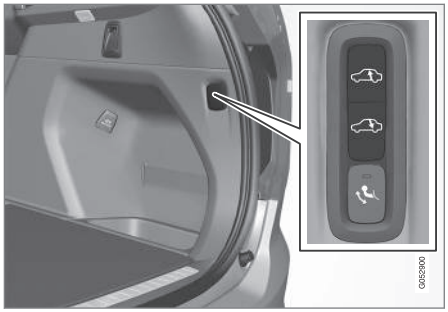
Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Level control of the car's rear section*

The car's rear section can be lowered/raised in order to create a better working height for the car's cargo area or to assist when a trailer shall be coupled/uncoupled to/from the towbar*.

Level control is performed via a control at the rear on the right-hand side in the cargo area's side panel.



Controls for raising/lowering the car's rear section.

The control consists of two buttons - one button that lowers and one button that raises the rear section of the car. For raising or lowering, each button must be held depressed until the rear section has reached the desired level.

It is not possible to raise the car's rear section higher than its normal level.

During driving, the rear section height will return to the normal level.

NOTE

It is not possible to adjust the height of the rear section when one or more of the doors or the bonnet is open. This does not apply to the tailgate.

WARNING

Pay attention to ensure that there is no person, animal or object under the car when lowering. This would involve danger to life and damage to the car or object.

Lowering the rear seat backrest

To increase space and simplify loading in the cargo area, the rear seat backrests can be lowered - see the section "Rear seats" for more information.

Loading on the roof

For loading on the car's roof, the load carriers[1] that Volvo have developed are recommended. This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.

[1] Volvo's load carriers are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

WARNING

The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads.

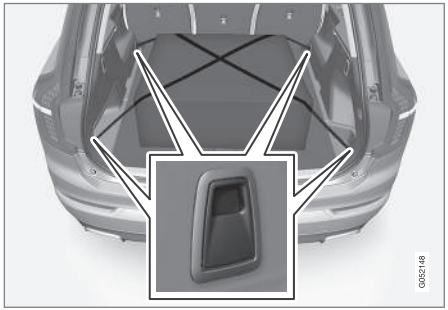
Read about maximum permitted roof load in the section on Weights.

Related information

- Load retaining eyelets (p. 214)
- Safety grille* (p. 219)
- Safety net* (p. 217)
- Cargo cover (p. 215)
- Weights (p. 533)
- Rear seat (p. 118)

Load retaining eyelets

The folding load retaining eyelets are used to fasten straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



WARNING

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects which protrude may cause injury under violent braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

Related information

- Loading (p. 212)
- Safety grille* (p. 219)
- Safety net* (p. 217)
- Bag hooks (p. 214)
- Cargo cover (p. 215)

Bag hooks

Bag hooks, together with an elastic strap, keep bags in place and prevent them from falling over and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

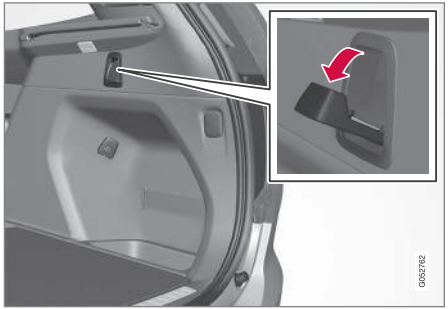
Under the floor hatch

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

There are two bag hooks and an elastic strap[2] in the cover, which is part of the floor hatch in the cargo area. The strap can be fitted in four different positions.

Lift up the cover in order to use the bag hooks. Fasten the bags in a suitable position with the enclosed elastic strap. If the bags have handles and are a suitable height - hang them in the hooks.

Along the sides



There are also two extensible bag hooks in side panels - one on each side of the cargo area.

IMPORTANT

The bag hooks may be loaded with a maximum of 5 kg.

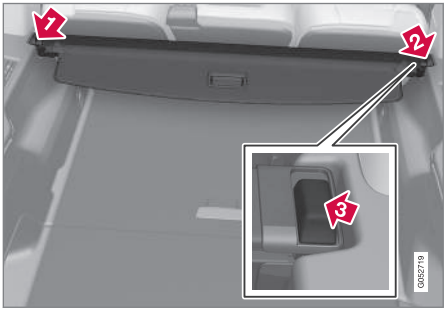
Related information

- Loading (p. 212)
- Safety grille* (p. 219)
- Safety net* (p. 217)
- Cargo cover (p. 215)

Cargo cover

In the extended position, the cargo cover prevents visual access to the cargo area.

Installation[3]



In retracted position:

1. Insert one of the cargo cover's end pieces in the recess in the side panel in the cargo area.
2. Then insert the other end piece in the recess in the side panel on the opposite side.

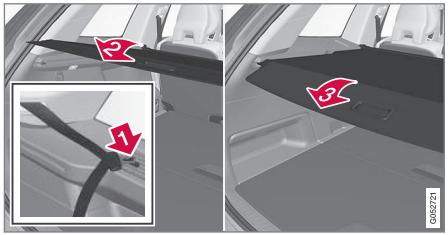
2 It is possible to reorder additional elastic straps at a Volvo dealer.
3 In the car model XC90 Excellence, the cargo cover is fixed and removal/fitting of the cover is not possible.

3. Press down the end pieces on both sides - one by one.
   > When a "click" is heard and the red marking on each end piece has disappeared, the cargo cover is attached - check that it is affixed securely.

Usage

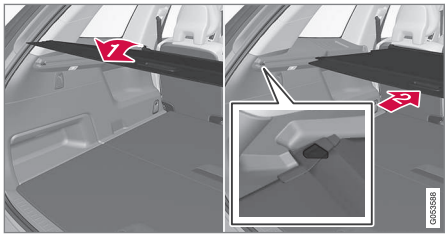
There are two extended positions for the cargo cover - a full-cover position and a work position, where it is partially extended to make it easier to reach further into the cargo area.

Full-cover position



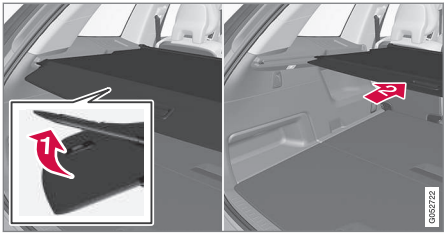
1. If 7-seat car - hang the locking tabs of the seatbelts for the third seat row from the designated hooks in the side panels. If 5-seat car - see the next point.
2. From retracted position - grip the handle and pull out the cover so it slides over the side panels in the cargo area - pull to the end position.
3. When the cargo cover is extended so that it covers the cargo area - guide the cover's attachment pins into the grooves in the side panels and release, while at the same time angling the handle with a light downward pressure.
   > The cargo cover is locked in the full-cover position.

Work position



1. From retracted position - grip the handle and pull out the cover so it slides over the side panels in the cargo area - pull to the end position and guide the cargo cover's attachment pins into the grooves in the side panels. (If the cover is already in the full-cover position - see the next point).
2. From full-cover position - grip the handle and guide the cargo cover's attachment pins into the grooves in the side panels and release.
   > Retract the cover until it stops in the work position.

In the event that your hands are occupied:



1. In the extended full-cover position - lightly push the handle part of the cargo cover upward, e.g. with an elbow.
   > 2. The cover retracts until it stops in the work position.

To return to full-cover position from work position:

1. Grip the handle and pull the cargo cover out to the end position.
2. Release slightly and angle the handle by means of a light downward pressure.
   > The cover is then locked in the end position.

IMPORTANT

Avoid loading objects on top of the cargo cover in extended position.

WARNING

In a 7-seat car, never have the cargo cover fitted when there are passengers in the rear seats. This may lead to serious injury in the event of a collision.

Retracting

From the full-cover position:

– Lift up the handle and pull it backward to disengage the cargo cover's attachment pins and then release.

From work position:

– Grip the handle and pull out the cargo cover in the grooves - pull to the full-cover position. Lift up the handle and pull it backward to disengage the attachment pins and then release.

  > Retract the cover with its attachment pins outside of the side panels until it stops in the retracted position.

Removal[3]

In retracted position:

1. Depress the button on one of the retracted cargo cover's end pieces and lift out that end.

   In a 7-seat car - release the third seat row's seatbelt locking tabs from the hooks above the side panels.

2. Angle the cover up/out carefully.

   > The other end piece loosens automatically and the cover can be lifted out of the cargo area.

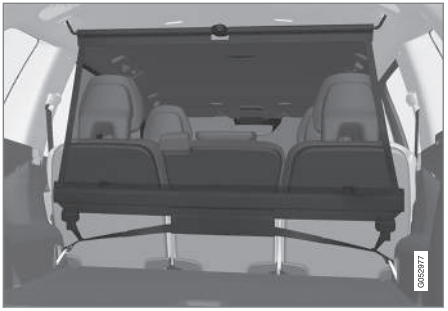
Related information

- Loading (p. 212)
- Safety grille* (p. 219)
- Safety net* (p. 217)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 214)

Safety net*

The safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

The safety net is fitted into four mounting points.



Safety net

For reasons of safety, the safety net must always be fastened and anchored as described below.

The net is made of a strong nylon fabric and can be secured two different locations in the car:

- Rear fitting - behind second seat row.
- Front fitting - behind the front seat backrests.

[3] In the car model XC90 Excellence, the cargo cover is fixed and removal/fitting of the cover is not possible.

WARNING

Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

Installation

WARNING

It is necessary to ensure that the upper securing points of the safety net are fitted correctly and that the puller-straps are hooked in properly.

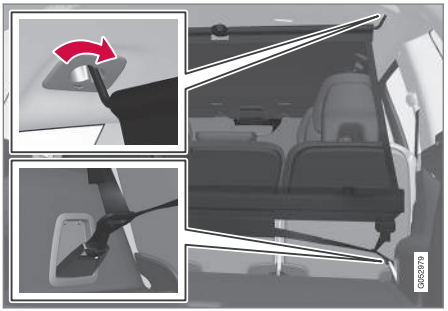
Damaged safety nets must not be used.

NOTE

The easiest way to fit the safety net is via one of the rear doors.

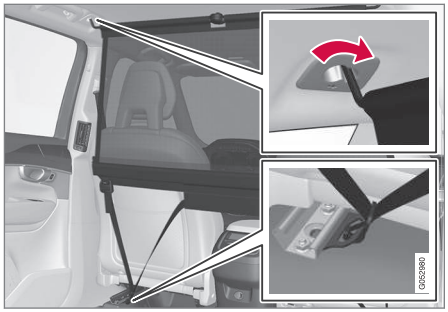
1. Unfold the safety net and make sure that the split upper rod in the net is locked in its extended position.
2. Hook one retaining hook of the net into the front or rear roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.
3. Hook the net's other retaining hook into the roof mounting on the opposite side - the telescopic spring-loaded retaining hooks facilitate alignment.

   Take care to press forward the net's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.
4. Rear fitting: With the net fitted in the rear roof mountings, hook the safety net's anchoring straps into the front floor eyes in the cargo area.



Rear fitting.

   Front fitting: With the net fitted in the front roof mountings, hook the anchoring straps into the outer eyes on the rear of the seat slide rails - it is easier if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.



Front fitting.

Pay attention to make sure that you do not press the seat/backrest hard against the net when the seat/backrest is moved back again - only adjust until the seat/backrest makes contact with the net.

5. Tension the safety net with the anchoring straps.

IMPORTANT

If the seat/backrest is pressed hard backwards against the safety net then the net and/or its roof mountings could be damaged.

Removing and storing

The safety net can be easily removed and folded up.

1. Reduce safety net tension by pressing the button in the anchoring strap lock and feeding out a little of the anchoring strap on each side.
2. Press in the catches and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.
3. Undo the upper attachments and release the net from the roof mountings.
4. Press the red button on the rod to enable folding and then roll up the net.

Related information

- Loading (p. 212)
- Safety grille* (p. 219)
- Cargo cover (p. 215)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 214)

Safety grille*

The safety grille prevents loads or pets in the cargo area from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking. For reasons of safety the safety grille must always be mounted and secured correctly.

The safety grille's parts consist of the grille and two loose attaching braces. The attaching braces each come with a screw cap and there are two plastic sleeves for the safety grille.

WARNING

Under no circumstances may anybody remain in the cargo area while the car is moving. This is to avoid injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

WARNING

The safety grille must only be used in the rear position described here. The roof mountings behind the front seats are not intended for the safety grille.

WARNING

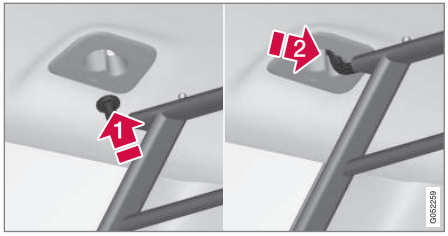
For safety reasons, the third seat row[4] must be lowered when the safety grille is fitted in the car.

IMPORTANT

It is not possible to have the protective grille fitted at the same time as the cargo cover.

Installation

1. Lower the rear seat and then lift the safety grille in through one of the rear side doors or via the tailgate - the arched/convex side of the grille should face the cargo area while the hooks on each side point up. The attaching braces and plastic sleeves are not used in this stage.



2. Guide one of the safety grille's hooks into the larger opening in the roof mounting (1).

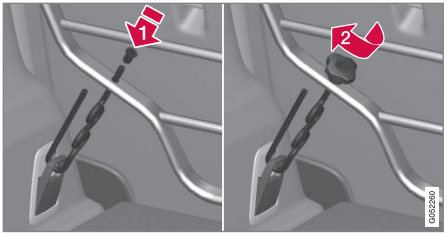
   Grasp the grille near the hook and pull/slide it towards the smaller opening (2).

   > The hook is now secured in the roof mounting's end position.

3. Repeat the steps in point 2 above to secure the other hook in the mounting on the other side.

WARNING

Make sure the hooks of the safety grille are securely fitted in the roof mountings so there is no risk of the grille coming loose.



4. Hook the attaching brace's hook through the load securing eyelet at the cargo floor from underneath, and guide the threaded part through the cargo grille's lower attachment hole from underneath (1).

   Slide a plastic sleeve on the threaded part of the attaching brace - the sleeve flange should face up - and guide it down through the hole. Then screw on the screw cap until its lower edge is approx. 5 mm from the grille (2).

5. Repeat the steps in point 4 on the other side.

6. Centre the safety grille and then tighten the two attaching braces alternately until the grille is properly secured.

Removal

To remove the safety grille - proceed in reverse order from the installation instructions above. Note that the attaching braces can be removed

[4] Applies to 7-seat cars.

before the plastic sleeves are removed from the holes in the grille.

Related information

- Loading (p. 212)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 214)
- Safety net* (p. 217)
- Cargo cover (p. 215)

LOCKS AND ALARM

Remote control key

The remote control key locks/unlocks the doors and tailgate and must be located inside the car for the car to be started.

Remote control key, on left, and button-less key (Key Tag), on right.

The remote control key is not physically used when starting since the car is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive Start) as standard. The key needs to be located in the front of the passenger compartment, e.g. in the driver's pocket or in the cup holder in the tunnel console, to be able to start the engine. See the section "Starting the engine".

As an option, keyless locking/unlocking of doors and tailgate (Passive Entry*) is also available. The key then has a range extending in a semicircle with a radius of approx. 1.5 metres out from the driver's door and approx. 1 metre out from the tailgate. See the section "Remote control key range".

With keyless starting and keyless locking/unlocking, the remote control key can be located anywhere in the passenger compartment or the cargo area while maintaining engine starting functionality.

Button-less key (Key Tag)

For cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) is supplied. It works the same way as the normal remote control key when it comes to keyless starting and locking/unlocking. It has no detachable key blade and the battery cannot be replaced. A new key tag can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Ordering additional keys

The car is supplied with two remote control keys - one key tag is supplied if the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*. Additional keys can be ordered. A total of twelve keys can be programmed and used for one single car.

In the event of a lost key, see the heading "Loss of a remote control key" below.

Remote control key buttons

The remote control key has four buttons - one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

- **Locking** - Pressing the button locks the doors and the tailgate and also arms the alarm[1]. Press and hold to close all of the windows and the panorama roof* simultaneously. See the section "Locking/unlocking from the outside" and "Locking/unlocking from the inside".
- **Unlocking** - Pressing the button unlocks the doors and tailgate simultaneously and also disarms the alarm. A longer press opens all the windows simultaneously, also called Global opening[2]. See the section "Locking/unlocking from the outside".
- **Tailgate** - Unlocks the tailgate only and disarms its alarm. On cars with power oper-

1 Option in certain markets.
2 Used, for example, to quickly air the car during hot weather.

ated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened automatically when the button is held depressed. The tailgate is also closed with a long press - acoustic warning signals sound. See the section "Power operated tailgate".

Panic function – Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

WARNING

If anyone is left in the car, make sure the power windows and sunroof are de-energised by always taking the remote control key with you when you leave the car.

Interference

Remote control key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking/unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

NOTE

Avoid storing the remote control key close to metal objects or electronic apparatus, e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers - preferably no closer than 10-15 cm.

If there is still interference, use the remote control key blade and then place the key in the backup reader to disarm the car. See section "Locking/unlocking with the detachable key blade".

NOTE

When the remote control key is placed in the cup holder, make sure that no other car keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) are in the cup holder. Several car keys close to each other in the cup holder can cause interference with each other.

Loss of a remote control key

If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The remaining remote control keys must be taken to the workshop. The code of the missing key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked in the centre display's top view.

Related information

- Remote control key range (p. 226)
- Detachable key blade (p. 236)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 243)
- Locking/unlocking from the inside (p. 231)
- Locking/unlocking from the outside (p. 227)
- Power operated tailgate* (p. 238)
- Start engine (p. 357)

Remote control key range

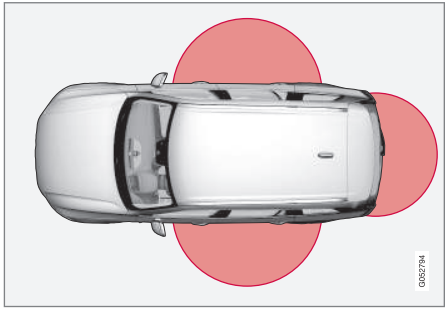
In order for the remote control key to work properly the key needs to be within a certain distance from the car.

For manual use

The remote control key's functions for e.g. locking/unlocking that are activated by pressing on or have a range that extends approx. 20 metres from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

For keyless use[3]



The marked area in the illustration shows areas covered by the system's antennas.

In order for the doors or tailgate to be locked and unlocked keylessly without pressing a button, or if the button-less key Key Tag is used, a remote control key must be within a semi-circular area of radius approx. 1.5 metres on the left or right-hand side of the car or within a radius of approx. 1 metre from the tailgate (see image above).

> **NOTE**
>
> The remote control key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade.

If the remote control key is removed from the car

If the remote control key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message **Car key not found Removed from car** is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

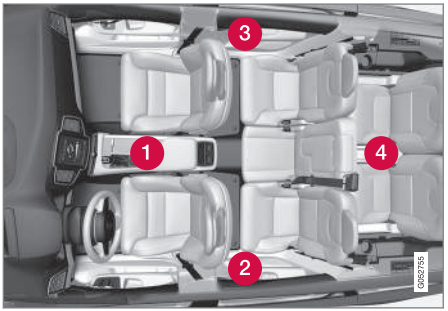
The message extinguishes when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's **O** button, or when the last door is closed.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Antenna locations for the start and lock system (p. 226)

Antenna locations for the start and lock system

The car is equipped with a keyless start and lock system[4] and therefore has a number of built-in antennas positioned at different locations in the car.



Antenna locations.

1. Under the cup holder in the front section of the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door[5]
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door[5]
4. In the centre of the rear seat's backrest[5]

[3] Only applies to cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking option (Passive Entry*).

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

WARNING

People with pacemaker operations should not come closer than 22 cm to the keyless system's antennae with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the keyless system.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Remote control key range (p. 226)

Locking/unlocking from the outside

The car is locked/unlocked from the outside using buttons on the remote control key or with the door or tailgate handles if the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry)*. The tailgate can be operated via power operation* and/or foot movement*.

Locking/unlocking

The buttons on the remote control key can be used to lock/unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously.

It is possible to select different unlocking sequences, which can be found in the top view of the centre display. Go to **Settings ➔ My Car ➔ Locking ➔ Remote Unlock**.

Then select **Unlock All Doors** or **Driver Door Only**.

In order for the lock sequence to be activated, the driver's door must be closed. If any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then they are locked. The alarm[6] movement detector is only armed once they have been closed.

If it is not possible to lock/unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - in which case, lock or unlock the driver's door with the detachable key blade. See the section "Detachable key blade" for more information.

NOTE

Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

WARNING

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the deadlocks in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

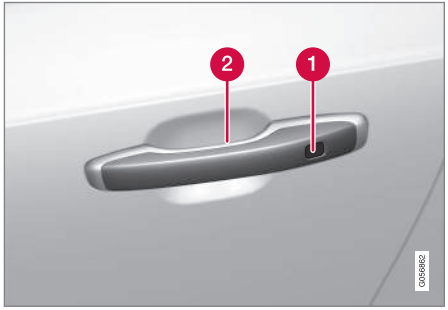
Keyless locking/unlocking*

If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*, it is sufficient to have the remote control key in the vicinity e.g. in a pocket or a bag, making it more convenient to open the car if your hands are full. For information on the system's range, see the section "Remote control key range".

The outside of the door handles contains a recess for locking, while the inside contains a

4 The keyless lock system only applies to cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*).
5 Only in cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*).
6 Option in certain markets.

touch-sensitive surface for unlocking. The tailgate handle has a rubberised pressure plate that is only used for unlocking.



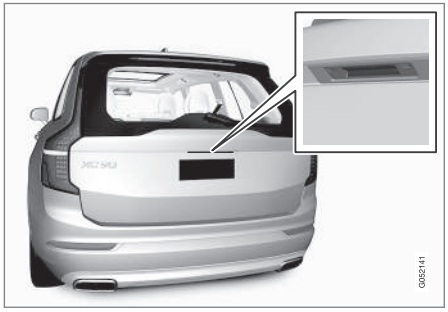
Recess on outside of door handles for locking. Touch-sensitive surface on the inside for unlocking.

1. Touch-sensitive recess for locking
2. Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

NOTE

It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time, gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. Which means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

To close all side windows and the panorama roof* simultaneously - place a finger against the touch-sensitive recess on the outside of the door handle until all side windows and the panorama roof* are closed.



Rubberised pressure plate on the tailgate used for unlocking only.

Locking the doors and tailgate

All side doors must be closed to be able to lock the car. The tailgate, on the other hand, can be open when locking the car with a side door handle.

– Touch the marked surface towards the rear on the outside of a door handle after the door has been closed, or press the lock button on the bottom edge of the tailgate before closing it.
  > The lock indicator in the windscreen starts to flash to indicate the car is locked.

NOTE

It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time, gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. Which means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

Unlocking the doors and tailgate

– Grasp a door handle or press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle to unlock the car.
  > The lock indicator in the windscreen extinguishes to confirm the car is unlocked - open the doors or tailgate as usual.

NOTE

It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time, gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. Which means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Unlocking sequences

Different sequences for unlocking can be selected in the centre display's top view:

Go to **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **Locking** ➔ **Keyless Unlock** and select **All Doors** or **Single Door**.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within two minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

Remote Door Unlock (RDU)

It is possible to remotely unlock the car with the Volvo On Call* app.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Power operated tailgate* (p. 238)
- Locking/unlocking the tailgate (p. 233)
- Opening/closing the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 241)
- Remote control key range (p. 226)
- Detachable key blade (p. 236)
- Alarm (p. 248)

Indication on locking/unlocking the car

When the car is locked or unlocked using the remote control key, the direction indicators confirm that locking/unlocking was correctly performed. It is possible to adapt the indication for locking/unlocking. To adapt the indication, go to the centre display and then tap on **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **Locking** ➔ **Locking and Unlocking Feedback**.

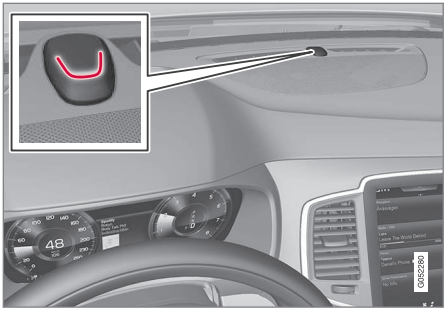
Exterior indication

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate locking by flashing and retracting the door mirrors[8].
- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate unlocking by two flashes and extending the door mirrors[8].

All doors, tailgate and bonnet must be closed to indicate the car is locked.

If locking is performed with only the driver's door closed[9], the car will be locked but indication will only occur after all doors, tailgate and bonnet have been closed.

Indication on the instrument panel



The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel show the status of the alarm system.

A long flash indicates that the car has been locked. When the car is locked, this will be indicated by short, pulsating flashes.

8 Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.
9 Does not apply to cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*).

Indicator in the lock buttons

Lock buttons only in the front doors

Lock buttons with indicator lamp in the front door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button of either front door indicates that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lamp will extinguish in both doors.

In all doors*

Lock button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button for one of the doors indicates that the door in question is locked. If any door is unlocked, its lamp will extinguish while the others will continue to illuminate.

Selecting the function

Different options for indicating locking/unlocking can be set via the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**.
3. Adjust settings under **Locking and Unlocking Feedback**.

Read more about indication of locking/unlocking in section "Approach lighting" and "Adjusting the door mirrors".

Related information

- Locking/unlocking from the outside (p. 227)
- Approach light duration (p. 140)
- Adjusting the door mirrors (p. 146)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Locking/unlocking from the inside

The doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked from inside using the central locking controls in the front doors. The lock controls* on the rear doors each lock their own rear door.

Central locking

Locking/unlocking button with indicator lamp in the front door.

– Press the button to lock and the button to unlock.

Unlocking

1. Press the button to unlock all side doors and the tailgate.
2. Pull the opening handle on one of the side doors and release.
   > The door is unlocked and opened.

A long press on the button opens all the side windows simultaneously - also called global opening[10].

Locking

– Press the button - both front doors must be closed.
  > All doors and the tailgate are locked.

A long press on the button closes all side windows and the panorama roof* simultaneously.

Lock button* rear doors

Locking button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

The rear door lock buttons only lock their respective rear door.

To unlock the door:

– Pull the door handle - the door unlocks and opens.

Automatic locking

The doors and tailgate are locked automatically when the car starts to move.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**.
3. Select **Auto Door Locking**
   > The help text **Doors and tailgate lock when the car moves** is shown and the doors and tailgate are locked automatically.

Related information

- Locking/unlocking from the outside (p. 227)
- Indication on locking/unlocking the car (p. 229)

10 Used, for example, to quickly air the car during hot weather.

Deadlocks

Deadlocks means that all door handles are mechanically disengaged, which prevents doors being opened from the inside.

Deadlocks are activated with the remote control key and in keyless locking (Passive Entry)*. Deadlocks are activated with a delay of about 10 seconds after the doors have locked.

NOTE

If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked with the remote control key, keyless unlocking or Volvo On Call (VOC)* mobile app when deadlocks are activated. The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade.

WARNING

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the deadlocks in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

Temporary deactivation

If someone is going to stay in the car but the doors must be locked from the outside, then deadlocks can be temporarily switched off. In conventional locking, the electrical sockets are deactivated immediately, but when deadlocks are temporarily deactivated, they will be active for a maximum of 10 minutes after locking.

Temporary deactivation can be done performed via the centre display's top view, select:

Settings ➔ My Car ➔ Locking ➔ Reduced Guard.

This can also be done from the centre display's function view by pressing **Reduced guard**.

Reduced Guard is then shown in the centre display. Deadlocks are temporarily deactivated the next time the car is locked. If the car is unlocked and then locked again, deadlocks must be temporarily deactivated again. Note that the alarm's movement and tilt detectors* are switched off at the same time.

The system is reset the next time the engine is started.

NOTE

- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Locking/unlocking from the outside (p. 227)
- Locking/unlocking from the inside (p. 231)
- Locking/unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 237)
- Alarm (p. 248)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Locking/unlocking the tailgate

The tailgate can be locked/unlocked and opened in different ways depending on the equipment level of the car.

Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key

The alarm for the tailgate can be disarmed and the tailgate unlocked on its own by using the remote control key's button.

There are two different ways to unlock the tailgate

1. Press the remote control key's button.
   > The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the alarm is not armed for the whole of the car.

   The alarm's level and movement sensors and the sensors for opening the tailgate are disconnected.

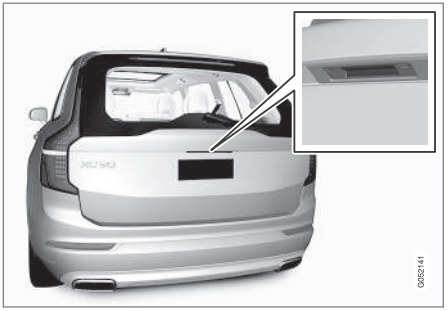
   The tailgate is unlocked, but remains closed while the doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed.

   To open the tailgate, grip the rubber pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle and open the tailgate.

   If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.
2. With the power operated tailgate* option

   Long press (approx. 1.5 sec) on the remote control button
   > The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed.

Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*



Rubber plate with pressure-sensitive surface.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock. You simply need to have the remote control key in the vicinity e.g. in a pocket or a bag.

1. To open the tailgate - lightly press on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.
   > The lock is released.

NOTE

If the remote key is not detected sufficiently close to the tailgate, locking/unlocking will not work. See the section "Remote key range" for more information.

2. Lift by the outside handle in order to fully open the tailgate.

IMPORTANT

- Minimal force is required to release the rear hatch lock - just gently press the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the rear hatch - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.

WARNING

Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

Unlocking from the inside of the car

To unlock the tailgate:

1. Brief press on the button on the instrument panel.
   > The tailgate can be unlocked and opened from the outside by grasping the rubberised pressure plate.
2. Plus with the power operated tailgate option

   Long press on the button on the instrument panel.
   > The tailgate opens.

Locking with the remote control key

– Press the remote control key's button.
   > The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel starts to flash - alarm is armed.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Power operated tailgate* (p. 238)
- Opening/closing the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 241)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Activate/deactivate private locking

The glovebox and tailgate can be locked, so-called private locking, e.g. when the car is taken in for service, left at a hotel or similar.

NOTE

The car needs to be in ignition mode **I** as a minimum for the private locking function to be activated.

Activate private locking

1. The function can be activated from the function view or the settings view:
   - Press the **Private Locking** button in the function view in the centre display.
   - Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**. Select **Private Locking**.

   > A pop-up window is shown.

NOTE

A security code must be selected the first time the function is used. The security code can be used to deactivate all earlier PIN codes. Save the security code in a safe place.

NOTE

Is private locking is activated and the car is unlocked via Volvo On Call* or the Volvo On Call* mobile app, private locking will be deactivated automatically.

2. Enter the code to be used in order to unlock the glovebox after locking and tap on **Confirm**.

   > The glovebox and the tailgate are locked. Locking is confirmed by a green indication at the button in the function view and the private locking box being ticked in the settings view.

Deactivate private locking

1. The function can be deactivated from the function view or the settings view:
   - Press the **Private Locking** button in the function view in the centre display.
   - Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**. Select **Private Locking**.

   > A pop-up window is shown.
2. Enter the code that was used for locking and tap on **Confirm**.

   > The glovebox and the tailgate are unlocked. Unlocking is confirmed by the green indication at the button in the function view disappearing and the tick disappearing from the private locking box in the settings view.

Related information

- Using the glovebox (p. 211)
- Locking/unlocking the tailgate (p. 233)

Detachable key blade

The remote control key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which a number of functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

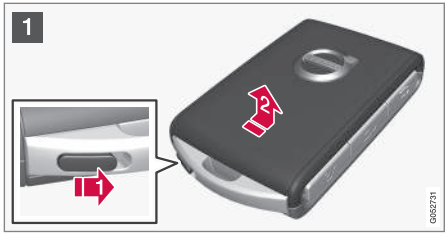
The key blade's application areas

Using the remote control key's detachable key blade:

- the left-hand[12] front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key.
- all doors are emergency locked - see the section "Locking/unlocking with detachable key blade".
- the rear doors' mechanical child safety locks can be activated/deactivated - see the section "Child safety locks".

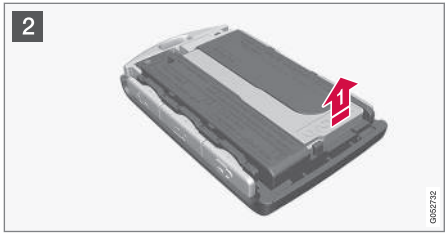
The button-less key[13] (Key Tag) does not have a detachable key blade. If necessary, use the detachable key blade from the normal remote control key.

Detaching the key blade



1 Hold the remote control key with the front visible and the Volvo logo facing the right way - slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Guide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.



2 1 Detach the key blade by angling it up.

3 1 Return the key blade to its intended position in the remote control key after use. Refit the shell and slide it back.

> A click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and engaged.

Related information

- Locking/unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 237)
- Child safety locks (p. 247)
- Remote control key (p. 224)

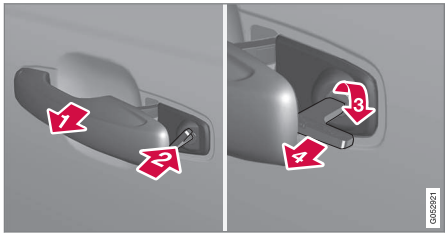
12 This applies whether the car is left-hand drive or right-hand drive.
13 Supplied with cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking option (Passive Entry*).

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Locking/unlocking with the detachable key blade

Amongst other things, the detachable key blade can be used to unlock the car from the outside - e.g. if the remote control key's battery has become discharged.

Unlocking



1. Pull out the front door handle on the left-hand side[14] to its end position so that the lock cylinder become visible.
2. Insert the key in the lock cylinder.
3. Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key blade is pointing straight back.
4. Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle so that the rear section of the handle is resting against the car again.
5. Pull out the handle.
   > The door opens.

Locking will be performed in the same way, but with an anticlockwise turn 45 degrees instead of clockwise in step (3).

NOTE

When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered.

The backup reader's location in the tunnel console.

Deactivate the alarm as follows:

1. Place the remote control key in the backup reader in the bottom of the cup holder in the tunnel console.
2. Then turn the start knob to **START** and release it.
   > The control automatically returns to its starting position - the alarm signal stops and the alarm switches off.

Locking

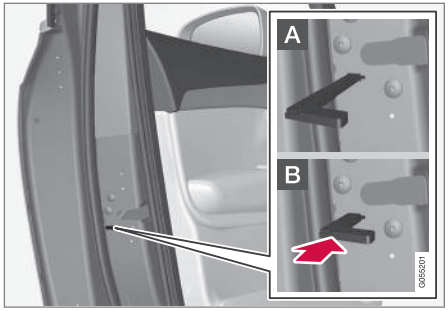
It is also possible to lock the car with the remote control key's detachable key blade e.g. in the event of a loss of power or if the key's battery has become discharged.

The left-hand front door can be locked with its lock cylinder and the detachable key blade.

Other doors have no lock cylinders and instead have a lock switch on the end of each door which must be depressed using the key blade - they are then mechanically locked/blocked to prevent them being opened from outside.

The doors can still be opened from the inside.

14 This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with the child safety locks.

– Remove the detachable key blade from the remote control key. Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset and press the key in until the key bottoms, approx. 12 mm.

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

The doors can also be unlocked with the unlock button on the remote control key or with the central locking button on the driver's door.

NOTE

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with an activated manual child safety lock cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside. A rear door locked in this way can only be unlocked with the remote control key, central locking button or by pulling the interior door handle.

Related information

- Detachable key blade (p. 236)

Power operated tailgate*

The car's tailgate can be opened/closed electrically.

Opening/closing via a foot movement is also available as an extended option - see the section "Opening/closing the power operated tailgate with foot movement" for more information.

Opening

The tailgate can be opened with its handle, with foot movement*, a button on the instrument panel or the remote control key.

Opening/closing button on the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Choose one of the following options to open the tailgate:

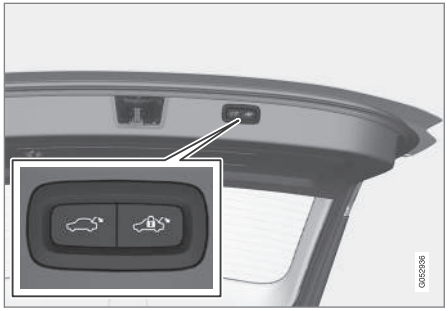
- Light press on the tailgate handle.
- Long press on the instrument panel's button. Keep it depressed until the tailgate starts to open.
- Long press on the remote control key's button. Keep it depressed until the tailgate starts to open.

Closing

The tailgate can be closed via the instrument panel's button, with foot movement*, with the remote control key or the buttons[15] along the bottom edge of the tailgate.

Choose one of the following options to close the tailgate.

– Long press on the instrument panel's button or the remote control key's button.
  > The tailgate closes automatically and acoustic signals sound - the tailgate remains unlocked.



Button for closing and locking on the underside of the tailgate.

– Press the button[15] on the underside of the tailgate to close.
  > The tailgate closes automatically - the tailgate remains unlocked.

NOTE

The button is active 24 hours after the hatch has been left open. Thereafter, it must be closed manually.

– Press the button[15] on the underside of the tailgate to close it and simultaneously lock the tailgate and doors (all doors must be closed for locking).
  > The tailgate closes automatically - the tailgate and doors are locked and the alarm[16] is armed.

NOTE

If the remote key is not detected sufficiently close to the tailgate, locking/unlocking will not work. See the section "Remote key range" for more information.

NOTE

When using key-free* blocking/closing, three signals will sound if the key is not detected sufficiently close to the tailgate. See the sections "Remote key range" and "Locks and remote keys" for more information.

IMPORTANT

During manual tailgate operation, open or close it slowly. Do not use force to open/close it if there is resistance. It may be damaged and stop working correctly.

15 Cars with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*) have one button for closing and one button for closing and locking.
16 Option in certain markets.

Cancel opening/closing

– There are five ways to cancel opening/closing:
  - Press the button on the instrument panel.
  - Press the remote control key's button.
  - Press the close button[15] along the bottom edge of the tailgate.
  - Press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the outside handle.
  - Using the foot movement (see section "Opening/closing power operated tailgate with foot movement" for more information).

  > Tailgate movement will be interrupted and the tailgate will stop and can then be manoeuvred manually.

Programmable max. opening

The maximum opening position of the tailgate can be adjusted, e.g. to suit a low ceiling height in a garage.

To adjust max. opening:

1. Open the tailgate - stop it in the open position.
2. Press the button on the underside of the tailgate for at least 3 seconds.

   > Two short acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

To reset max. opening:

– Manually move the tailgate to its highest possible position - press the button on the tailgate for at least 3 seconds.

  > Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared. The tailgate will then assume its max. position when opened.

NOTE

- If the system has been operating continuously for a long time, it is switched off to avoid overload. It can be used again after about 2 minutes.

Pinch protection

If something with sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate from opening/closing then the pinch protection is activated.

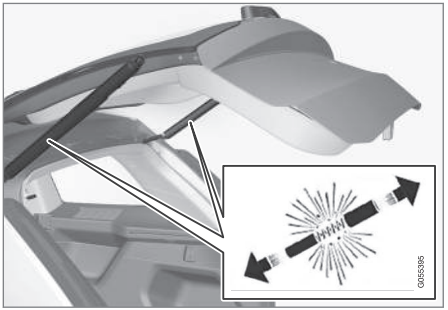
- During opening - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops and a long acoustic signal sounds.
- During closing - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops, a long acoustic signal sounds and the tailgate returns to the programmed max. position.

WARNING

Observe the risk of trapping when opening/closing. Before starting opening/closing, check that there is nobody near to the tailgate as trapping may have serious consequences.

Always operate the tailgate with caution.

Pre-tensioned springs



The pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate.

WARNING

Do not open the pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate. They are pre-tensioned with high pressure and can cause injury if opened.

[15] Cars with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*) have one button for closing and one button for closing and locking.

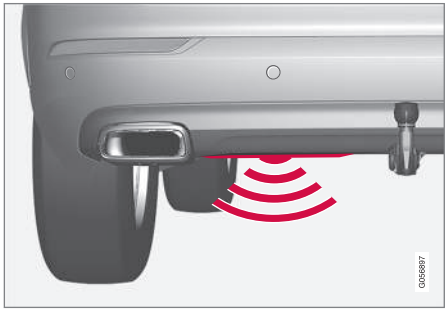
* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Related information

- Opening/closing the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 241)
- Remote control key range (p. 226)

Opening/closing the tailgate with foot movement*

To facilitate the operation of the tailgate when your hands are occupied, it can be opened/closed by means of a forward kicking motion under the rear bumper.



The sensor is positioned to the left of centre in the bumper[17].

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range[18] behind the car in order for opening/closing to be possible. This also applies to an already unlocked car in order to avoid accidental opening e.g. in a car wash.

Operation

Kicking motion within the detector's valid activation area.

17 If the car is equipped with skid plate/diffuser* then the detector is positioned out towards the left-hand corner of the bumper.
18 See the section "Remote control key range" for more information.

Opening/closing

– Make **one** slow, forward kicking motion under the left part of the rear bumper. Then take a step back. The bumper must not be touched.

  > A short acoustic signal sounds when opening/closing is activated - the tailgate is opened/closed.

  If the tailgate is on open position then it is always closed on activation via foot movement.

The tailgate can also be closed via the instrument panel's button, the remote control key or the button(s)[19] under the tailgate. For more information, see the section "Power operated tailgate".

If several kicking motions take place without an approved remote control key being located behind the car, opening will not be possible until after a certain delay.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. This could cause activation to fail.

Cancel opening/closing

– Make **one** slow forward kicking motion when opening/closing is in progress in order to stop the movement of the tailgate.

The remote control key does not have to be in the vicinity of the car to cancel opening/closing.

NOTE

There is a risk of reduced function, or no function, if the rear bumper is loaded with large amounts of ice, snow, dirt or similar. For this reason, make sure you keep it clean.

NOTE

Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash or similar if the remote key is within range.

With the accessory skid plate/diffuser*

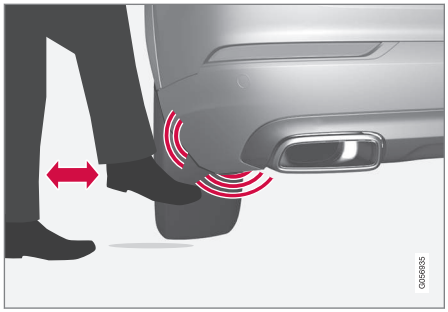
If the car is equipped with the skid plate/diffuser* accessory, then the detector is positioned out towards the left-hand corner of the bumper.

If the car is equipped with the skid plate/diffuser* accessory, then the detector is positioned out towards the left-hand corner of the bumper.

To activate opening/closing with a foot movement on a car equipped with the skid plate/diffuser accessory, the kicking motion is made from the side of the car.

[19] Only applies to cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry)*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Kicking motion within the detector's valid activation area.

Related information

- Locking/unlocking the tailgate (p. 233)
- Power operated tailgate* (p. 238)
- Remote control key range (p. 226)

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

The battery in the remote control key needs to be replaced when it has become discharged.

NOTE

All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply to Key Tag). The service life of the battery varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The battery for the remote control key should be replaced if:

the information symbol illuminates and the message **Car key battery low See Owner's manual** is shown in the driver display

and/or

- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres from the car.

NOTE

Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

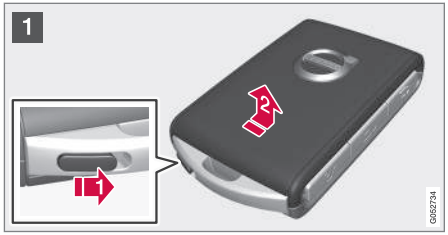
The battery in the button-less key[20] (Key Tag) cannot be replaced - a new key can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

IMPORTANT

A discharged Key Tag must be handed over to an authorised Volvo workshop. The key must be deleted from the car since it is still possible to use it to start the car via back-up start.

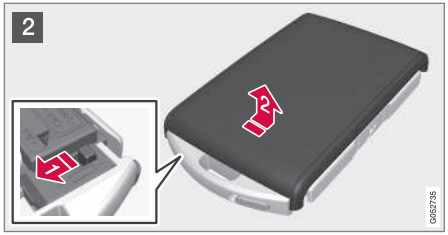
[20] This key is supplied with cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking option (Passive Entry*).

Opening and changing



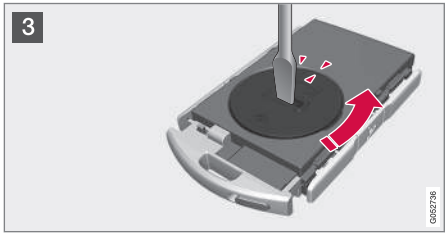
1 Hold the remote control key with the front visible and the Volvo logo facing the right way - slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Slide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.



2 1 Move the button to the side and slide the back shell a few millimetres upwards.

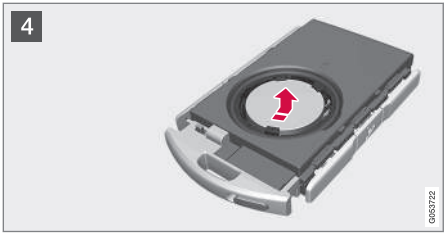
2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.



3 Use a screwdriver or similar to turn the battery cover anticlockwise until the markings meet at the **OPEN** text.

1 Carefully lift away the cover by pressing e.g. a fingernail into the recess.

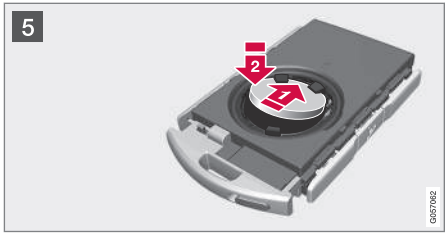
2 Then prize the cover upwards.



4 1 The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Then carefully prize loose the battery as illustrated.

IMPORTANT

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.



5 Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the remote control key's battery contacts with your fingers.

1 Place the battery in the holder with the edge down. Then slide the battery forwards so that it fastens under the two plastic catches.

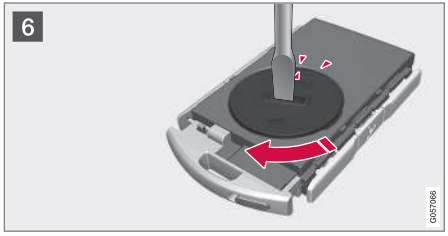
2 Press the battery down so that it fastens under the upper black plastic catch.

NOTE

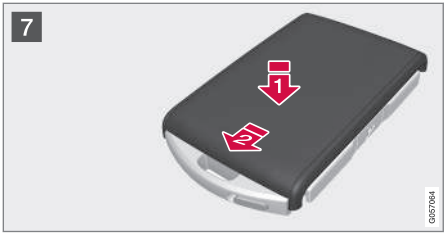
Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the batteries to be used in the remote control key fulfil UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, subsection 38.3. Batteries fitted in the factory or replaced by an authorised Volvo workshop fulfil the above criteria.



6 Refit the cover and turn it clockwise until the marking aligns with the **CLOSE** text.



7 1 Reposition the rear side's shell and press it down until a clicking sound can be heard.

2 Then slide the shell back sedan.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.

8

8 1 Turn the remote control key over and refit the front side's shell by pressing it down until a clicking sound can be heard.

2 Then slide the shell back sedan.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

IMPORTANT

Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)

Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

The car can only be started with the correct remote control key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	**Car key not found** **See Owner's manual**	Error reading the remote control key during starting - place the key in the cup holder near the key symbol and try again.

Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system[21]

The car is fitted with a system which makes it possible to track and locate the car and to remotely activate the immobiliser, which prevents starting the engine. Contact your nearest Volvo dealer for more information and assistance with activating the system.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	**Remotely immobilised** **Car not possible to start**	The remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system is activated. The car cannot be started. Contact Volvo On Call Service Centre.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Remote control key range (p. 226)

21 Only certain markets and in combination with Volvo On Call*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Child safety locks

The child safety locks prevent children from being able to open a rear door from the inside. There is an electric* and a manual lock.

Electric activation/deactivation*

The electric child safety locks can be activated/deactivated in all ignition positions higher than **0**. Activation/deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the engine, provided that no door is opened. See the section "Ignition position" for more information.

Button for electric activation/deactivation.

1. Start the engine or choose an ignition position higher than **0**.
2. Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
   > The driver display shows the message **Rear child lock Activated** and the button's lamp illuminates - the locks are active.

When the electric child safety lock is active then the rear:

- windows can only be opened with the driver's door control panel
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

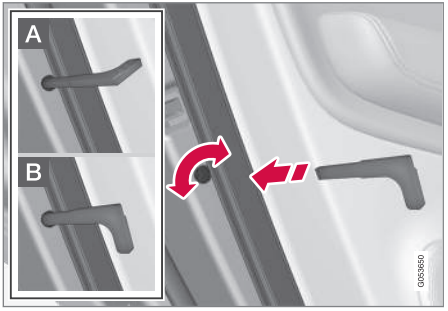
To deactivate the locks:

– Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
  > The driver display shows the message **Rear child lock Deactivated** and the button's lamp goes out - the locks are deactivated.

The current setting is stored when the engine is switched off - if the child safety locks are activated at engine shutdown, the function will remain activated the next time the engine is started.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lockActivated	Child safety locks are activated.
	Rear child lockDeactivated	Child safety locks are deactivated.

Manual activation/deactivation



Manual child safety locks. Not to be mixed up with manual door locks.

– Use the remote control key's detachable key blade to turn the knob. For more information, see the section "Detachable key blade".

A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

NOTE

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Related information

- Detachable key blade (p. 236)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Alarm[22]

The alarm alerts e.g. in the event of a break-in in the car.

When armed, the alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened,
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*),
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*),
- the starter battery's cable is disconnected or
- the siren is disconnected.

If there is a fault in the alarm system, the driver display shows the symbol and the message **Alarm system failure Service required**. In which case, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

NOTE

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

NOTE

The movement sensors trigger an alarm in the event of movement in the passenger compartment - air currents are also registered. For this reason the alarm is triggered if the car is left with a window or the panoramic roof* open or if the passenger compartment heater is used.

To avoid this: Close the window/panoramic roof when leaving the car. If the car's integrated parking heater (or a portable electric heater) shall be used - direct the airflow from the air vents so that they are not pointing upwards into the passenger compartment. Alternatively, reduced alarm level can be used - see the section further down in this article.

Arming the alarm

Lock and arm the car alarm as follows:

- press the remote control key's lock button,
- touch in the marked area on the outside of the door handle[23] or
- push on the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate[23].

If the car is equipped with a power-operated tailgate, the button on the underside of the tailgate can also be used to lock the car and arm the car alarm.

22 Option in certain markets.

23 Only applies to cars with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*).

Deactivate the alarm

Unlock and disarm the car alarm as follows:

- press the remote control key's unlock button,
- grip one of the door handles[23] or
- push on the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate[23].

Switching off a triggered alarm

– Press the remote control key's unlock button or set the car in ignition position **I** by turning the ignition dial to **START** and then releasing.

NOTE

- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

Alarm signals

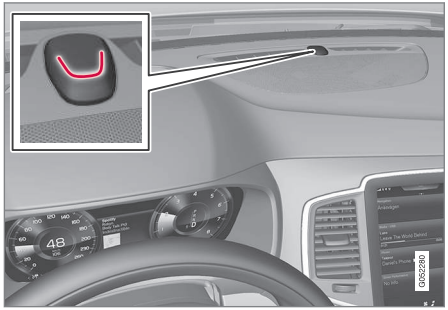
When the alarm has been triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off.
- The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

If the door that activated the alarm is left open, the alarm cycle will be repeated up to 10 times[24].

Lock and alarm indicator

A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:



- LED not lit – alarm not armed.
- The LED flashes once every other second – alarm is armed.
- After the alarm has been disarmed, the LED flashes rapidly for up to 30 seconds or until ignition position **I** has been selected by turning the ignition dial to **START** and releasing it - the alarm has been triggered.

Reduced alarm level

Reduced guard means that the movement and tilt detectors can be temporarily deactivated.

To avoid accidental triggering of the alarm - e.g. if a dog is left in a locked car or during transport on a car train or car ferry - temporarily deactivate the movement and tilt detectors. The procedure is the same as with the temporary disengaging of the deadlocks function. This can be done from the centre display's function view by pressing **Reduced guard**.

For more information, see the section "Deadlocks".

Related information

- Automatic arming/rearming of the alarm (p. 250)
- Disarming the alarm without working remote control key (p. 250)
- Deadlocks (p. 232)

23 Only applies to cars with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*).
24 Applies to certain markets.

Automatic arming/rearming of the alarm[27]

Automatic rearming of the alarm prevents the car being left with the alarm disarmed unintentionally.

If the car is unlocked with the remote control key (which disarms the alarm) but none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within two minutes, then the alarm is automatically re-armed. The car is relocked at the same time.

In certain markets, the alarm is re-armed automatically after a certain delay after the driver's door has been opened and closed without being locked.

Related information

- Alarm (p. 248)
- Disarming the alarm without working remote control key (p. 250)

Disarming the alarm[30] without working remote control key

The car can be unlocked and disarmed even if the remote control key does not work, e.g. if the remote control key's battery is dead.

1. Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade.
   > The alarm is triggered.

The backup reader's location in the cup holder.

2. Place the remote control key in the backup reader in the tunnel console's cup holder.
3. Turn the ignition dial to **START** and release.
   > The alarm is deactivated.

Related information

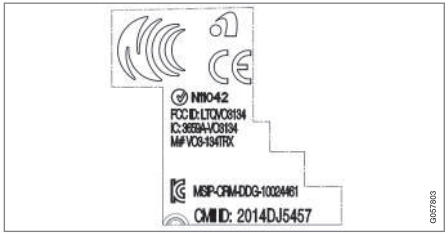
- Alarm (p. 248)
- Automatic arming/rearming of the alarm (p. 250)
- Detachable key blade (p. 236)
- Start engine (p. 357)

27 Option in certain markets.
30 Option in certain markets.

Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the remote control key system can be read in the table.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)



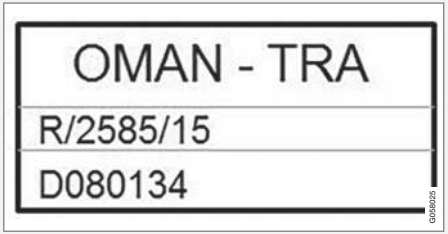
CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval number, see the table below.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Serbia	P1614120100	
Argentina	CNC ID: C-14771	

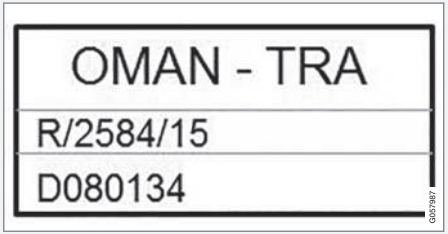
Country/Area	Type approval	
Brazil	MT-3245/2015	
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Malaysia	RAAT/37A/0315/S(15-0663)	
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Russia		
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	

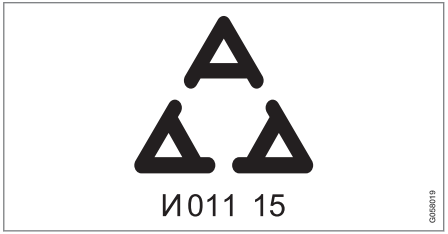
For more information about type approval for the remote control key system, see support.volvocars.com.

Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2015/104	
Oman		
The United Arab Emirates		

Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2015/107	
Oman		

Country/Area	Type approval	
Serbia		
The United Arab Emirates		

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 224)

DRIVER SUPPORT

Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car in order to give the driver enhanced sensitivity.

On motorways the steering feels firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires only a slight effort.

NOTE

In certain situations the power steering may become too hot and then needs to be temporarily cooled - during this time the power steering operates with reduced power and turning the steering wheel may then be perceived to be slightly heavier.

In parallel with the temporarily reduced steering assistance, the driver display shows a message.

Change the steering force level*

To select the steering force level, go to the "Drive modes" section and see the description at the alternative INDIVIDUAL under the heading "Selectable drive modes".

This setting is not accessible while the car is moving.

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 369)

Electronic stability control

Electronic stability control (Electronic Stability Control — ESC) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The activation of the ESC system during braking may be noticed as a throbbing sound. The car may accelerate slower than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

WARNING

The stability system ESC is supplementary assistance - it cannot handle all situations in all road conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

The ESC system consists of the following functions:

- Active Yaw Control
- Spin Control
- Traction control system
- Engine Drag Control
- Trailer stability assist

Active Yaw Control

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin Control

The function prevents the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Traction control system

The function is active at low speed and transfers power from the driving wheel that is spinning to the one that is not.

Engine Drag Control

Engine Drag Control (Engine Drag Control — EDC) prevents involuntary wheel locking, e.g. after shifting down or engine braking when driving in low gear on slippery road surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Trailer stability assist*[1]

The function of trailer stability assist (Trailer Stability Assist - TSA) is to stabilise a car with attached trailer in situations where snaking occurs. For more information, see the “Driving with a trailer” section.

NOTE

The TSA function is deactivated if sport mode is activated.

Related information

- Sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 259)
- Symbols and messages for electronic stability control (p. 260)
- Roll Stability Control (p. 262)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 397)

Sport mode for electronic stability control

Electronic stability control (Electronic Stability Control — ESC) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car’s traction.

The ESC system is always activated — it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select Sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

In Sport mode the ESC system detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows a certain degree of controlled skidding with the rear section before ESC intervenes and stabilises the car.

For example, if the driver stops a controlled skid by releasing the accelerator pedal, the ESC system intervenes and stabilises the car.

Sport mode also provides maximum traction if the car has become bogged down or is driving on a loose surface, such as sand or deep snow.

Select/deselect Sport mode

The Sport mode is activated/deactivated in the centre display's function view.

– Tap on the **ESC Sport Mode** button in function view.
  > Sport mode is activated/deactivated, a green/grey indicator is displayed in the button.

The driver display indicates Sport mode by displaying this symbol with a constant glow until the function is deactivated or the engine is switched off. The next time the engine is started, the ESC system is back in its normal mode again.

Limitations for Sport mode

The **ESC Sport Mode** function cannot be selected when one of the functions from speed limiter, cruise control or adaptive cruise control is activated.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 258)
- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

[1] Trailer stability assist is included when installing the Volvo genuine towbar.

Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (Electronic Stability Control -ESC) can be shown on the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds.	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light.	ESC system is being activated.
	Constant glow.	Sport mode is selected. **NOTE:** The ESC system is not deactivated in this mode — it is partly reduced.
	**ESC** **Temporarily off**	ESC system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	**ESC** **Service required**	ESC system disengaged. • Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 258)
- Sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 259)
- Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 98)

Roll Stability Control

Roll Stability Control (RSC) is a stabiliser system that minimises the risk of overturning, for example during sudden evasive manoeuvres or if the car skids.

The RSC system registers if and how much the car's lateral inclination changes. This information is used to calculate the risk of the car overturning. If the car is at risk, its electronic stability control system engages, the engine torque is reduced and one or more wheels are braked until the car has regained its stability.

WARNING

Under normal driving conditions, the RSC system improves the car's road safety, but this must not be taken as a reason to increase speed. Always follow the normal precautions for safe driving.

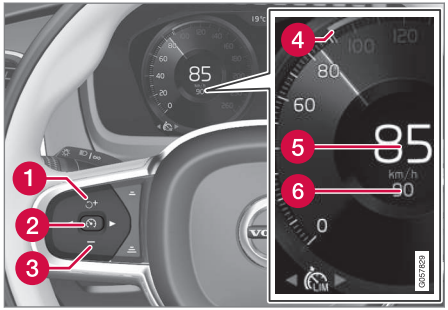
Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 258)
- Safety (p. 52)

Speed limiter*

A Speed Limiter (Speed Limiter — SL) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control — the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented by the Speed Limiter from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/preset maximum speed.

Overview



Buttons and symbols for functions.

1. Increase the stored maximum speed or reactivate the Speed limiter and resume the stored maximum speed
2. Activate the Speed limiter and store the current speed, or deactivate the Speed limiter
3. Reduces stored maximum speed
4. Marker for stored max speed
5. The car's current speed
6. Stored maximum speed

WARNING

The Speed Limiter is an aid and cannot deal with all traffic, weather and road conditions.

The driver must always pay attention to traffic conditions and take action when the Speed Limiter is not maintaining a suitable speed.

The driver always has the ultimate responsibility for the car being driven safely and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations, even when the Speed Limiter function is in use.

Limitations

On steep downhill gradients the speed limiter's braking effect may be inadequate and hence the stored maximum speed may be exceeded. In this case, the driver is alerted by the message **Speed limit exceeded** in the driver display.

NOTE

A text message that the maximum speed is exceeded will be activated if the speed is exceeded by at least 3 km/h (ca 2 mph).

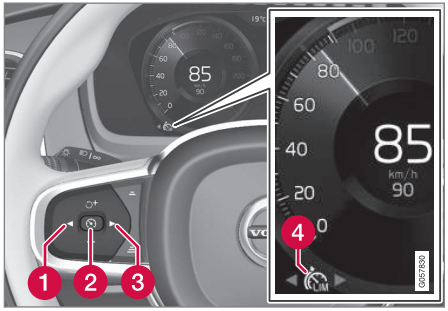
* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Related information

- Activating and starting the Speed limiter (p. 263)
- Managing speed for the Speed limiter (p. 264)
- Deactivating/reactivating the Speed Limiter (p. 264)
- Switching off the Speed limiter (p. 265)
- Automatic speed limiter* (p. 266)

Activating and starting the Speed limiter

The speed limiter function (Speed Limiter - SL) must first be selected and activated in order to be able to regulate the speed.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Activate the Speed Limiter

– Press ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to browse to the symbol/function LIM (4).
  > The symbol is shown and the speed limiter can then be activated.

Start the Speed Limiter

The lowest maximum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

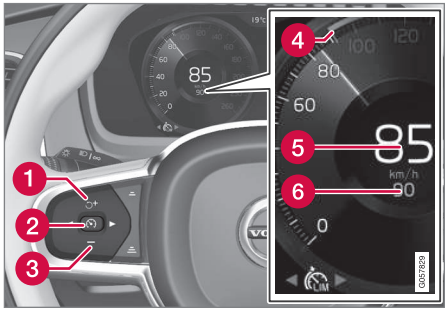
– With the symbol/function LIM displayed, press the steering wheel button (2).
  > The Speed Limiter starts and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Managing speed for the Speed limiter (p. 264)
- Deactivating/reactivating the Speed Limiter (p. 264)
- Switching off the Speed limiter (p. 265)

Managing speed for the Speed limiter

The Speed limiter (Speed Limiter - SL) can be set to different speeds.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

– Change the stored maximum speed with short or long presses on the steering wheel button + (1) or - (3):
  - To adjust +/– 5 km/h (+/– 5 mph): use short presses - each press gives +/– 5 km/h (+/– 5 mph).
  - To change in steps of +/– 1 km/h (+/– 1 mph): hold the button depressed and release it when the indicator (4) in the driver display shows the desired maximum speed.

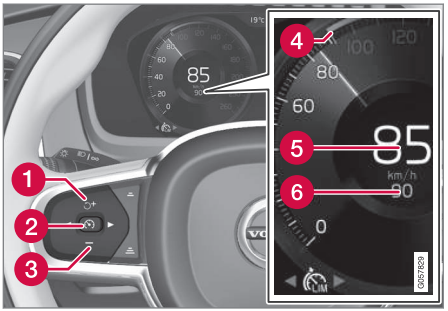
  > The speed set after the last press is stored in the memory.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Activating and starting the Speed limiter (p. 263)
- Deactivating/reactivating the Speed Limiter (p. 264)
- Switching off the Speed limiter (p. 265)

Deactivating/reactivating the Speed Limiter

The Speed limiter (Speed Limiter - SL) can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can be reactivated later.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Deactivate the Speed Limiter and set it in standby mode

– Press the steering wheel button (2).

  > The speed limit markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from WHITE to GREY - the speed limiter is now temporarily deactivated and the driver can exceed the maximum speed setting.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Reactivating the Speed Limiter from standby mode

– Press the steering wheel button (1).
  > The driver display's speed limit markings change colour from GREY to WHITE - the car's speed is then limited again by the last stored maximum speed.

or

– Press the steering wheel button (2).
  > The Speed Limiter indicators and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now apply its current speed as the maximum speed.

Temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal

The speed limiter can also be temporarily overridden with the accelerator pedal without the speed limiter being set in standby mode - e.g. to be able to quickly accelerate the car out of a situation. In which case, proceed as follows:

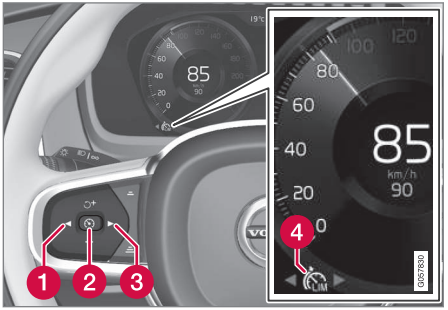
1. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and release it so that acceleration is interrupted when the desired speed has been reached.
   > In this case, the speed limiter is still activated and the driver display's symbol is therefore WHITE.
2. Fully release the accelerator pedal when the temporary acceleration is finished.
   > The car is then braked automatically below the last stored maximum speed.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Activating and starting the Speed limiter (p. 263)
- Managing speed for the Speed limiter (p. 264)
- Switching off the Speed limiter (p. 265)

Switching off the Speed limiter

The Speed Limiter Speed Limiter — SL can be deactivated.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

1. Press the steering wheel button (2).
   > The Speed Limiter is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to change to another function.
   > The driver display's symbol and indicator for Speed limiter (4) are switched off - which deletes the set/stored maximum speed.
3. Press the steering wheel button (2) again.
   > Another function is activated.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Activating and starting the Speed limiter (p. 263)
- Managing speed for the Speed limiter (p. 264)
- Deactivating/reactivating the Speed Limiter (p. 264)

Automatic speed limiter*

The Automatic Speed Limiter function (Automatic Speed Limiter — ASL) sets the car's maximum speed to conform to that indicated by road signs.

The Speed Limiter function (Speed Limiter — SL) can be changed to Automatic Speed Limiter.

The Automatic speed limiter scans roadside speed-related signs and adjusts the car's maximum speed to conform to that indicated by the signs. It is very similar to the Road Sign Information function (Road Sign Information — RSI).

WARNING

Even if the driver can clearly see the speed-related traffic sign, the camera's readings may be inaccurate because the sign may be incorrectly angled, positioned, dirty or too high - in such cases the driver must intervene and accelerate or brake to the appropriate speed.

Is SL or ASL active?

Symbols in the driver display show which speed limiter function is active:

Symbol	SL	ASL
 A	✓	✓
 Sign symbol[B] after "70" = ASL is activated.		✓

A VIT symbol: Function active, GREY symbol: Standby mode.
B See the following heading "ASL symbol" regarding the meaning of the symbol's colour.

The ASL symbol

The sign symbol (displayed alongside the stored speed, "70", in the centre of the speedometer) can be shown in three colours with the following meanings:

Colour of sign symbol	Meaning
Greenish yellow	ASL is active
Grey	ASL has been set in standby mode
Amber/Orange	ASL is in temporary standby mode[A]

A For example, scanning of a sign failed.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Limitations

Adjustment of the Automatic speed limit occurs first after the car has passed a speed limiting road sign. If a road sign cannot be read, due to such factors as an incorrectly angled or dirty sign or reduced visibility, then ASL is set in standby mode and SL becomes active.

In such cases, the driver must take responsibility for slowing down to an appropriate speed. ASL will be reactivated when the car passes a road sign that can be read.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 262)
- Activating/deactivating the Automatic speed limiter (p. 267)
- Changing the tolerance for the Automatic speed limiter (p. 268)
- Road sign information* (p. 303)

Activating/deactivating the Automatic speed limiter

The Automatic speed limiter function (Automatic Speed Limiter - ASL) can be activated and deactivated as a supplement to the Speed limiter (Speed Limiter - SL).

The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

Activating the Automatic speed limiter

1. Tap on the **Speed Sign Assist** button in function view.
   > ASL is set in standby mode, a green indicator appears on the button, and the driver display shows a sign symbol in the centre of the speedometer.
2. Press the steering wheel button .
   > ASL is activated with the car's current speed.

Deactivating the Automatic speed limiter

1. Tap on the **Speed Sign Assist** button in function view.
   > ASL is switched off and SL goes into standby mode. A grey indicator appears on the button.
2. Press the steering wheel button .
   > SL is activated with the car's current speed.

WARNING

After switching from ASL to SL the car will no longer follow the signed speed limit but only the maximum speed stored in memory.

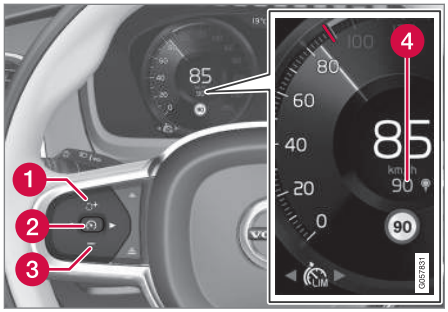
Related information

- Automatic speed limiter* (p. 266)
- Changing the tolerance for the Automatic speed limiter (p. 268)

Changing the tolerance for the Automatic speed limiter

The Speed limiter function (Automatic Speed Limiter - ASL) can be set for different tolerance levels.

The signposted speed limit can be increased or decreased by 5 km/h (5 mph) - if, for example, the car is following a signposted speed limit of 70 km/h (40 mph) but the driver wishes to travel at 75 km/h (45 mph) instead.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

- Press the steering wheel button + (1) until 70 km/h (40 mph) has been changed to 75 km/h (45 mph) in the centre of the speedometer (4).
  > The car then uses the selected tolerance 5 km/h (5 mph) as long as passed signs show 70 km/h (40 mph).

  The tolerance is followed until a road sign with a lower or higher speed is passed - then the car follows the new signposted speed limit instead and the tolerance is deleted from the memory.

  If the Road Sign Information* function is activated, the signposted speed limit will then be shown with a RED indicator on the speedometer.

The tolerance is adjusted in the same way as the speed setting is in the Speed limiter.

Related information

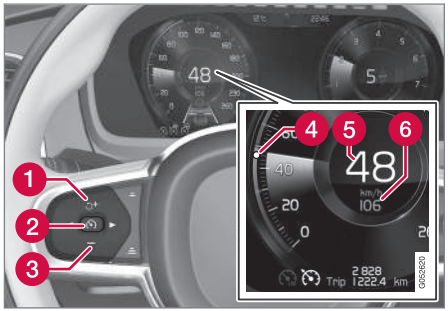
- Automatic speed limiter* (p. 266)
- Activating/deactivating the Automatic speed limiter (p. 267)
- Road sign information* (p. 303)
- Managing speed for the Speed limiter (p. 264)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Cruise control

The cruise control (Cruise Control - CC) helps the driver maintain an even speed, resulting in a more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

Overview



Buttons and symbols for functions.

1. Increase the stored speed or reactivate the Cruise control and resume the stored speed
2. Activate the Cruise control and store the current speed, or deactivate the Cruise control
3. Reduces stored speed
4. Marker for stored speed
5. The car's current speed
6. Stored speed

WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed and/or suitable distance.

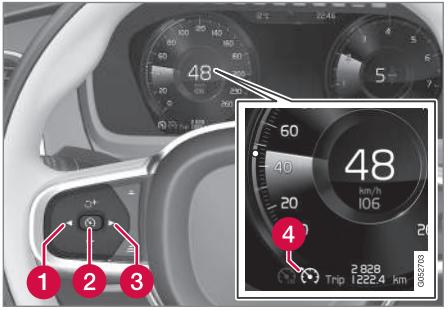
The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Related information

- Activating and starting the Cruise control (p. 269)
- Managing speed for the Cruise control (p. 270)
- Deactivating/reactivating the cruise control (p. 271)
- Deactivating Cruise Control (p. 272)
- Change between Cruise control and Adaptive cruise control* (p. 282)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Activating and starting the Cruise control

Cruise control function (Cruise Control - CC) must first be selected and activated in order to be able to regulate the speed.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Active Cruise Control

– Press ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to browse to the symbol/function  (4).

> The symbol is shown and the cruise control can then be activated.

Start Cruise Control

In order to start the cruise control from standby mode, the car's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher. The lowest speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

– With the symbol/function  displayed, press the steering wheel button (2).

> Cruise Control starts and the current speed becomes the stored speed.

NOTE

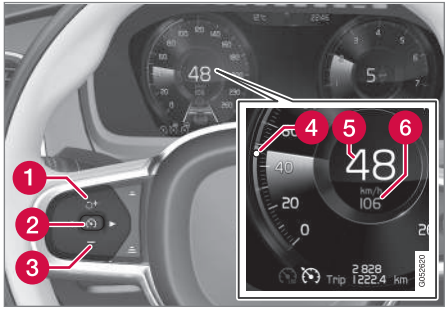
Cruise Control cannot be enabled at speeds below 30 km/h (20 mph).

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Managing speed for the Cruise control (p. 270)
- Deactivating/reactivating the cruise control (p. 271)
- Deactivating Cruise Control (p. 272)

Managing speed for the Cruise control

The Cruise control (Cruise Control - CC) can be set to different speeds.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

– Change the stored speed with short or long presses on steering wheel button + (1) or - (3):

- To adjust 5 km/h (5 mph): use short presses - each press gives 5 km/h (5 mph).
- To change in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph): hold the button depressed and release it when the indicator (4) in the driver display shows the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last press is stored in the memory.

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button +, the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Using engine braking instead of the foot brake

With Cruise Control, speed is regulated with less frequent application of the foot brake. On a downhill gradient it may sometimes be desirable to start moving a little faster and limit the acceleration by engine braking. In this case the driver can temporarily disable foot brake application by Cruise Control.

– Depress the accelerator pedal about halfway down and release.

> Cruise Control will disengage its automatic foot braking and then uses engine braking only.

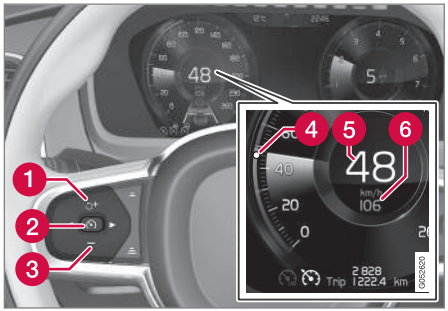
Related information

- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Activating and starting the Cruise control (p. 269)

- Deactivating/reactivating the cruise control (p. 271)
- Deactivating Cruise Control (p. 272)

Deactivating/reactivating the cruise control

The Cruise control (Cruise Control - CC) can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can be reactivated later.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Deactivate Cruise Control and set in standby mode

– Press the steering wheel button (2).

  > The speed limit markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from WHITE to GREY — Cruise Control is now temporarily deactivated and the driver can temporarily exceed the set speed.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The cruise control is temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:

- wheels lose traction
- engine speed is too low/high
- brake temperature is too high
- the speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

Reactivating cruise control from standby mode

- Press the steering wheel button ↻ (1).
  > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the most recently stored speed again.

or

- Press the steering wheel button (2).
  > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the current speed.

NOTE

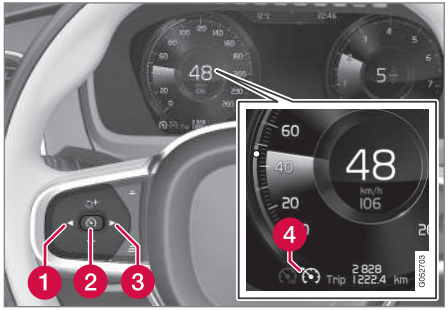
A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by pressing steering wheel button ↻.

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Activating and starting the Cruise control (p. 269)
- Managing speed for the Cruise control (p. 270)
- Deactivating Cruise Control (p. 272)

Deactivating Cruise Control

Cruise control Cruise Control — CC can be deactivated.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

1. Press the steering wheel button (2).
   > Cruise control is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to change to another function.
   > The driver display's symbol and indicator for Cruise control (4) are switched off - which deletes the set/stored speed.
3. Press the steering wheel button (2) again.
   > Another function is activated.

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Activating and starting the Cruise control (p. 269)
- Managing speed for the Cruise control (p. 270)
- Deactivating/reactivating the cruise control (p. 271)

Adaptive cruise control*

The adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control - ACC) helps the driver to maintain an even speed combined with a pre-selected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

An adaptive cruise control provides a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver sets the desired speed and time interval to the car in front. When the camera and radar unit detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is automatically adapted to that. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the prevailing traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read all the sections about the adaptive cruise control in the owner's manual in order to learn about its limitations, of which the driver should be aware before the function is used.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of adaptive cruise control components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The distance to the vehicle ahead is measured by radar. The cruise control function regulates the speed by accelerating and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used by the adaptive cruise control.

The adaptive cruise control aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle in front exceeds the stored speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to control the speed in a smooth way. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in case of large speed differences or if the vehicle in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.

Adaptive Cruise Control can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

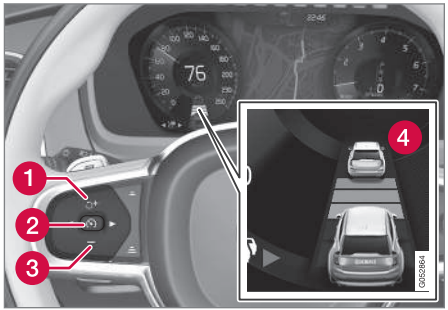
The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the Adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

▶▶

Overview

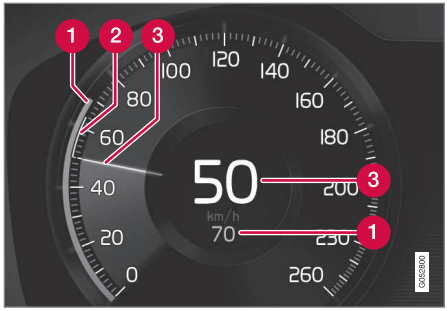
Controls



Buttons and symbols for functions.

1. Increase the stored speed or reactivate the Adaptive cruise control and resume the stored speed
2. Activate the Adaptive cruise control and store the current speed, or deactivate the Adaptive cruise control
3. Reduces stored speed
4. Target vehicle indicator: ACC has detected and is following a target vehicle at the preset time interval

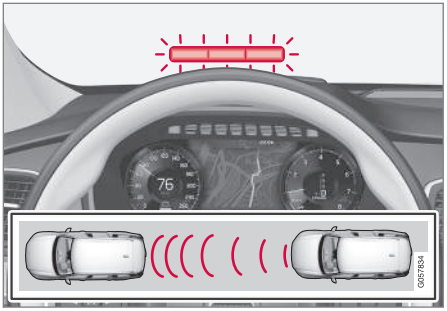
Driver display



Indication of speeds.

1. Stored speed
2. Speed of vehicle ahead.
3. Current speed of driver's vehicle.

Collision risk warning



Warning light.

Adaptive Cruise Control uses approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than Adaptive Cruise Control is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning from City Safety are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

NOTE

The warning lamp may be difficult to see in strong sunlight or when wearing sunglasses.

Head-up-display*

A flashing symbol attracts the driver's attention.

If the car is fitted with a head-up display* the warning is displayed on the windscreen with a flashing symbol.

WARNING

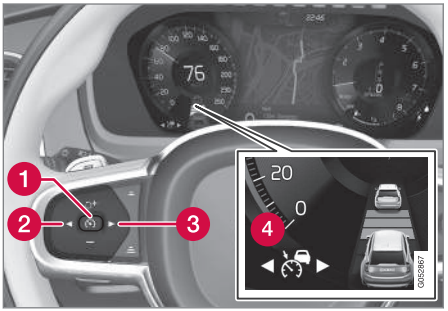
The adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles which its radar unit has detected - hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Do not wait for a warning without braking when so required.

Related information

- Managing the speed of the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 276)
- Setting the time interval for the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 277)
- Change of target and automatic braking with the Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 280)
- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)
- Change between Cruise control and Adaptive cruise control* (p. 282)
- Overtaking assistance with the Adaptive Cruise control* (p. 279)
- Deactivating/activating the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 278)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)
- Symbols and messages for the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 283)
- Radar unit (p. 292)

Activating and starting the Adaptive cruise control*

The Adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control - ACC) must first be activated and then started if it is to control the speed.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Activate Adaptive Cruise Control

Immediately after the engine is started the Adaptive Cruise Control is in the standby mode.

– Press ◂ (2) or ▸ (3) to browse to the symbol/function (4).

  > The symbol is displayed and Adaptive Cruise Control is set in standby mode.

Start Adaptive Cruise Control

In order to start the ACC the following requirements apply:

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

– With the symbol/function displayed - press the steering wheel button (1).

> Adaptive Cruise Control starts, and the current speed is stored as the desired speed in memory and is shown in figures in the centre of the speedometer.

The time interval is only adjusted to the vehicle ahead by the ACC when the distance symbol shows two vehicles.

At the same time a speed range is marked.

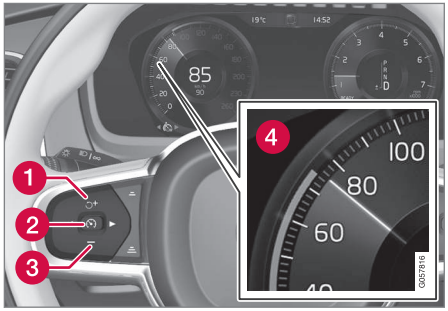
The higher speed is the stored/set speed and the lower speed is that of the preceding vehicle (target vehicle).

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Managing the speed of the Adaptive cruise control*

The Adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control -ACC) can be set to different speeds.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

– Change the stored speed with short or long presses on steering wheel button + (1) or - (3):

- To adjust +/– 5 km/h (+/– 5 mph): use short presses - each press gives +/– 5 km/h (+/– 5 mph).
- To change in steps of +/– 1 km/h (+/– 1 mph): hold the button depressed and release it when the indicator (4) in the driver display shows the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last press is stored in the memory.

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button +, the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Note that the lowest programmable speed for the adaptive cruise control is 30 km/h (20 mph) - even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

After-sales fitted ACC

Cars originally supplied with a standard Cruise control can be fitted afterwards with the Adaptive cruise control function. An after-sales fitted ACC differs from the factory mounted version with respect to the following points:

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle is less than 30 km/h (20 mph) the ACC switches to standby mode - the driver must then intervene and manually maintain a suitable distance to the vehicle in front.
- The lowest speed at which ACC can be activated is 30 km/h (20 mph).

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Setting the time interval for the Adaptive cruise control*

The Adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control -ACC) can be set to different time intervals.

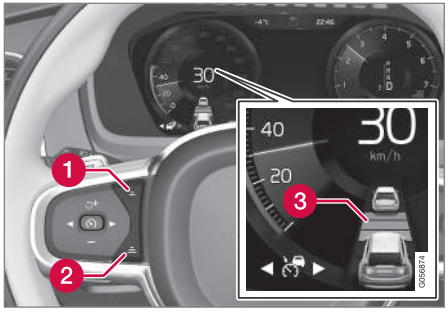
Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when the Distance Warning function is activated.

NOTE

When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, ACC is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

– Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
  > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

Note that a short time interval only allows the driver a short time to react and take action if any unforeseen problem should arise.

NOTE

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

If the adaptive cruise control does not appear to react when activated, this may be because the time distance to the vehicle in front is preventing an increase in speed.

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

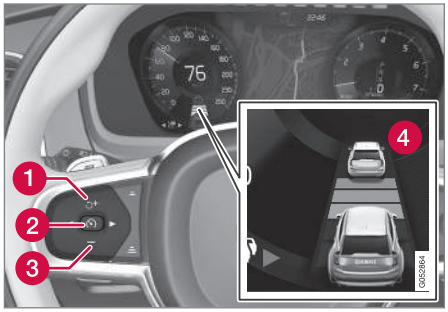
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Managing the speed of the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 276)
- Distance Warning* (p. 307)

Deactivating/activating the Adaptive cruise control*

The Adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control - ACC) can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can later be reactivated.

If the adaptive cruise control is set to the standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle in front, then the driver is warned instead by the Distance warning function about the short distance.



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Deactivate Adaptive Cruise Control and set it in standby mode

To temporarily switch off Adaptive Cruise Control and set it in standby mode:

– Press the steering wheel button (2).

> The symbol on the driver display changes colour from WHITE to GREY and the stored speed in the centre of the speedometer changes from BEIGE to GREY.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The Adaptive cruise control is temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Adaptive Cruise Control is dependent on other systems, such as Electronic Stability Control. If any of these systems ceases to function then the adaptive cruise control is disengaged automatically.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and a message is shown in the driver display. The driver must then intervene and adapt the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

Automatic deactivation may occur if:

- the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle in front turns off so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- the driver opens the door
- the driver takes off the seatbelt
- engine speed is too low/high
- wheels lose traction
- brake temperature is high
- the parking brake is applied
- the radar unit is covered by e.g. wet snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).

Reactivating cruise control from standby mode

– Press the steering wheel button (1).

> The speed is then set to the most recently stored speed.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by pressing steering wheel button ↻.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Activating and starting the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 275)
- Managing the speed of the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 276)
- Setting the time interval for the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 277)
- Overtaking assistance with the Adaptive Cruise control* (p. 279)
- Symbols and messages for the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 283)

Overtaking assistance with the Adaptive Cruise control*

Adaptive Cruise Control (Adaptive Cruise Control - ACC) can assist the driver when overtaking other vehicles.

When ACC is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the direction indicator[2], Adaptive Cruise Control helps by accelerating the vehicle towards the vehicle in front before the driver's vehicle reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

WARNING

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations other than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road - the car will then accelerate briefly.

Starting Overtaking Assistance

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the "target vehicle")
- the speed must be at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- the stored ACC speed must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

– Activate the direction indicator.

Use the left direction indicator in a car with the steering wheel on the left, or the right direction indicator in a car with the steering wheel on the right.

> Overtaking assistance is started.

Limitations

When using Overtaking Assistance the driver should be prepared for sudden changes in conditions. In some conditions Overtaking Assistance can cause unwanted acceleration.

Some situations should be avoided for this reason. Examples of such situations are:

- the car is approaching an exit road in order to turn off in the same direction that is normally used for overtaking
- the vehicle in front slows before the driver's vehicle has entered the overtaking lane

[2] On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

- traffic in the overtaking lane is slowing
- a car designed for right-hand traffic is being driven in a country with left-hand traffic (or vice versa)

Situations of this kind can be avoided by temporarily setting ACC in the standby mode.

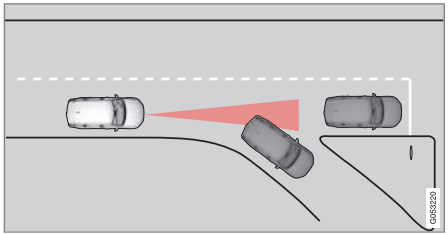
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Change of target and automatic braking with the Adaptive Cruise Control

The Adaptive Cruise Control (Adaptive Cruise Control - ACC) has change of target and braking functions at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target from a moving to a stationary vehicle, the adaptive cruise control will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When the adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** ca 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the adaptive cruise control will ignore the stationary vehicle and instead select the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The adaptive cruise control is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the adaptive cruise control is uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle in front turns off so the adaptive cruise control no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Automatic braking

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed about 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the Adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

– The Adaptive Cruise Control is reactivated in one of the following ways:
  - Press the steering wheel button ↻ .
  - Depress the accelerator pedal.
  > The Adaptive Cruise Control resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within 6 seconds.

NOTE

ACC can keep the car stationary for a maximum of 5 minutes. After this the parking brake is applied and adaptive cruise control is disengaged.

The parking brake must be released before the adaptive cruise control can be reactivated.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on reaching 0 km/h and Adaptive Cruise Control is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in the following situations:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the parking brake is applied
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N**, or **R** position
- the driver sets the adaptive cruise control in the standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

In certain situations the parking brake is applied to keep the car stationary.

This occurs if the Adaptive Cruise Control is holding the car still and:

- the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
- ACC has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 5 minutes
- the brakes have overheated
- the engine is switched off.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Limitations of the Adaptive cruise control*

The (Adaptive Cruise Control - ACC) may have limitations in certain situations.

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes, with a heavy load or with a trailer - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

- Drive mode **Off Road** cannot be selected when the adaptive cruise control is activated.

NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for radar unit" section.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)

Change between Cruise control and Adaptive cruise control*

In a car with Adaptive Cruise Control* (ACC) the driver can change between Cruise Control (CC) and ACC.

Changing from ACC to CC

A symbol in the driver display shows which cruise control is active:

CC Cruise Control	ACC Adaptive Cruise Control
 A	 A
Cruise control	Adaptive cruise control

A VIT symbol: Function active, GREY symbol: Standby mode

How to change from Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) to Cruise Control (CC):

1. Tap on the **Cruise control** button in function view.
   > The symbol in the driver display changes from ACC to CC. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is now switched off and Cruise Control (CC) is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button .
   > Cruise control starts and stores the current speed.

WARNING

The car no longer brakes automatically after switching from ACC to CC - it merely follows the set speed.

If CC is active when the engine is switched off, ACC will be activated the next time the engine is started.

Changing back from CC to ACC

1. Tap on the **Adaptive cruise** button in function view.
   > The symbol in the driver display changes from CC to ACC. Adaptive Cruise Control is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button .
   > Adaptive cruise control starts and stores the current speed, together with the preset distance to the vehicle in front.

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 269)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Symbols and messages for the Adaptive cruise control*

A number of symbols and messages regarding the Adaptive cruise control (Adaptive Cruise Control -ACC) can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is WHITE	The car is maintaining the stored speed.
	**Unavailable** and the symbol is GREY	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	**Windscreen sensor** **Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.
	**Adaptive cruise** **Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

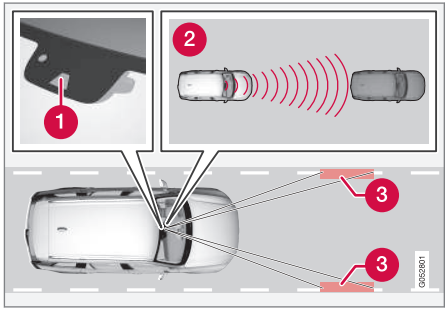
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist helps the driver to drive the car between the road lane whilst at the same time maintaining a preselected time interval to the preceding vehicle.

Pilot Assist provides more comfortable driving in slow traffic - up to 50 km/h (30 mph) - on motorways and main roads.



Function overview.

1. Camera and radar unit
2. Distance readers
3. Readers, side markings

The driver sets the desired time interval to the preceding vehicle. Pilot Assist scans the preceding vehicle and the lane markings with the camera and radar unit. The preset time interval is maintained with automatic speed adjustment whilst the steering assistance helps to position the car in the lane.

Pilot Assist steering assistance takes into account the speed of the preceding car and the lane markings. The driver can at any time ignore the Pilot Assist steering recommendation and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lane or avoid an obstruction on the road.

If the camera and radar unit does not sense the lane markings or a preceding vehicle, Pilot Assist is set in the standby mode.

When Pilot Assist is in the standby mode and the car comes too close to a preceding vehicle, the driver is instead warned by the Distance warning for the short distance (refer to Distance warning at the end of this section).

⚠ WARNING

Pilot Assist is an aid which cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

The driver must always be observant with regard to the prevailing traffic conditions and intervene when Pilot Assist is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

Read all the sections about this function in the owner's manual in order to learn about its limitations, of which the driver should be aware before the function is used.

Pilot Assist must only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on the road surface on each side of the lane. All other use involves increased risk of contact with surrounding obstacles that are not detected by the function.

The driver always bears responsibility for how the car is controlled as well as for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when Pilot Assist is being used.

Pilot Assist attempts to regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in case of large speed differences or if the vehicle in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the camera and radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.

The stored speed for the Pilot Assist function is preset to 50 km/h (30 mph) and cannot be

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

adjusted - if the speed of the vehicle in front increases to more than 50 km/h (30 mph) and is no longer within a reasonable distance, Pilot Assist is set to standby mode.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of Pilot Assist components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Pilot Assist regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when Pilot Assist uses them.

WARNING

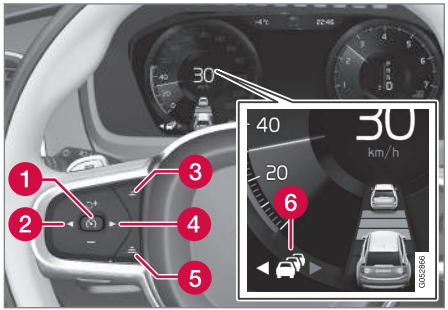
Pilot Assist is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

Pilot Assist does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use Pilot Assist, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

Overview

Controls



Buttons and symbols for functions.

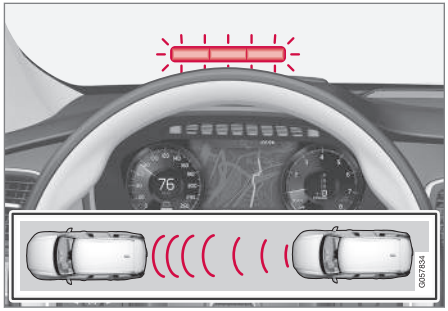
1. Activates/deactivates Pilot Assist
2. Switches from Pilot Assist to Adaptive cruise control
3. Reduces the distance to vehicles ahead
4. Switches from Adaptive cruise control to Pilot Assist
5. Increases the distance to vehicles ahead
6. Symbols and functions

Driver display

Indication of speeds.

1. Stored speed
2. Speed of vehicle ahead.
3. Current speed of driver's vehicle.

Collision risk warning



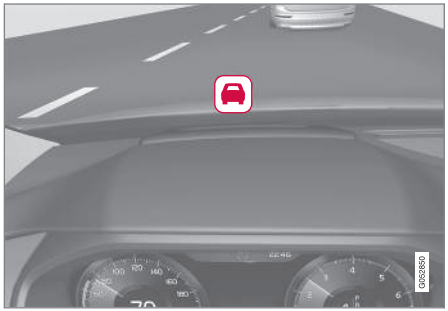
Warning light.

Pilot Assist uses about 40% of the foot brake's capacity. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than Pilot Assist is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning from City Safety are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

NOTE

The warning lamp may be difficult to see in strong sunlight or when wearing sunglasses.

Head-up-display*



A flashing symbol attracts the driver's attention.

If the car is fitted with a head-up display* the warning is displayed on the windscreen with a flashing symbol.

WARNING

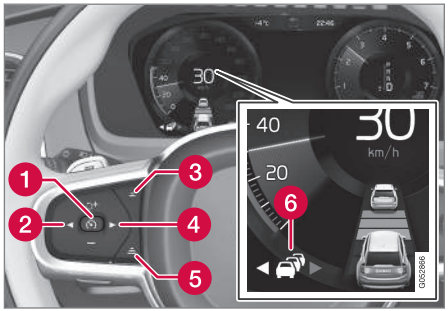
Pilot Assist only gives warning about vehicles whose camera and radar unit has been detected - therefore a warning may not occur or be delayed. Do not wait for a warning without braking when so required.

Related information

- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)
- Deactivating/activating the Pilot Assist* (p. 289)
- Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist* (p. 288)
- Automatic braking with Pilot Assist* (p. 290)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Distance Warning* (p. 307)
- Head-up display* (p. 102)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Activating and starting the Pilot Assist*



Buttons and symbols for functions.

In order to start the Pilot Assist it is required that:

- There is a vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.
- The camera can "see" the lane lines.
- The speed of your own car is less than 50 km/h (30 mph).

If Pilot Assist is selected, its availability is indicated by the colour of the symbol (WHITE = available).

Otherwise it is indicated by the colour of the right arrow next to the symbol - WHITE = available.

A YELLOW symbol with a blinking WHITE arrow indicates an imminent change to the standby mode.

With the Adaptive cruise control in the standby mode:

1. Press ▸ (4).
   > Symbol is displayed and the Pilot Assist is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button (1).
   > Pilot Assist is started.

With the Adaptive cruise control started:

– Press ▸ (4).
  > Pilot Assist is started.

Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Pilot Assist to function, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel. The system continually monitors this. If hands are not detected on the steering wheel then a text message is shown, prompting the driver to actively steer the car. If this does not take place, an acoustic warning signal is given.

If the driver still does not place his or her hands on the wheel, Pilot Assist is deactivated. Pressing the steering wheel button reactivates Pilot Assist.

NOTE

Note that Pilot Assist only works when the driver has hands on the steering wheel.

Related information

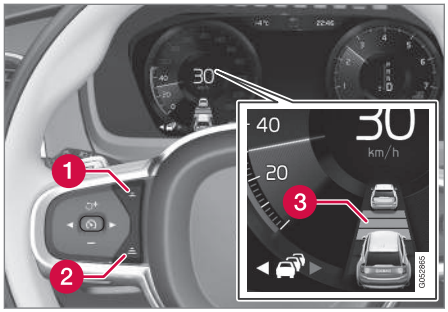
- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Deactivating/activating the Pilot Assist* (p. 289)
- Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist* (p. 288)
- Automatic braking with Pilot Assist* (p. 290)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)

Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist can be set with different time intervals.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when the Distance Warning function is activated.



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

– Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
  > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

In order to follow the preceding car in a smooth and comfortable way Pilot Assist allows the time interval to noticeably vary. At low speed when the distance becomes short, Pilot Assist increases the time interval slightly.

Note that a short time interval only allows the driver a short time to react and take action if any unforeseen problem should arise.

NOTE

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

If Pilot Assist does not appear to react when activated, this may be because the time distance to the vehicle in front is preventing an increase in speed.

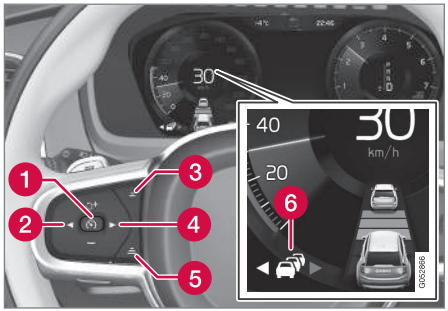
The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)
- Deactivating/activating the Pilot Assist* (p. 289)
- Automatic braking with Pilot Assist* (p. 290)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Deactivating/activating the Pilot Assist*



Buttons and symbols for functions.

Deactivating and setting Pilot Assist in standby mode

1. Press the steering wheel button (1).
   > Pilot Assist is set in standby mode.
2. Press ◂ (2).
   > Pilot Assist is switched off and changes to the Adaptive cruise control in standby mode.

or

– Press ◂ (2).
   > Pilot Assist is switched off and changes to the Adaptive cruise control in active mode.

Standby mode on driver intervention

When the direction indicators or the accelerator pedal are being operated, Pilot Assist is temporarily disabled and set in standby mode. When these conditions no longer apply, Pilot Assist is reactivated automatically.

Automatic reactivation from standby mode must take place within 1 minute - Pilot Assist must thereafter be activated manually with the steering wheel button.

Pilot Assist is temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position.

The driver does not then receive any control recommendation and must control both the speed and distance. Alternatively, the driver can manually reactivate Pilot Assist with the steering wheel button.

Automatic standby mode

Pilot Assist is dependent on other systems, such as the Electronic Stability Control system. If any of these systems ceases to function then the Pilot Assist is disengaged automatically.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and a message is shown in the driver display. The driver must then intervene and adapt the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead and the surrounding traffic.

Automatic deactivation may occur if:

- the camera cannot "see" the lane lines
- there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead
- the driver's hands are not on the steering wheel
- the driver takes off the seatbelt
- engine speed is too low/high
- wheels lose traction
- brake temperature is high
- the parking brake is applied
- the camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. wet snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).

Reactivating Pilot Assist from the standby mode

– Press the steering wheel button (1).
   > The speed is then set to the most recently stored speed.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)
- Automatic braking with Pilot Assist* (p. 290)
- Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist* (p. 288)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)

Automatic braking with Pilot Assist*

Automatic braking with Pilot Assist works as follows.

For shorter stops in connection with inching forward in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed about 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the Pilot Assist is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

– Pilot Assist is reactivated in the following way:
  - Press the steering wheel button ↻.
  - Depress the accelerator pedal.
  > Pilot Assist resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within 6 seconds.

NOTE

Pilot Assist can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 5 minutes - then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before Pilot Assist can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and Pilot Assist is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in the following situations:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the parking brake is applied
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N**, or **R** position
- the driver sets Pilot Assist in the standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

In certain situations the parking brake is applied to keep the car stationary.

This takes place if:

- the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
- Pilot Assist has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 5 minutes
- the brakes have overheated
- the engine is switched off.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)
- Deactivating/activating the Pilot Assist* (p. 289)
- Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist* (p. 288)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Limitations of Pilot Assist*

The Pilot Assist function may have limitations in certain situations.

The Pilot Assist function is an aid which can help the driver in many situations. But the driver is at all times responsible for maintaining a safe distance to surrounding objects and a correct position in the lane.

IMPORTANT

Pilot Assist can switch off or give reduced performance if:

- the lane markings are worn, missing or cross each other.
- lane division is unclear, for example, when the lanes divide or merge or at exits or in the event of multiple sets of markings.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. curbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or impaired view with poor light conditions, back-lighting, wet road surface etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High kerbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the car and such obstacles. The driver must ensure him/herself that the car is at a suitable distance from such obstacles.
- The camera and radar sensor does not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects which completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals etc.
- The recommended steering input is force limited, which means that it cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the car within the lane.

The driver always has the possibility of correcting or adjusting a steering intervention imposed by Pilot Assist and can turn the steering wheel to the desired position.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that Pilot Assist is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes, with a heavy load or with a trailer - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Miscellaneous

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for radar unit" section.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)
- Deactivating/activating the Pilot Assist* (p. 289)
- Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist* (p. 288)
- Automatic braking with Pilot Assist* (p. 290)
- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)
- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)

Radar unit

The radar unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of sensing other vehicles.

The radar unit is used by the following functions:

- Distance Warning*
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- City Safety

Modification of the radar unit could result in its use being illegal.

Related information

- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)
- Type approval for radar units (p. 296)
- Distance Warning* (p. 307)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- City Safety (p. 310)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Limitations of the radar unit

The radar unit has certain limitations - which in turn also limits those functions that use the unit.

Blocked unit

The marked area must be kept free from stickers, objects etc.

The radar unit is placed inside the upper section of the windscreen together with the car's camera unit.

IMPORTANT

Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera and radar-dependent functions.

If the driver display shows this symbol with the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**, it means that the camera and radar unit cannot detect other vehicles in front of the car.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.

Cause	Action
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera and radar unit.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the unit's cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

NOTE

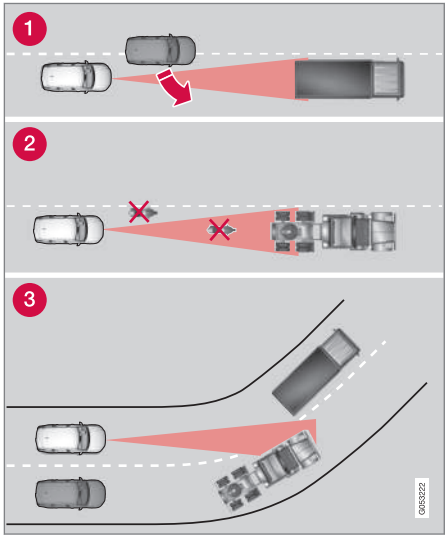
Keep the windscreen clean in front of the camera and radar unit.

The capacity of the radar unit to detect vehicles ahead is reduced significantly if:

- the speed of vehicles in front is significantly different from your own speed

Limited field of vision

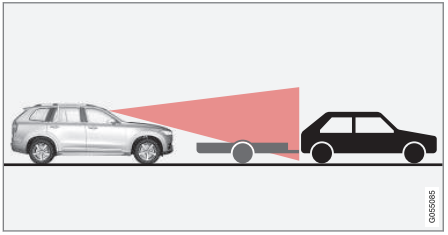
The radar unit has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



The radar unit's field of vision.

1. Sometimes the radar unit is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle that drives in between the car and vehicles in front.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
3. In bends, the radar unit may detect the wrong vehicle or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Low trailers



Low trailer in radar shadow.

Low trailers can also be difficult for the radar unit to detect, or are not detected at all - the driver should therefore be particularly careful when driving behind low trailers when the adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is activated.

High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera and radar unit can temporarily be switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The camera and radar unit restarts automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

IMPORTANT

If a crack, scratch or stone chip in the windscreen in front of one of the camera and radar unit "windows" covers an area of approx. 0.5 x 3.0 mm or larger, a workshop must be contacted to have the windscreen replaced. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If not rectified it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and radar unit.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation of ™driver support systems that use the radar unit, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends **against** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera and radar unit. Instead, the whole windscreen should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted.
- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.

IMPORTANT

When the windscreen is replaced, the camera and radar unit must be recalibrated at the workshop to ensure the functionality of all the car's camera and radar-based systems. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Maintenance

In order that the radar and camera unit shall function correctly, the windscreen in front of the unit must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the camera and radar unit will reduce its function and may prevent measurement.

Related information

- Radar unit (p. 292)
- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)
- Limitations of Distance Warning* (p. 309)
- Limitations of the Adaptive cruise control* (p. 281)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 315)

Type approval for radar units

Type approval for the car's radar units can be seen in the following table.

Market	ACC[A]	BLIS[B]	Symbol	Type approval
Brazil		✓		Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Modelo: L2C0055TR 1500-15-8065 EAN: 07897843840978
Europe	✓	✓		Hereby, Delphi Electronics & Safety declares that L2C0054TR / L2C0055TR are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. The Declaration of Conformity may be consulted at Delphi Electronics & Safety / 2151 E. Lincoln Road / Kokomo, Indiana 46902 USA
The United Arab Emirates	✓			TRA REGISTERED No: ER37536/15 DEALER No: DA37380/15
		✓		TRA REGISTERED No: ER37357/15 DEALER No: DA37380/15

Market	ACC[A]	BLIS[B]	Symbol	Type approval
Indonesia	✓			37295/POSTEL/2014 4927
		✓		38806/SDPPI/2015 4927
Jordan	✓			Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/255 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
		✓		Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2015/3 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
Morocco	✓	✓		AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC NUMÉRO D'AGRÉMENT: MR 9929 ANRT 2014 DATE D'AGRÉMENT: 26/12/2014
Moldova	✓			1024
Singapore	✓	✓	Complies with IDA standards DA105753	Complies with IDA Standards DA105753
South Africa	✓		ICASA	TA-2014/1824 APPROVED
		✓		TA-2014/2390 APPROVED

Market	ACC[A]	BLIS[B]	Symbol	Type approval
Taiwan	✓			CCAB15LP0560T3
		✓		CCAB15LP0680T0

A ACC = Adaptive Cruise Control
B BLIS = Blind Spot Information

Related information

- Radar unit (p. 292)
- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Blind Spot Information* (p. 347)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Camera unit

The camera unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of for example detecting lane lines or traffic signs.

The camera unit is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive cruise control
- Lane Keeping Aid
- Driver Alert Control
- Pilot Assist*
- City Safety
- Road sign information
- Automatic main beam

Related information

- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)
- Lane assistance* (p. 322)
- City Safety (p. 310)
- Driver Alert Control (p. 320)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 284)
- Road sign information* (p. 303)
- Activating/deactivating main beam (p. 131)

Limitations of the camera unit

The camera unit has certain limitations - which in turn also limits those functions that use the unit.

Impaired vision

The camera has limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. it can "see" worse in for example intense snowfall or rain, dense fog, heavy dust storms and snow flurries. Under such conditions, the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings can also significantly reduce camera function when it is used to scan the carriageway to detect pedestrians, cyclists and other vehicles.

Blocked unit

The marked area must be kept free from stickers, objects etc.

The camera unit is placed inside the upper section of the windscreen together with the car's radar unit.

IMPORTANT

Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera and radar-dependent functions.

If the driver display shows this symbol with the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**, it means that the camera and radar unit cannot detect other vehicles in front of the car.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.

Cause	Action
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera and radar unit.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the unit's cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Strong oncoming light	No action. The camera unit is reset automatically in more favourable light conditions.

NOTE

Keep the windscreen clean in front of the camera and radar unit.

High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera and radar unit can temporarily be switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The camera and radar unit restarts automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

IMPORTANT

If a crack, scratch or stone chip in the windscreen in front of one of the camera and radar unit "windows" covers an area of approx. 0.5 x 3.0 mm or larger, a workshop must be contacted to have the windscreen replaced. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If not rectified it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and radar unit.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation of ™driver support systems that use the radar unit, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends **against** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera and radar unit. Instead, the whole windscreen should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted.
- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.

IMPORTANT

When the windscreen is replaced, the camera and radar unit must be recalibrated at the workshop to ensure the functionality of all the car's camera and radar-based systems. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Maintenance

In order that the radar and camera unit shall function correctly, the windscreen in front of the unit must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the camera and radar unit will reduce its function and may prevent measurement.

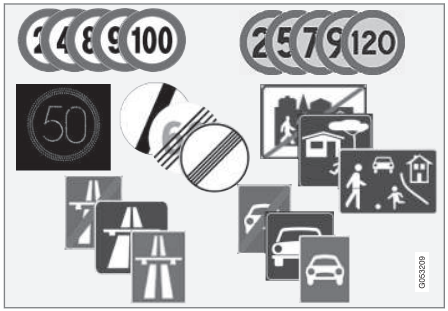
Related information

- Camera unit (p. 299)
- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)
- Lane assistance* (p. 322)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 321)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 291)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 315)
- Limitations for Road sign information* (p. 307)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Road sign information*

The road sign information function (Road Sign Information – RSI) helps the driver to observe speed signs and certain prohibition signs as the car passes them.



Examples of readable signs[3].

RSI provides information about such things as current speed, when a motorway or road is starting/ending, when overtaking is prohibited or when the direction of travel is one-way.

If both a sign for motorway/road for motorised traffic and a sign showing the maximum permitted speed are passed, RSI selects and shows the sign symbol for maximum permitted speed.

WARNING

RSI does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

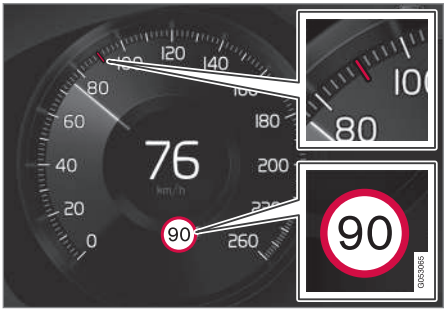
The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

Related information

- Sign display with Road sign information (p. 303)
- Speed camera information (p. 305)
- Activating/deactivating Road sign information (p. 306)
- Limitations for Road sign information* (p. 307)

Sign display with Road sign information

The Road Sign Information function (Road Sign Information - RSI) registers and shows road signs in different ways depending on the sign and the situation.



Example of detected speed information[4].

When RSI detects a road sign with an imposed speed limit, the driver display shows the sign as a symbol plus an indication in red on the speedometer.

3 Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.
4 Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

Besides the speed limit symbol an additional sign may be shown as well, such as "no overtaking" or "no entry".

If the driver enters a road marked with a no-entry sign at the roadside, the symbol for this sign flashes on and off on the driver display as a warning.

The driver can also get an acoustic warning when driving towards a no-entry entrance if the **Audio Warning** function is activated - see the heading "Activating/deactivating the acoustic warning" in the section "Activating/deactivating Road sign information".

End of restriction or motorway

If RSI detects a sign which may imply the end of a speed limit, such as the end of a motorway, the driver display shows the corresponding road sign for 10–30 seconds.

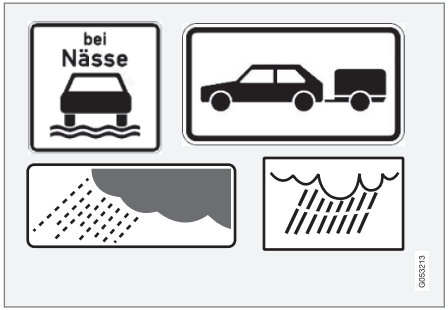
Examples of such signs are:

End of all restrictions.

End of motorway.

Following which, the sign information is hidden until the next speed-related sign is detected.

Additional signs

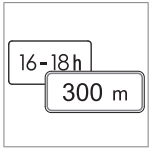


Examples of additional signs[4].

Sometimes different speed limits are signposted for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

If the car has a trailer attached and you pass a speed sign with the additional sign “trailer”, the indicated speed will appear on the driver display.



Some speed limits only apply after a certain distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to this fact by means of a symbol for an additional sign below the speed symbol. The additional symbol in the driver display will show either “DIST” or “TIME”.

A symbol for additional sign in the form of an empty frame under the driver display's speed symbol means that the RSI has detected an additional sign with supplementary information for the current speed limit.

4 Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

Sensus Navigation

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation, speed information is read from the navigation unit in the following cases:

- On detecting signs that indirectly indicate a speed limit[5], such as motorway, expressway, and city limit signs.
- If a previously detected sign is assumed not to apply any longer, but no new sign has been detected.

NOTE

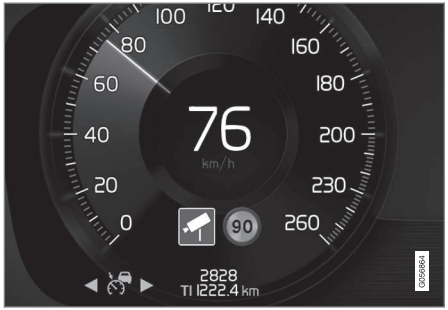
If a downloaded third-party app is used for navigation then there is no support for speed-related information.

Related information

- Road sign information* (p. 303)
- Activating/deactivating Road sign information (p. 306)

Speed camera information

A car equipped with Sensus Navigation can provide information on an upcoming speed camera in the driver display.



Speed camera warning in the driver display.

If the car exceeds a detected speed limit, the driver can be warned when the car approaches a speed camera, provided that the navigation maps for the market in question contain information on speed cameras.

For more information on speed warning in connection with speed camera, see the heading "Activating/deactivating speed warnings" in the section "Activating/deactivating Road sign information" as well as the section "Limitations for Road sign information".

NOTE

Information about speed cameras in the navigation maps is not available for all markets.

Related information

- Road sign information* (p. 303)
- Activating/deactivating Road sign information (p. 306)
- Limitations for Road sign information* (p. 307)

5 Variations may occur in different markets.

Activating/deactivating Road sign information

The Road sign information (Road Sign Information - RSI) function can be activated/deactivated.

Activating/deactivating Road sign information

The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

– Tap on the **Road Sign Information** button in function view.
  > RSI is activated and the button shows a green indicator - a grey indicator means that RSI is deactivated.

Activating/deactivating speed warnings

The speed warning function warns the driver when the applicable speed limit is exceeded. A speed warning is always given if the speed limit is exceeded in connection with speed camera information. The driver can choose to have the function activated or deactivated.

The speed warning is given by the driver display symbol showing the applicable maximum permitted speed temporarily flashing when this speed is exceeded.

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Road Sign Information**.
3. Select **Speed Limit Warning** to activate/deactivate speed warnings.
   > A speed selector is shown if the function is activated.
4. Adjust the limit for when a speed warning is to be given, either up or down, by pressing the up/down arrows.

   Note that no consideration is given to any boundary adjustment made when the driver display shows the speed camera symbol.

Activating/deactivating the acoustic warning.

It is also possible to have an acoustic warning in connection with a speed warning:

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Road Sign Information**.
3. Select **Audio Warning** to activate/deactivate the acoustic warning.

With the **Audio Warning** function activated, the driver is also warned when driving towards a no-entry entrance.

Related information

- Road sign information* (p. 303)
- Speed camera information (p. 305)
- Sign display with Road sign information (p. 303)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Limitations for Road sign information*

The Road sign information Road Sign Information - RSI function may have limitations in certain situations.

Examples of things that can reduce the RSI function:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Signs positioned high above the roadway
- Fully/partially obscured or poorly positioned signs
- signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt
- digital road maps[6] are out of date or inaccurate.

NOTE

The RSI function can interpret some types of bicycle rack (connected to the electrical socket for trailers) as a connected trailer. In such cases the driver may be shown incorrect speed information.

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

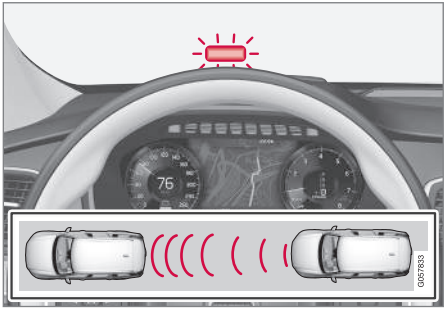
Related information

- Road sign information* (p. 303)
- Activating/deactivating Road sign information (p. 306)
- Sign display with Road sign information (p. 303)
- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)

Distance Warning*

The Distance Warning function (Distance Alert) warns the driver if the time interval to the vehicle ahead becomes too short.

Distance warning is active at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) and only reacts to the vehicle ahead travelling in the same direction. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles.



Warning light.

A warning light is visible in the windscreen and illuminates with a constant glow if the time interval to the vehicle in front is shorter than the preset value.

6 In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation.

If the car is fitted with a head-up display* the warning is displayed on the windscreen with a symbol.

NOTE

Distance warning is deactivated during the time the adaptive cruise control is active.

WARNING

Distance warning only reacts if the distance to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value - the speed of the driver's vehicle is not affected.

Related information

- Activating and setting the time interval for Distance warning* (p. 308)
- Limitations of Distance Warning* (p. 309)
- Head-up display* (p. 102)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Activating and setting the time interval for Distance warning*

The Distance warning (Distance Alert) function can be activated/deactivated and a time interval can be set.

Activating/deactivating Distance warning

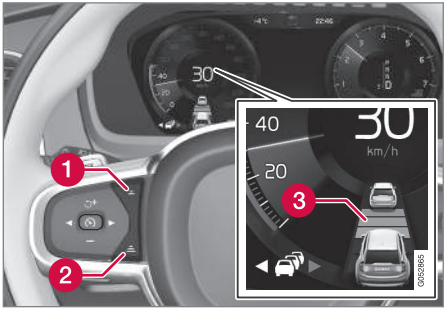
The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

– Tap on the **Distance Alert** button in function view.
  > Distance warning is activated/deactivated, a green/grey indicator is displayed in the button.

Setting the time interval for Distance warning

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when the adaptive cruise control function is activated.



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

– Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
  > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

The set time interval is also used by the Adaptive Cruise Control function.

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

Related information

- Distance Warning* (p. 307)
- Limitations of Distance Warning* (p. 309)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)

Limitations of Distance Warning*

The Distance warning (Distance Alert) function may have limitations in certain situations.

NOTE

Strong sunlight, reflections or strong variations in light intensity, as well as wearing sunglasses, could mean that the warning light in the windscreen cannot be seen.

Poor weather or winding roads could affect the radar unit's capacity to detect vehicles in front.

The size of other vehicles could also affect detection capacity, e.g. motorcycles. This could mean that the warning lamp illuminates at a shorter distance than the setting or that the warning is temporarily absent.

Extremely high speeds can also cause the lamp to illuminate at a shorter distance than that set due to limitations in sensor range.

NOTE

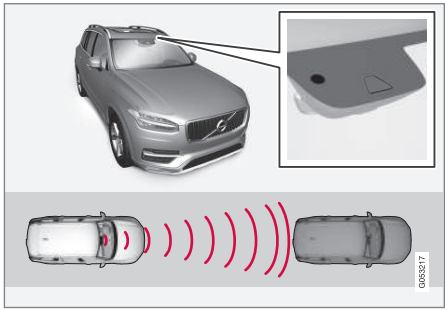
The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for radar unit" section.

Related information

- Distance Warning* (p. 307)
- Activating and setting the time interval for Distance warning* (p. 308)
- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)

City Safety

City Safety uses visual and acoustic signals to alert the driver of any pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles that appear - the car brakes automatically unless the driver himself acts within a reasonable time.



Location of the radar unit.

City Safety can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed.

City Safety is an aid to assist a driver who is at risk of colliding with a pedestrian, cyclist or vehicle.

The City Safety function can help the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, e.g. when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

The function helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of an imminent risk of collision if the driver does not react in time by braking and/or swerving.

City Safety activates a short, sharp braking procedure, normally stopping the car just behind the vehicle in front. For most drivers this is well outside normal driving style and may be perceived as uncomfortable.

City Safety is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

City Safety is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

The driver or passengers are not normally aware of City Safety - it only intervenes in a situation where a collision is immediately imminent.

City Safety can avoid a collision with a vehicle in front or a bicycle by reducing the speed of the car by up to 50 km/h (30 mph). For a pedestrian, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

If the speed difference is greater than 50 km/h (30 mph) or 45 km/h (28 mph) respectively, City Safety's automatic braking cannot prevent a collision but it can mitigate the consequences of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

City Safety is an aid and does not work in all driving situations, traffic, weather and road conditions.

Warning only activated in the event of a high risk for collision. This section and the section "Limitations for City Safety" inform about limitations that the driver should be aware of before using City Safety.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).

City Safety's auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed. To ensure full brake performance, the driver should always depress the brake pedal - even if the car auto-brakes.

City Safety does not activates any auto-brake functions in the event of heavy acceleration.

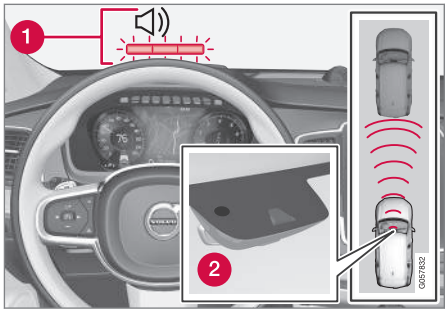
The driver is always responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed - never wait for a collision warning or for City Safety to intervene.

Market limitation

City Safety is not available in all countries. If City Safety does not appear in the centre display's **Settings** menu, the car is not equipped with this function.

Search path in the top menu: **Settings ➔ My Car ➔ IntelliSafe**

Overview



Function overview.

1. Audio-visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk.
2. Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

City Safety carries out three steps in the following order:

1. Collision warning
2. Brake support
3. Auto Brake

Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

City Safety can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction in front of the driver's vehicle.

In the event of a risk of collision with a pedestrian, cyclist or vehicle (including vehicles described in the "City Safety in cross traffic" section), the driver's attention is alerted by means of a red flashing warning signal (1), an acoustic signal and a haptic warning in the form of a brake pulse. At lower speeds or with hard braking or acceleration there will be no haptic warning. The brake pulse frequency varies according to the car's speed.

Brake support

If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

Brake support reinforces the driver's braking action if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

Auto Brake

The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

In connection with automatic braking the seatbelt tensioner may also be activated. For more information see the "Seatbelt tensioner" section.

In some situations, the action of Auto-brake may begin with light braking and then progress to full brake action.

When City Safety has prevented a collision with a stationary object, the car remains stationary in anticipation of positive action by the driver. If the car has been braked to avoid collision with a slower vehicle in front, its speed is reduced to match that of the vehicle in front.

The driver can always interrupt a braking intervention by firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

When City Safety™ brakes, the brake lights come on.

When City Safety is activated and brakes the vehicle, the driver display shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

WARNING

City Safety must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver relies solely on City Safety to do the braking, there might be a risk of a collision sooner or later.

Related information

- Setting the warning distance for City Safety (p. 312)
- Detection of obstacles with City Safety (p. 313)
- City Safety in cross traffic (p. 314)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 315)
- Messages for City Safety (p. 318)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)

Setting the warning distance for City Safety

City Safety is always activated, but it is possible to set the function's warning distance.

NOTE

The City Safety function cannot be deactivated. It is activated automatically when the engine/electric operation is started and remains switched on until the engine/electric operation is switched off.

The warning distance determines the sensitivity of the system and regulates the distance at which the visual, acoustic and haptic warnings shall be triggered.

1. Tap on **Settings** in top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe**.
3. Under **City Safety**, select **Later**, **Normal** or **Earlier** to set the desired warning distance.

Try first with **Earlier**. If this setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, then change to the **Normal** warning distance.

If warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning distance can be reduced. This would lead to the system warning at a later stage, which reduces the total number of warnings.

The **Later** warning distance should only be used in exceptional cases, as in dynamic driving.

NOTE

City Safety warns the driver when there is a risk of a collision, but it cannot shorten the driver's reaction time.

For City Safety to be effective, it is recommended always to drive with the warning distance set to **Earlier**.

NOTE

Even if the warning distance has been set to **Earlier** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles in front brake heavily.

NOTE

Warning with the direction indicators for Rear Collision Warning deactivates if the warning distance for collision warning is set to the lowest level **"Later"** (see section "Set warning distance for City Safety").

The seat belt pre-tensioning and braking functions are, however, still active.

WARNING

No automatic system can guarantee 100 % correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test City Safety by driving at people or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.

Related information

- City Safety (p. 310)

Detection of obstacles with City Safety

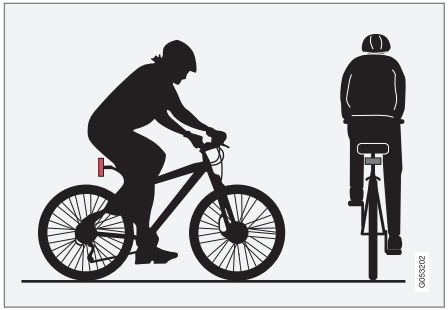
The obstructions that City Safety can detect are vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians.

Vehicles

City Safety™ detects most vehicles that are either stationary or moving in the same direction as the driver's vehicle, as well as vehicles described in the "City Safety in cross traffic" section.

In order that City Safety™ shall be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, the vehicle's front and rear lights must be working and clearly illuminated.

Cyclists



Optimal examples of what City Safety interprets as a cyclist — with clear body outline and bicycle outline.

Optimal performance requires that the system function that detects a cyclist must receive the clearest possible information about the body and bicycle outline, requiring the ability to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a bicycle designed for adults.

WARNING

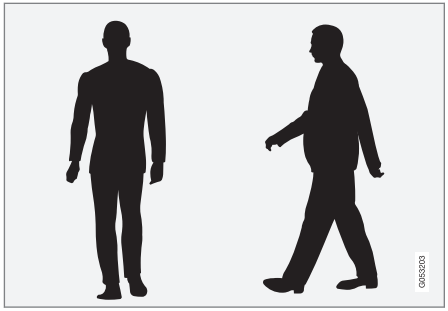
City Safety is an aid.

The function cannot detect:

- all cyclists in all situations and does not see partially obscured cyclists, for example.
- cyclists wearing clothing that obscures the body outline.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Pedestrians



Optimal examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body outlines.

For optimal performance, the system function that detects pedestrians must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

In order that it shall be possible to detect a pedestrian there must be a contrast with the background and this will be affected by such things as clothes, the background and the weather. With poor contrast the pedestrian may either be detected late or not at all, which may mean that warnings and braking are late or omitted.

City Safety can detect pedestrians even in the dark by means of the car's headlights.

WARNING

City Safety is an aid and cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm.
- pedestrians if the background contrast of the pedestrians is poor - warning and brake interventions may then be late or not occur at all.
- pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

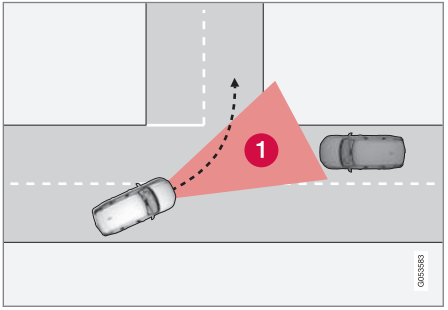
The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

- City Safety (p. 310)

City Safety in cross traffic

City Safety can help the driver when crossing the path of another oncoming vehicle at an intersection.



Sector in which City Safety can detect oncoming crossing vehicles.

For City Safety to detect an oncoming vehicle on a collision course, the oncoming vehicle must first enter the sector (1) in which City Safety can analyse the situation.

The following further criteria must also be fulfilled:

- the driver's vehicle must be travelling at no less than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on.

WARNING

City Safety is an aid and does not work in all driving situations, traffic, weather and road conditions.

Warnings and brake interventions due to a collision risk with an oncoming vehicle often come very late.

The driver is always responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed - never wait for a collision warning or for City Safety to intervene.

Limitations

In some cases City Safety may have difficulty helping the driver deal with collision risks due to oncoming cross traffic. Examples are:

- in slippery conditions where the Electronic stability control intervenes
- if the oncoming vehicle is detected too late
- if the oncoming vehicle is hidden by another vehicle
- if the oncoming vehicle drives in an unpredictable manner, for example, abruptly changes lanes at a late stage.

Related information

- City Safety (p. 310)

Limitations of City Safety

The City Safety function may have limitations in certain situations.

Surroundings

Low objects

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

Skidding

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety to avoid a collision. In such situations the anti-lock brakes and the Electronic stability control will give the best possible braking force and will maintain stability.

Oncoming light

The visual warning signal in the windscreen may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead.

Heat

NOTE

The visual warning signal can be temporarily disengaged in the event of high passenger compartment temperature caused by strong sunlight for example.

- Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle in front is small or if steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g. a very active driving style.

The camera and radar unit's field of view

The camera's field of vision is limited, which is why pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles in some situations cannot be detected, or they are detected later than anticipated.

Dirty vehicles may be detected later than others and if it is dark, motorcycles may be detected late or not at all.

If a text message in the driver display indicates that the camera and radar unit is obstructed, City Safety may be unable to detect pedestrians, cyclists, vehicles or road lines ahead of the car. This means that the functionality of City Safety may be reduced.

However, an error message is not shown in all situations where the windscreen sensors are obstructed. The driver must therefore take care to keep the area of windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit clear.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance and replacement of City Safety components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Driver intervention

Reversing

When your own car is reversing, City Safety is temporarily deactivated.

Low speed

City Safety is not activated at very low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph) - and the system therefore does not intervene in situations when the driver is approaching a vehicle in front very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Active driver

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety does not intervene or postpone warning/intervention in situations where the driver is steering and accelerating in a decisive manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

Active and aware driving behaviour can delay a collision warning and intervention in order to minimise unnecessary warnings.

Miscellaneous

WARNING

Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if a traffic situation or external influences mean that the camera and radar unit cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles correctly.

For vehicles to be detected at night, their headlamps and rear lamp cluster must be switched on and shining clearly.

The camera and radar unit has a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists. The system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions as long as the relative speed is below 50 km/h (30 mph). For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph).

Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).

Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera-dependent functions.

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for radar unit" section.

Related information

- City Safety (p. 310)
- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)
- Limitations of the radar unit (p. 293)

Messages for City Safety

A number of messages regarding City Safety can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
City Safety **Automatic intervention**	When City Safety brakes or has done an automatic braking, several of the driver display symbols may be illuminated in connection with a text message being shown.
City Safety **Reduced functionality Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- City Safety (p. 310)

Rear Collision Warning

The Rear Collision Warning (RCW) function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind.

RCW activates automatically whenever the engine is started and it cannot be switched off.

The RCW can warn the driver in a vehicle approaching from behind that a collision is imminent by rapidly flashing the direction indicators.

If with a vehicle speed below 30 km/h (20 mph) the RCW function detects that the driver's vehicle is in danger of being hit from behind, the seatbelt tensioners may tension the front seatbelts and the Whiplash Protection System safety system is activated.

Immediately before the collision, RCW may also activate the foot brake in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the driver's vehicle during the collision. However, this can only happen if the driver's vehicle is stationary. The foot brake releases immediately if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Limitations

In certain cases the RCW may have difficulty helping the driver in the event of a collision risk. This can be for example:

- in slippery conditions when the Electronic stability control intervenes
- if the vehicle approaching from the rear is detected too late
- if the vehicle approaching from the rear changes lane at the last moment
- if the vehicle approaching from the rear has a speed exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).

NOTE

In certain markets, RCW does **not** give a warning with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations - in such cases, this part of the function is deactivated.

NOTE

Warning with the direction indicators for Rear Collision Warning deactivates if the warning distance for collision warning is set to the lowest level "**Later**" (see section "Set warning distance for City Safety").

The seat belt pre-tensioning and braking functions are, however, still active.

Related information

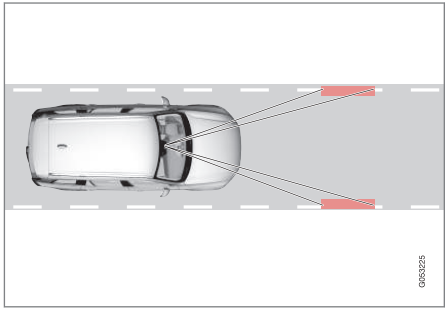
- City Safety (p. 310)
- Setting the warning distance for City Safety (p. 312)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 53)

Driver Alert Control

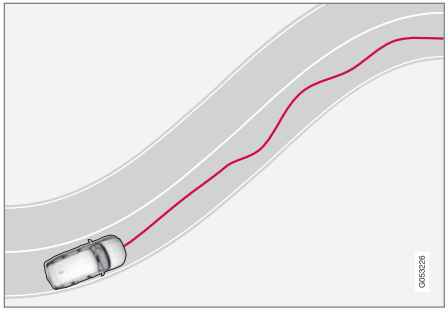
The Driver Alert Control function is intended to attract the driver's attention when he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

The objective for DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

The function is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).



A camera detects the edge markings painted on the carriageway and compares the alignment of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements.



If driving behaviour becomes seriously erratic, the driver is alerted by means of an acoustic signal combined with a symbol in the driver display and the message **Time for a break soon?**.

The warning is repeated after a time if driving ability does not improve.

NOTE

The function must not be used to extend a period of driving. Always plan breaks at regular intervals, and make sure you are well rested.

WARNING

An alarm should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

In the event of an alarm or a feeling of tiredness; stop the car in a safe manner as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is equally as dangerous to drive while tired as it is under the influence of alcohol.

WARNING

Driver Alert Control does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Related information

- Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control (p. 321)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 321)

Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function can be activated/deactivated.

Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control

1. Tap on **Settings** in top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Driver Alert Control**.
3. Select **Alertness Warning** to activate/deactivate the DAC.

WARNING

Driver Alert Control does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Activating/deactivating the rest place guide in the event of a warning

It is possible to select whether the rest place guide shall be activated or deactivated. With the guide activated a proposal for a suitable rest place is presented at the same time as DAC gives a warning.

1. Tap on **Settings** in top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Driver Alert Control**.
3. Select **Rest Stop Guidance** to activate/deactivate the rest place guide.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 320)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 321)

Limitations of Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function may have limitations in certain situations.

In certain cases the driving behaviour may not be affected, which results in the driver not receiving any warning from the DAC. For this reason it is always important to stop and take a break in the event of any signs of driver fatigue, irrespective of whether or not DAC issues a warning.

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 320)
- Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control (p. 321)
- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)

Lane assistance*

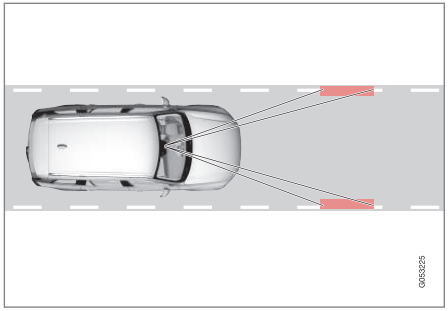
The purpose of Lane assistance is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the vehicle accidentally leaving its own lane in certain situations on motorways and similar major routes.

There are two versions of Lane assistance:

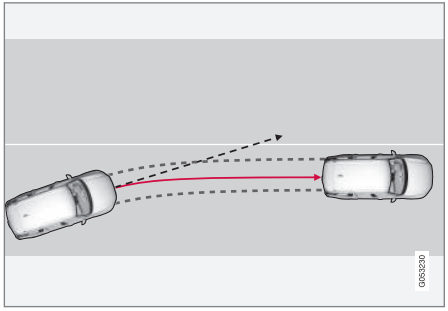
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - warns the driver with an acoustic signal or vibrations in the steering wheel.
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - steers the car back into its lane and/or warns the driver by an acoustic signal or steering wheel pulsations.

Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines.

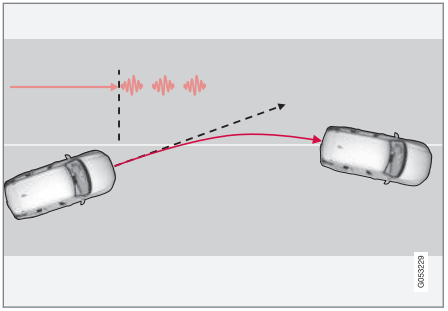
On narrow roads the function may be unavailable, in which case it goes into standby mode. The function becomes available again when the road is wide enough.



A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.



Lane assistance steers the car back into its lane (LKA only).



Lane assistance warns with steering wheel vibrations[7].

How Lane assistance reacts is dependent on the version and the settings:

1. Steering assistance activated (LKA only): When the car is approaching a lane line, LKA will actively steer the car back into its lane by applying a slight torque to the steering wheel.
2. Warning activated (LDW or LKA): If the car is about to cross a lane line the driver is warned by means of an acoustic signal or vibrations in the steering wheel.

7 The steering wheel vibration varies - the longer the car stays outside the lane lines, the longer the vibration.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

When a direction indicator is switched on, there are no steering corrections or alerts from Lane assistance.

WARNING

Lane assistance is merely a driver aid and does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable laws and road traffic regulations are followed.

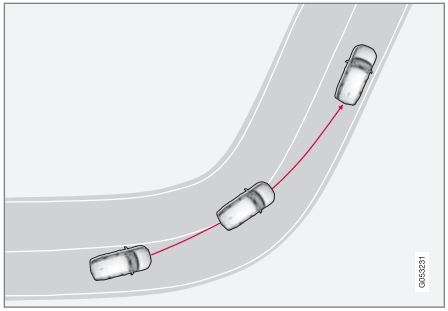
Steering assistance

A precondition for the functioning of the LKA steering assistance is that the driver's hands are holding the steering wheel. The system monitors this continuously.

If this is not the case, a symbol and the **Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering** message will be shown on the driver display, prompting the driver to actively steer the car.

If the driver does not respond to the message to steer the car, an acoustic warning signal sounds and LKA is set in standby mode. The function will then be unavailable until the driver begins steering the car again.

Lane assistance does not intervene



Lane assistance does not engage on sharp inside curves.

In certain cases, Lane assistance will allow the car to cross lane lines without activating the steering assistance or giving a warning. This occurs when for example the direction indicators are used or when the driver "straightens out" a sharp bend.

Limitations

In certain demanding conditions Lane assistance may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- poor road surface
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane lines
- a very "sporty" driving style
- winter road conditions
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

Related information

- Activate/deactivate Lane Departure Warning* (p. 324)
- Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid* (p. 324)
- Symbols and messages for Lane assistance* (p. 326)
- Limitations of the camera unit (p. 300)

Activate/deactivate Lane Departure Warning*

The Lane Departure Warning (LDW) version of Lane assistance can be activated/deactivated.

Activate/deactivate Lane Departure Warning

The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

– Tap on the **Lane Departure Warning** button in function view.
  > LDW is activated (GREEN button indication is shown) or deactivated (GREY button indication is shown).

Select the type of warning for the Lane Departure Warning

It is possible to select how LDW shall warn the driver if the car leaves its lane.

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Lane Departure Warning**.
3. Under **Lane Departure Warning feedback**, select type of warning:
   - **Sound** - the driver is warned by an acoustic signal.
   - **Vibration** — the driver is warned with steering wheel vibrations.

Related information

- Lane assistance* (p. 322)
- Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid* (p. 324)
- Symbols and messages for Lane assistance* (p. 326)

Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid*

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) version of Lane assistance can be activated/deactivated.

Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid

The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

– Tap on the **Lane Keeping Aid** button in function view.
  > LKA is activated (GREEN button indication is shown) or deactivated (GREY button indication is shown).

Select the type of warning for the Lane Keeping Aid

It is possible to select how LKA shall warn the driver if the car leaves its lane.

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Lane Keeping Aid**.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

3. Under **Lane Keeping Aid Warning Feedback**, select type of warning:
   - **Sound** - the driver is warned by an acoustic signal.
   - **Vibration** — the driver is warned with steering wheel vibrations.

Steering assistance and/or warning for the Lane Keeping Aid

It is possible to select how LKA shall react if the driver if the car leaves its lane.

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car ➔ IntelliSafe ➔ Lane Keeping Aid**.
3. Under **Lane Keeping Aid Assistance Mode**, select how LKA shall react
   - **Steering** - the driver is given steering assistance without a warning.
   - **Both** - the driver is given both a warning and steering assistance.
   - **Warning** — warning to driver only.

Related information

- Lane assistance* (p. 322)
- Activate/deactivate Lane Departure Warning* (p. 324)
- Symbols and messages for Lane assistance* (p. 326)

Symbols and messages for Lane assistance*

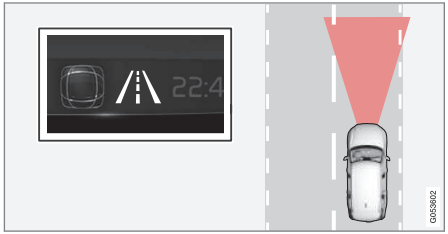
A number of symbols and messages regarding the Lane assistance versions Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) and Lane Departure Warning (LDW) can be shown in the driver display.

Symbol in the driver display

Lane assistance is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

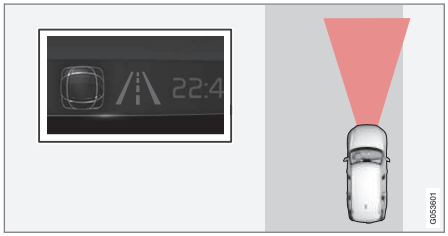
Available



Available — the lane lines in the symbol are white.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

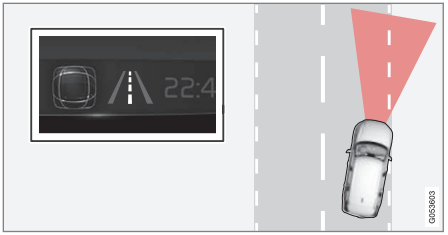
Unavailable



Unavailable — the lane lines in the symbol are grey.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



Steering assistance/warning - the lane lines in the symbol are in colour.

Lane assistance indicates that the car is about to leave the lane. With LKA the system also indicates when LKA attempts to steer the car back into the lane.

Symbols and messages

The following table shows some examples.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	**Driver support system** **Reduced functionality Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	**Windscreen sensor** **Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	**Lane Keeping Aid** **Apply steering**	The LKA steering assistance does not function if the driver does not hold the wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.

Related information

- Lane assistance* (p. 322)
- Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid* (p. 324)
- Activate/deactivate Lane Departure Warning* (p. 324)

Park Assist*

Parking assistance assists the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating the distance to obstacles by acoustic signals combined with graphics on the centre display.

Screen view showing obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The centre display shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacles.

The marked sector indicates the location of the obstacle. The closer to the car symbol is to a selected sector box, the shorter the distance between the car and a detected obstacle.

The shorter the distance to the obstacle, the faster the signal sounds. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

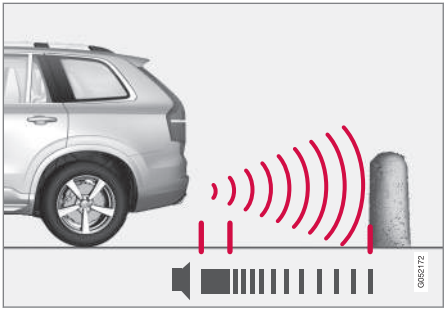
When the distance forward or backwards is less than 30 cm, the tone is continuous and the active sensor's field nearest the car is filled in. If obstacles are detected within the distance for continuous tone both behind and in front of the car, then the tone sounds alternately from the loudspeakers.

The volume of the parking assistance signal can be adjusted while the signal is sounding by means of the [>II] knob on the centre console. Adjustment can also be performed in the top view's **Settings** menu option.

WARNING

- Parking assistance does not relinquish the driver's own responsibility during parking.
- The sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of e.g. people or animals near the car.

Backwards



The sensors for reverse are activated if the car rolls backward without a gear engaged or when the gear lever is moved to reverse position.

The measuring range starts approx. 1.5 metres behind the car.

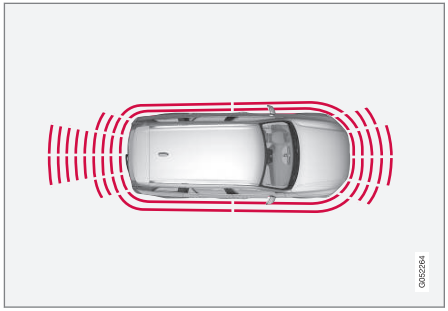
When reversing with a hitched trailer, parking assistance backward is deactivated automatically.

NOTE

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

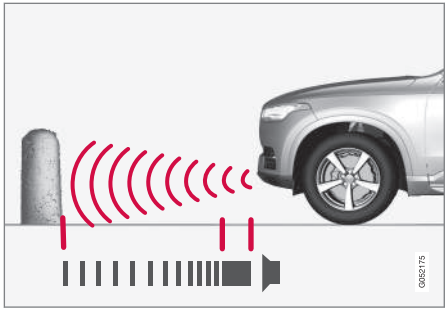
Along the sides



Parking assistance side sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range to the sides starts at approx. 0.3 metres from the obstacle. The acoustic signal for obstacles comes from the side loudspeakers.

Forwards



The front parking assistance sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The front sensors are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range starts approx. 0.8 metres in front of the car. The acoustic signal for obstructions is only active when the car is in motion except when the car is very close to an obstruction (within 30 cm, with constant tone).

NOTE

Parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is applied or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.

IMPORTANT

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

Related information

- Activating/deactivating Parking assistance* (p. 330)
- Limitations of Parking assistance* (p. 330)
- Messages for Park Assist* (p. 332)
- Park assist camera* (p. 333)
- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 339)

Activating/deactivating Parking assistance*

The Parking assistance function can be activated/deactivated.

The front and side parking assistance sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The rear sensors activate if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear in engaged.

The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

Parking assistance can also be activated/deactivated from the camera views or the top view's **Settings** option.

– Tap on the **Park Assist** button in function view.
  > Parking assistance is activated/deactivated, a green/grey indicator is displayed in the button.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 328)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 349)

Limitations of Parking assistance*

The Parking assistance function may have limitations in certain situations.

NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

IMPORTANT

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

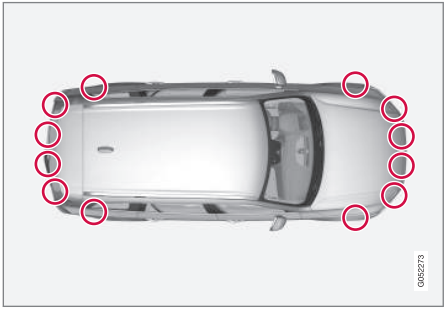
- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since the sensors are temporarily unable to function optimally.

IMPORTANT

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources that emit the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

Maintenance



Location of parking sensors.

For parking assistance to work optimally, the parking assistance sensors must be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 328)
- Activating/deactivating Parking assistance* (p. 330)
- Messages for Park Assist* (p. 332)

Messages for Park Assist*

A number of messages regarding Park Assist can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the system's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.

Related information

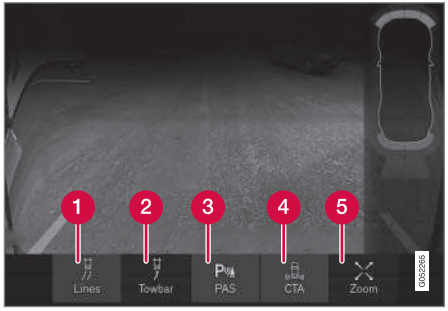
- Park Assist* (p. 328)
- Activating/deactivating Parking assistance* (p. 330)
- Limitations of Parking assistance* (p. 330)

Park assist camera*

The park assist camera helps the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating obstacles with a camera image and graphics in the centre display.

The Park assist camera is activated either automatically, when reverse gear is selected or manually via the centre display - depending on the selected setting.

Overview



1. **Lines** - activates/deactivates park assist lines
2. **Towbar*** - activates/deactivates the towbar assist line*[8]
3. **PAS*** - activates/deactivates Parking assistance
4. **CTA*** - activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert
5. **Zoom**[9] - zoom in/out

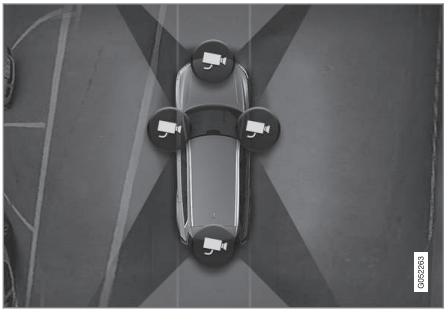
WARNING

- The parking camera serves as an aid. It does not relieve the driver of responsibility when reversing.
- The camera has blind spots, where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of people and animals in the vicinity of the car.

Camera views

The function can display a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view. The uppermost in the selected view denotes which camera is active.

360° view camera*



The locations and coverage area of the parking assist cameras.

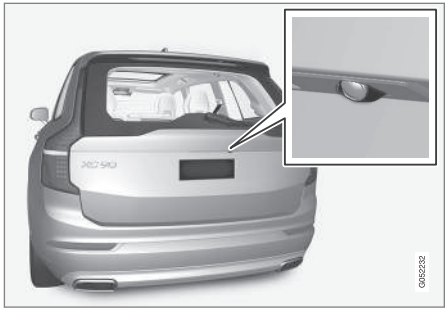
The four sides of the car are shown simultaneously in the centre display, which helps the driver to observe what is around the car when manoeuvring at slow speeds.

Every camera view can be activated separately by tapping on the screen on the desired camera's "field of vision" - e.g. in front of or above the front camera.

If the car is also equipped with Parking assistance* then distance to detected obstacles is illustrated with coloured fields in different colours.

8 Not available in all markets.
9 The park assist lines are switched off when zooming in.

Backwards



The backwards facing camera is located by the tailgate handle.

The reversing camera shows a wide area behind the car and part of the bumper and the towbar, if present.

Objects shown in the centre display may appear slightly tilted — this is normal.

NOTE

Objects on the centre display may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Forwards

The forwards parking camera is located in the grille.

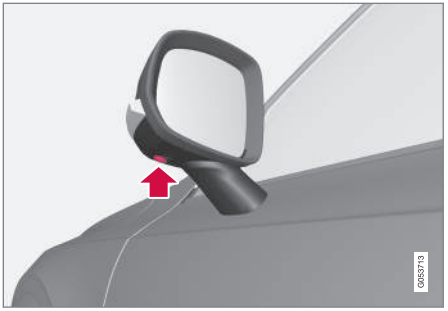
The front camera can be helpful on an exit road with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when there are high hedges. It is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) - following which, the front camera is switched off.

If the car does not reach 50 km/h (30 mph) but the speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 60 seconds after the front camera has been switched off, the camera is reactivated.

NOTE

Automatic reactivation of the front camera on speed reduction requires that **Auto Camera Reverse Activation** is selected in **Settings ➔ My Car ➔ Park Assist**.

The sides



The side cameras are positioned in each door mirror.

The side cameras show what is along each side of the car.

Related information

- Starting the Park assist camera* (p. 337)
- Park assist lines and fields for the park assist camera* (p. 335)
- Limitations of the park assist camera* (p. 338)
- Park Assist* (p. 328)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 349)
- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 339)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Park assist lines and fields for the park assist camera*

The Park Assist Camera indicates the position of the car in relation to its surroundings by displaying lines on the camera image.

Park assist lines

Examples of how the park assist lines can be displayed for the driver.

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this facilitates parallel parking, reversing into tight spaces and when connecting a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and respond directly to steering wheel movements, showing the driver the path the car will take - also when the car is turning.

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. towbar, door mirrors and corners.

NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the lines on the display show the route the **car** will take - not the trailer.
- The screen shows no lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.

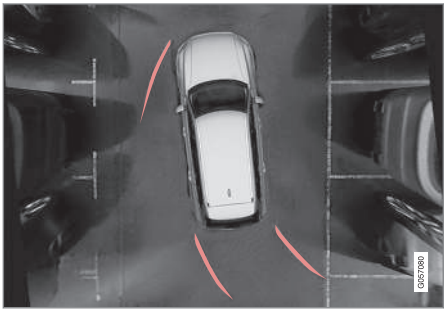
IMPORTANT

Remember that when rear camera view is selected, the centre display only shows the area behind the car. Keep an eye on the sides and front of the car when turning the steering wheel while reversing.

The same applies vice versa - note what happens to the rear parts of the car when the front camera view is selected.

Note that the guide lines show the **shortest** route. Therefore, pay extra attention to the car's sides so that they do not go against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when driving forward or that the front sweeps against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when reversing.

Park assist lines in 360° view*



360° view with park assist lines.

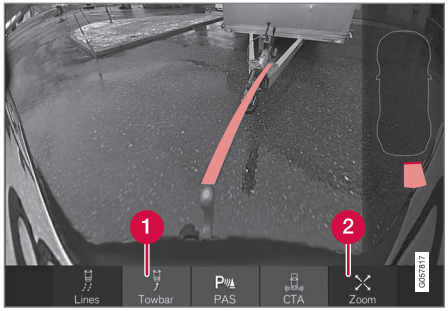
With the 360° view, park assist lines are shown behind, in front of and at the side of the car (depending on the direction of travel):

- When driving forwards: Front lines
- When reversing: Side lines and reversing lines.

If front camera, reversing camera or side camera has been selected, park assist lines are displayed without regard to the car's direction of travel.

▶▶

Towbar assist line



Towbar with assist line.

1 **Towbar** - activates the towbar assist line*.

2 **Zoom** - zoom in/out.

The camera can facilitate connecting up to a trailer by showing an assist line representing the towbar's intended "path" to the trailer.

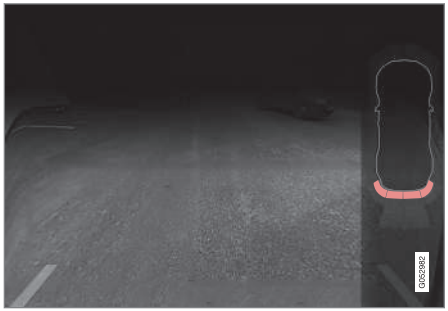
1. Press **Towbar** (1).
   > The assist line for the intended "path" of the towbar is shown. At the same time the car's park assist lines are extinguished.
2. Press **Zoom** (2) when a more precise manoeuvring is required.
   > The camera view zooms in.

Assist lines for both the car and the towbar cannot be shown at the same time.

Sensor field from Parking assistance*

If the car is equipped with Parking assistance* then the distance is shown in the 360° view with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

Sensor fields backwards and forwards



The screen can show coloured sensor fields on the car symbol to the right.

The fields for the front and reversing sensors change colour as the distance to the obstacle decreases — from yellow through orange to red.

Colours of front and reversing fields	Distance (metres)
Yellow	0,6–1,5
Orange	0,4–0,6
Red	0–0,4

Sensor field to the sides

The side fields are only shown in orange.

Colour of side fields	Distance (metres)
Orange	0–0.3

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 333)
- Starting the Park assist camera* (p. 337)
- Limitations of the park assist camera* (p. 338)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Starting the Park assist camera*

The park assist camera can be made to start automatically when reverse gear is selected or manually via the centre display.

Starting the Park assist camera

The Park assist camera can be started manually if it is switched off when reverse gear is selected or if required in another situation.

– Press the **Camera** button in the centre display's function view.

  > The Park assist camera is started.

Camera start in different situations

A press of the button determines the car's speed and travel direction if the camera starts with top view or front view:

- Top view: When stationary and moving forward - 0–15 km/h (0–9 mph).
- Top view: When stationary and moving backward - independent of speed.
- Front view: When moving forward 15–22 km/h (9–14 mph).

Activating/deactivating automatic start of the Park assist camera

It is possible to activate/deactivate the automatic starting of the Park assist camera when reverse gear is selected.

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Park Assist**.
3. Select **Auto Camera Reverse Activation** to activate/deactivate automatic start.

Automatic deactivation of camera

The front view is switched off at 25 km/h (16 mph) to avoid distracting the driver. If the **Auto Camera Reverse Activation** setting is selected, the camera is reactivated automatically at 22 km/h (14 mph) within 60 seconds. If the speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph) then the front view is not reactivated.

Other camera views are switched off at 15 km/h (9 mph) and are not reactivated.

Select basic view for Park Assist Camera backward

With the **Auto Camera Reverse Activation** function selected, the driver can also select which camera function should be activated for reversing - the rearward-facing camera or the 360° view*.

1. Press **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Park Assist**.
3. Select **Rear View Instead of 360°** to activate/deactivate the rear camera view as basic view.

Related information

- Park assist lines and fields for the park assist camera* (p. 335)
- Limitations of the park assist camera* (p. 338)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Limitations of the park assist camera*

The Park assist camera function may have limitations in certain situations.

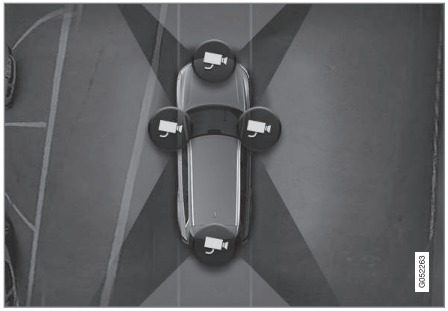
The park assist camera cannot see all objects in every situation - drivers should be aware of the following limitations:

NOTE

A bike carrier or other accessory mounted on the rear of the car could obscure the camera's view.

Blind sectors

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, it could be a relatively large sector that is hidden from view. Obstacles could thereby go undetected until the car is very close to the obstacle.



There are “blind” sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

In 360° view obstacles/objects can “vanish” in the gaps between the individual cameras.

A crossed-out camera icon indicates that the camera is out of order.

Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in reduced image quality.

Maintenance

Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.

NOTE

Keep the camera lens clear of dirt, snow and ice to ensure optimum function. This is particularly important in poor light.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 333)
- Starting the Park assist camera* (p. 337)
- Park assist lines and fields for the park assist camera* (p. 335)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Park Assist Pilot*

The Active parking assistance (Park Assist Pilot - PAP) helps the driver to park or leave a parking space.

PAP checks first if a space is sufficiently big and thereafter helps the driver to turn the steering wheel and manoeuvre the car into the space.

The centre display indicates with symbols, graphics and text the various operations to be carried out and when to do so.

NOTE

The PAP function measures the space and turns the steering wheel - the driver's task is to:

- keep a close watch around the car
- follow the instructions in the centre display
- change gear (reverse/forward)
- control and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

WARNING

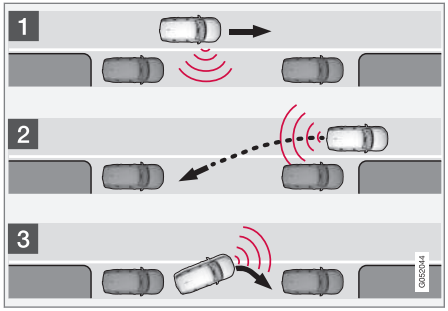
PAP does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always has the final responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and for paying attention to the surroundings and other road users approaching or passing during parking.

Types of parking situations

PAP can be used for the following different parking situations.

Parallel parking



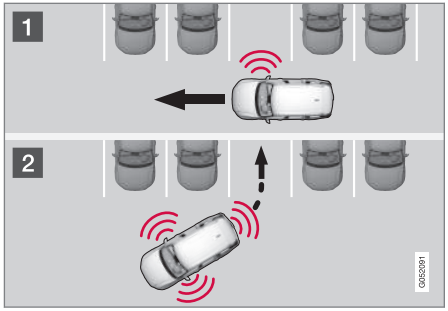
The principal of parallel parking.

The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned in the space by driving forward/backward.

Using the **Park Out** function, a parallel-parked car can also be assisted by PAP to leave the parking space - see the heading "Leaving a parking space" in the section "Parking with Active parking assistance".

Perpendicular parking



Principle for perpendicular parking.

The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is steered into the space during reversing.
3. The car is positioned in the space by driving forward/backward.

NOTE

A perpendicular-parked car **cannot** be assisted by the PAP **Park Out** function to leave a parking space - the function can only be used for a parallel-parked car.

Related information

- Parking with Active parking assistance* (p. 340)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 343)
- Messages for Park Assist Pilot* (p. 346)

Parking with Active parking assistance*

The Active parking assistance (Park Assist Pilot - PAP) helps the driver park in three steps. The function can also help the driver to leave a parking space.

NOTE

The PAP function measures the space and turns the steering wheel - the driver's task is to:

- keep a close watch around the car
- follow the instructions in the centre display
- change gear (reverse/forward)
- control and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

PAP can be activated if the following criteria are met once the engine has been started:

- No trailer is attached to the car.
- The speed must be below 30 km/h (20 mph).

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Parking

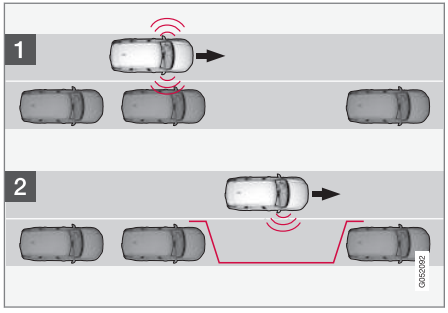
The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned into the space - the system may then request that the driver changes gear.

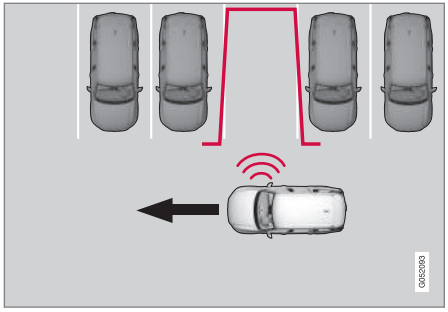
Finding and measuring parking spaces

The function can be activated in the centre display's function view.

It can also be accessed from the camera views or the top view's **Settings** option.



Principle for parallel parking.



Principle for perpendicular parking.

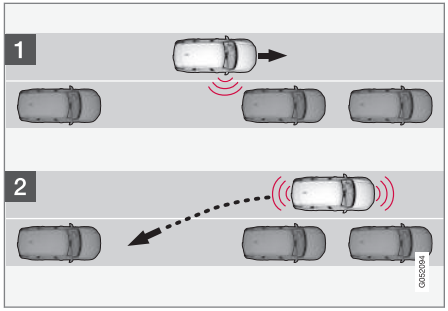
1. Drive no faster than 30 km/h (20 mph) for parallel parking or 20 km/h (12 mph) for perpendicular parking.
2. Tap on the **Park In** button in function view.
   > PAP searches for a parking space and checks whether it is big enough.
3. Keep an eye on the centre display - be ready to stop the car when the graphics and message indicate that a suitable parking space has been found.
   > A pop-up window is shown.
4. Select **Parallel parking** or **Perpendicular parking** and select reverse gear.

NOTE

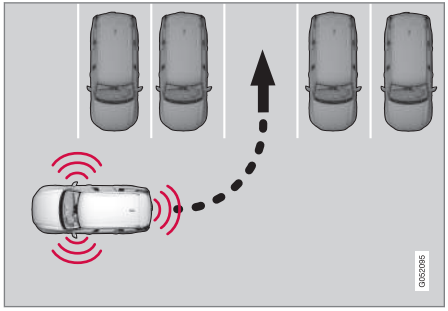
PAP searches the area for parking, displays instructions and guides the car in on its passenger side. But if required the car can also be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the direction indicator to the driver's side - then the system searches for a parking space on that side of the car instead.

Reversing in to the parking space



Parallel.



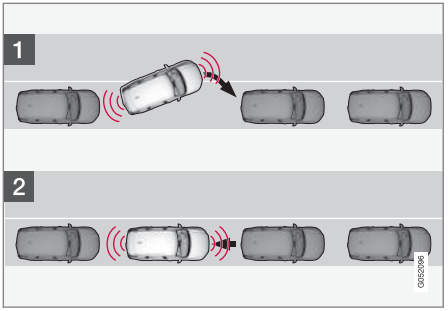
Perpendicular.

1. Check that there is nothing behind.
2. Reverse slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel - and no faster than 7 km/h (4 mph).
   > PAP will then steer the car into the parking space.
3. Keep an eye on the centre display - be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and message so request.

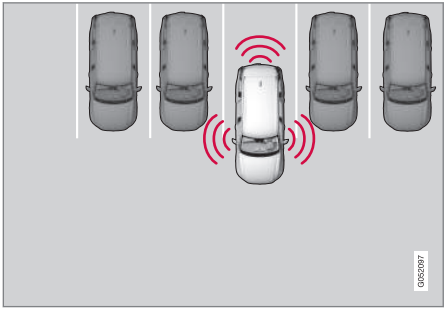
NOTE

- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the PAP function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- To achieve optimum results - wait until the steering wheel is fully turned before starting to drive backward/forward.

Positioning the car in the parking space



Parallel.



Perpendicular.

1. Move the gear selector into the **D** position, wait until the steering wheel has been turned and drive slowly forward

2. Keep an eye on the centre display - be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and message so request.
3. Select reverse gear and drive slowly backwards.
4. Keep an eye on the centre display - be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and message so request.

The function is deactivated automatically and the graphics and message show that parking is complete. It may be necessary for the driver to correct the car's position. Only the driver can determine whether the car is properly parked.

IMPORTANT

The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by PAP compared with when Park Assist uses the sensors.

Leaving a parking space

NOTE

When leaving a parking space, the **Park Out** function can only be used for a parallel-parked car - it does not work for a perpendicular-parked car.

The **Park Out** function is activated in the centre display's function view.

1. Tap on the **Park Out** button in function view.
   > PAP identifies the best way to leave the parking space.
2. Keep an eye the centre display. follow the instructions in the same way as during parking.

Note the steering wheel can "spring" back when the function is completed - the driver may then need to turn the steering wheel back to the maximum steering angle in order to leave the parking space.

If PAP considers that the driver can leave the parking space without any extra manoeuvring then the function will be stopped, even if the driver may consider that the car is still in the parking space.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 339)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 343)
- Messages for Park Assist Pilot* (p. 346)

Limitations of Park Assist Pilot*

The Active parking assistance (Park Assist Pilot – PAP) function may have limitations in certain situations.

Parking is discontinued

A parking sequence will be discontinued:

- if the driver moves the steering wheel
- if the car is driven too quickly - above 7 km/h (4 mph)
- if the driver presses **Cancel** in the centre display
- when the anti-lock brakes or the Electronic stability control are engaged - e.g. when a wheel loses grip on a slippery road.

Where applicable, a message in the centre display states the reason for a parking sequence being discontinued.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

IMPORTANT

Under certain circumstances, PAP is unable to find parking spaces - one reason for this may be the fact that there is interference with the sensors from external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

Driver responsibility

The driver should bear in mind that the PAP is an aid – not an infallible, fully-automatic function. The driver must therefore be prepared to interrupt a parking step.

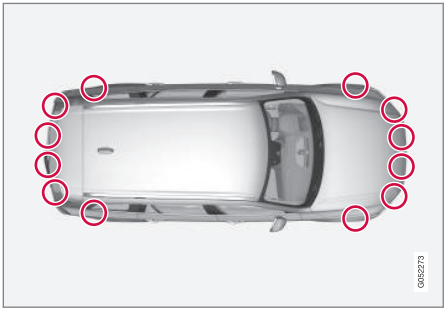
There are also a few details to bear in mind while parking, e.g.:

- PAP bases itself on the locations of vehicles already parked nearby - if they are inappropriately parked, your own car's tyres and wheel rims may be damaged by contact with the kerb.
- PAP is designed for parking on straight streets - not sharp curves or bends. For this reason, make sure the car is parallel to the parking space when PAP measures the space.
- It is not always possible to find parking spaces on narrow streets since there is not enough space for manoeuvring. In such parking situations, it helps the system to drive as close to the side of the road as possible where you intend to park.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic while being parked.
- Objects situated higher than the detection areas of the sensors are not taken into account when calculating the parking manoeuvre. This may cause PAP to turn into the parking space too early, and hence such parking spaces should be avoided.
- The driver is responsible for determining whether the space selected by PAP is suitable for parking.
- Use approved tyres[10] with the correct tyre pressure - this affects the ability of PAP to park the car.
- Heavy rain or snow may cause the system to measure the parking space incorrectly.
- Do not use PAP if snow chains or a spare wheel are fitted.
- Do not use PAP if cargo items are protruding from the car.
- Perpendicular parking spaces may be missed or offered unnecessarily if one parked car is protruding more than other parked cars.

IMPORTANT

The PAP system's parameters may need to be updated when changing to another approved wheel rim size involving changed tyre circumference. Consult a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Maintenance



PAP sensor locations.

For the PAP function to work properly, the surfaces with its sensors must be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo - they are the same sensors on the bumpers that Parking assistance uses.

10 "Approved tyres" refers to tyres of the same type and make as those fitted new on delivery from the factory.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 339)
- Parking with Active parking assistance* (p. 340)

Messages for Park Assist Pilot*

A number of messages regarding Park Assist Pilot – PAP can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the systems' sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 339)
- Parking with Active parking assistance* (p. 340)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 343)

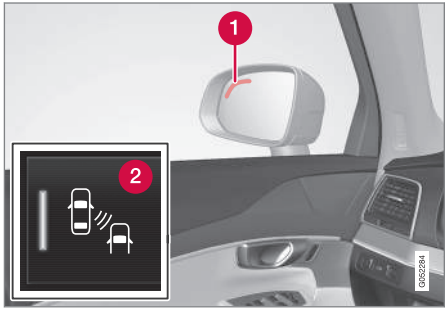
* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Blind Spot Information*

The Blind Spot Information (BLIS) function is designed to give a warning of vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of the driver's vehicle so as to assist the driver in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

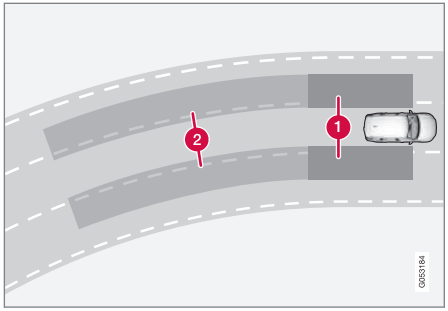
BLIS is a driver aid intended to give a warning of:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.



Location of BLIS lamp.

1. Indicator lamp
2. BLIS symbol



Principle of Blind Spot Information

1. Zone in blind spot
2. Zone for quickly approaching vehicle.

The BLIS function is active at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph).

The system is designed to react when:

- the vehicle is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is quickly approaching the vehicle.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in Zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in Zone 2, the indicator lamp on the door mirror on the affected side illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the indicator lamp will change over from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

NOTE

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

WARNING

Blind Spot Information does not work on sharp bends.

Blind Spot Information does not work when the car is reversing.

WARNING

Blind Spot Information is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

Blind Spot Information is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

Blind Spot Information can never replace responsibility and attention by the driver. It is always the driver's responsibility to change lanes in a safe manner.

WARNING

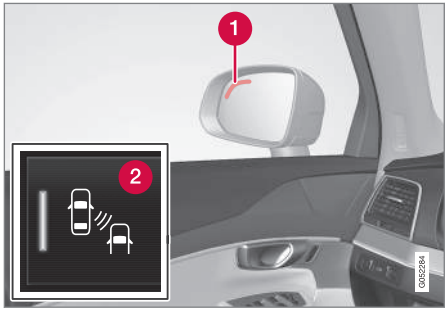
The system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the rearview mirrors. It can never replace the driver's attention and responsibility. The responsibility for changing lanes safely always rests with the driver.

Related information

- Activate/deactivate Blind Spot Information* (p. 348)
- Limitations of Blind Spot Information* (p. 349)
- Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 353)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 349)

Activate/deactivate Blind Spot Information*

The Blind Spot Information (BLIS) function can be activated/deactivated.



Location of Blind Spot Information lamp.

1. Indicator lamp
2. BLIS button in the function view on the centre display that is used to activate/deactivate the function.

– Tap on the **BLIS** button in function view.
  > BLIS is activated/deactivated, a green/grey indicator is displayed in the button.

If BLIS is activated when starting the engine, the function is confirmed by the door mirror indicator lamps blinking once.

If BLIS was deactivated when the engine was switched off, it will continue to be deactivated when the engine is next started and no indicator lights will then be illuminated.

WARNING

Blind Spot Information is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

Blind Spot Information is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

Blind Spot Information can never replace responsibility and attention by the driver. It is always the driver's responsibility to change lanes in a safe manner.

Related information

- Blind Spot Information* (p. 347)
- Limitations of Blind Spot Information* (p. 349)
- Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 353)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Limitations of Blind Spot Information*

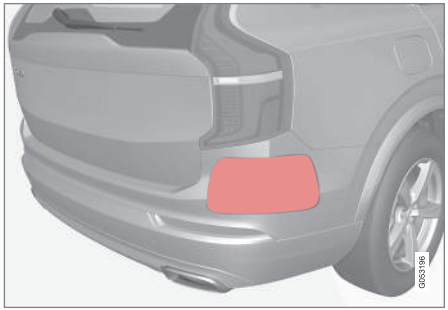
The Blind Spot Information (BLIS) function may have limitations in certain situations.

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- BLIS is deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

Sensors

The sensors for the BLIS function are located inside each corner of the rear wing/bumper. The sensors are also used by the Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function.



Keep this surface area clean - on both sides.

To ensure optimal functionality, the areas in front of the sensors must be kept clean.

Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.

In some cases, the system detects that one or both sensors are blocked and then shows the message **Blind spot sensor Rear sensors blocked, cleaning needed** in the driver display - check and rectify as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

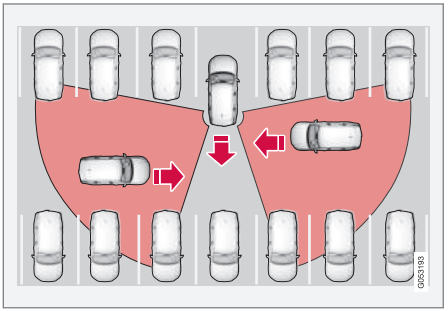
Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Blind Spot Information* (p. 347)
- Activate/deactivate Blind Spot Information* (p. 348)
- Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 353)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert (p. 351)

Cross Traffic Alert*

Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) is a driver aid that is intended to warn of crossing traffic when the car is reversing. CTA is a supplement to Blind Spot Information (BLIS).



Principle of CTA.

CTA supplements the functionality of BLIS by providing the ability to see crossing traffic approaching from the side, such as while reversing out of a parking space.

CTA is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

CTA is only active if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear has been selected.

If CTA has sensed that something is approaching from the side, this is also indicated with:

- an acoustic signal - the sound is heard in the left-hand or right-hand speaker according to the direction from which the object approaches.
- an illuminated icon in the PAS graphics on the screen.
- an icon on the Park assist camera top view.

WARNING

CTA is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

CTA is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

CTA can never replace the driver's responsibility and attention - it is always the driver's responsibility to reverse in a safe manner.

Related information

- Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 350)
- Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 353)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert (p. 351)
- Blind Spot Information* (p. 347)

Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert*

The Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function can be activated/deactivated.

The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

– Tap on the **Cross Traffic Alert** button in function view.

  > - GREEN button indication - CTA is activated.
  - GREY button indication - CTA is deactivated.

CTA is always in activated mode after the engine is started.

WARNING

CTA is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

CTA is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

CTA can never replace the driver's responsibility and attention - it is always the driver's responsibility to reverse in a safe manner.

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 349)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert (p. 351)
- Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 353)

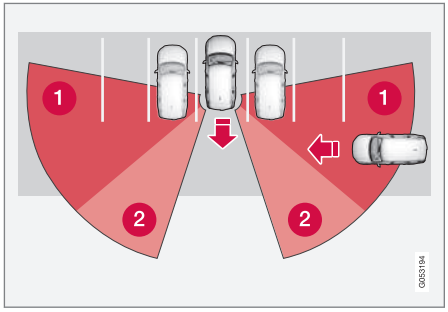
* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert

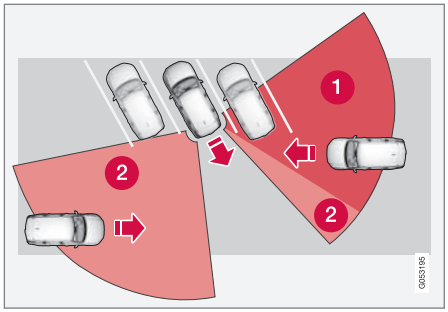
The Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function may have limitations in certain situations.

CTA does not perform optimally in all situations but has some limitations. For example, the CTA sensors cannot “see” through other parked vehicles or obstructions.

Here are some examples of situations where CTA’s "field of vision" may be already limited and approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close:



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.



In an angled parking slot CTA may be completely “blind” on one side.

1. Blind CTA sector.
2. Sector in which CTA can detect/“see”.

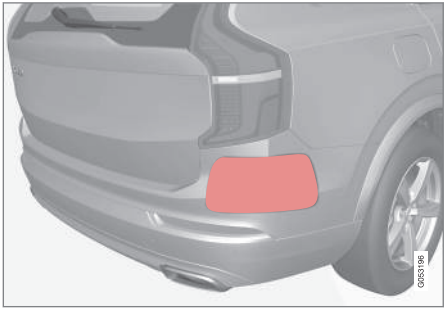
However, as the driver slowly reverses the car, the angle it makes with the obstructing vehicle/object changes and the blind sector rapidly decreases.

Examples of further limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- CTA is deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car’s electrical system.

Sensors

The sensors for the CTA function are located inside each corner of the rear wing/bumper. The sensors are also used by the Blind Spot Information (BLIS) function.



Keep this surface clean - also on the left-hand side.

To ensure optimal functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.

Do not affix any objects, tape, labels or similar within the area of the sensors.

IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 349)
- Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 350)

- Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 353)
- Limitations of Blind Spot Information* (p. 349)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Messages for Blind Spot Information* and Cross Traffic Alert*

A number of messages regarding Blind Spot Information (BLIS) and Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor **Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Blind spot system off **Trailer attached**	BLIS and CTA have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

Related information

- Blind Spot Information* (p. 347)
- Activate/deactivate Blind Spot Information* (p. 348)
- Limitations of Blind Spot Information* (p. 349)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 349)
- Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 350)
- Managing messages in the driver display and the centre display (p. 98)

STARTING AND DRIVING

Ignition positions

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

In order to facilitate the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in 3 different levels - **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are described with the denomination "ignition position" throughout the owner's manual.

The following table shows the functions available in each ignition position/level:

Level	Functions
0	• Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated. • Power seats can be adjusted. • The power windows can be used. • The centre display is started and can be used. • It is possible to start the audio. The functions are time-controlled in this ignition position and are switched off automatically after a period of time.
I	• Panorama roof, power windows, 12V socket in the passenger compartment, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used. • Power seats can be adjusted. • 12 V sockets in the cargo area can be used. • The audio is started automatically if it was running when the car was left.
II	• The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the engine has been started. **This ignition position consumes a lot of current from the starter battery and should therefore be avoided!**

Selecting ignition position

Ignition dial in the tunnel console.

- **Ignition position 0** - Unlock the car and store the remote control key inside the car.

NOTE

To reach level **I** or **II without** starting the engine, do **not** depress the brake pedal when these ignition positions are to be selected.

- **Ignition position I** - Turn the ignition dial to **START** and release it. The control automatically returns to its starting position.
- **Ignition position II** - Turn the ignition dial to **START** and hold it in the **START** position for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the knob, which automatically returns to its starting position.
- **Back to ignition position 0** - To return to ignition position **0** from position **I** and **II** - Turn the ignition dial to **STOP** and release it. The control automatically returns to its starting position.

Related information

- Start engine (p. 357)
- Switching off the engine (p. 358)
- Driver display (p. 83)

Start engine

The engine is started using the remote control key and the ignition dial in the tunnel console.

Ignition dial in the tunnel console.

The remote control key is not physically used when starting the engine since the car is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive Start).

To start the engine:

1. The remote control key must be inside the car. For cars with Passive Start, the key needs to be located in the front part of the passenger compartment. With the keyless locking/unlocking option (Passive Entry*), the key can be anywhere in the car.
2. Make sure that gear position **P** or **N** is selected.
3. Depress the brake pedal fully[1].
4. Turn the ignition dial to **START** and release it. The control automatically returns to its starting position.

NOTE

For diesel-engined cars, there may be a slight delay before the engine can be started.

When the engine is started the starter motor works until the engine is started or until its overheating protection triggers.

Backup reader's location in the tunnel console.

If the message **Car key not found** is shown in the driver display when starting, place the remote control key on the backup reader in the cup holder. Then try to start again.

[1] If the car is moving, then you simply need to turn the ignition dial towards **START** to start the engine.

NOTE

When the remote control key is placed in the cup holder, make sure that no other car keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) are in the cup holder. Several car keys close to each other in the cup holder can cause interference with each other.

If the message **Car start System check, wait** is shown in the driver display when starting, wait until the message disappears and then try to start the car again.

IMPORTANT

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

WARNING

Never remove the remote control key from the car while driving or during towing.

WARNING

Always take the remote control key out from the car when leaving the car and make sure the car's electrical system is in ignition position **0** - especially if there are children in the car.

NOTE

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

Related information

- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Switching off the engine (p. 358)
- Remote control key (p. 224)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 243)

Switching off the engine

The engine is switched off using the ignition dial in the tunnel console.

Ignition dial in the tunnel console.

To switch off the engine:

– Turn the ignition dial to **STOP** and release it - the engine is switched off. The control automatically returns to its starting position.

If the gear selector is not in **P** position or if the car is moving:

– Hold the knob in **STOP** position until the engine stops.

Related information

- Start engine (p. 357)

Steering lock

The steering lock makes steering difficult if the car is e.g. taken unlawfully. A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock locks or unlocks.

Activating the steering lock

The steering lock is activated when the car is locked from the outside and the engine is switched off. If the car is left unlocked then the steering lock will lock automatically after a while.

Deactivating the steering lock

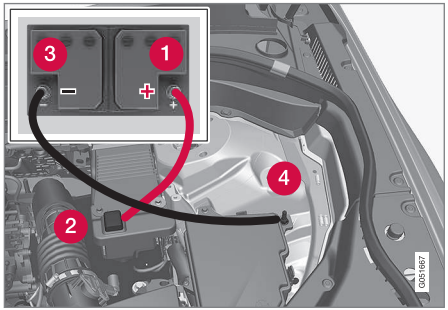
The steering lock is deactivated when the car is unlocked from outside. If the car is not locked, it is sufficient that the remote control key is inside the passenger compartment and the engine is started by turning the start knob towards **START** in order to unlock the steering lock.

Related information

- Start engine (p. 357)
- Switching off the engine (p. 358)
- Steering wheel (p. 124)

Using jump starting with another battery

If the starter battery is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.



When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car's engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.
4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

IMPORTANT

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the positive jump-starting point's cover (2).
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive jump-starting point (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative jump-starting point (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.
10. Start the engine of the "donor car" and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.

11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the crocodile clips during the start procedure. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

    Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the car's positive jump-starting point/donor battery's positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 501)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Start engine (p. 357)
- Opening and closing the bonnet (p. 486)

Gearbox

The gearbox is part of the car's driveline (power transmission) between engine and drive wheels. The function of the gearbox is to change the gear ratio depending on speed and power requirements.

The car has an eight-speed automatic gearbox. It is also possible to select gears manually. The driver display shows which gear position is currently in use.

IMPORTANT

To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol illuminates in the driver display and a text message is shown - follow the recommendation given.

Symbols in the driver display

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, the driver display shows a symbol and a message.

Symbol	Specification
	Information or error message for gearbox. Follow the recommendation given.
	Hot or overheated gearbox. Follow the recommendation given.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 361)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 363)

Gear positions for automatic gearbox

An automatic gearbox unburdens the driver, who can instead focus attention on the traffic and the road.

The car has an eight-speed automatic gearbox, where the system selects a gear to optimise driving.

The gearbox also has a manual gearshift mode.

Gear positions in the driver display

The driver display shows the gear selector's position:

P, **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.

In manual gearshift mode, the gear being used is also shown (1-8).

Gear positions

Park position - P

Select the **P** position when the car is parked or when starting the engine. The car must be stationary when the park position is selected.

To be able to move the gear selector from the park position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the **P** position is engaged. Apply the parking brake first when the car is parked.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.

Reverse position - R

Select position **R** to reverse. The car must be stationary when reverse position is selected.

Neutral position - N

No gear is engaged and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in **N** position.

To be able to change from the neutral position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

Drive position - D

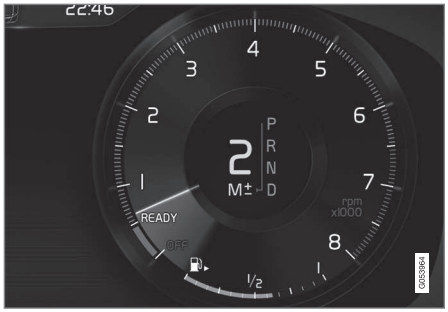
D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must be stationary when changing gear from **R** position to **D** position.

Manual gearshift mode - M

The manual gearshift mode can be selected at any time while driving. The car engine-brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.

Select manual gearshift mode by moving the gear selector sideways from position **D** to the end position at "**±**". The driver display shows which gear (1-8) is engaged at the time.

- Press the gear selector forwards to "**+**" (plus) to change up one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector backwards to "**–**" (minus) to change down one step and release it.



manual gearshift mode in the driver display[2].

The gearbox automatically shifts down if the speed decreases to a level lower than appropriate for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

To return to automatic gear changing, press the gear selector sideways to the end position at **D**.

Kick-down

When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Kick-down is used when maximum acceleration is needed, such as for overtaking.

Safety function

To prevent over-revving of the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor.

The gearbox does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

When kick-down is activated the car can change one or more gears at a time depending on engine speed. The car changes up when the engine reaches its maximum speed in order to prevent damage to the engine.

Related information

- Gearbox (p. 360)
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles* (p. 364)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 363)
- Gear selector inhibitor (p. 363)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

2 The figure is schematic, the layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Gear shift indicator

The gear shift indicator in the driver display shows the current gear during manual gearshifting and when it is appropriate to engage the next gear for optimum fuel economy.

For eco-driving during manual gear changing, it is important to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time. The gear shift indicator shows the current gear in the driver display and uses an up arrow to indicate when shifting to a higher gear is recommended.

Gear shift indicator in the 12-inch driver display.

Gear shift indicator in the 8-inch driver display.

Related information

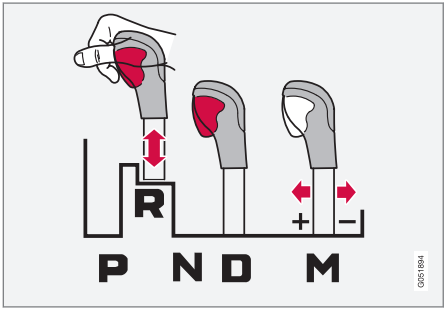
- Gearbox (p. 360)
- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 361)

Gear selector inhibitor

The gear selector inhibitor prevents accidental changing between different gear positions in an automatic gearbox.

There are two different types of gear selector inhibitor - mechanical and automatic.

Mechanical gear selector inhibitor



The gear selector can be moved forward and back freely between **N** and **D**. Other positions are locked with a latch that is released with the inhibitor button on the gear selector.

With the inhibitor button depressed the lever can be moved forwards or backwards between **P**, **R**, **N** and **D**.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gear selector inhibitor has special safety systems.

From park position - P

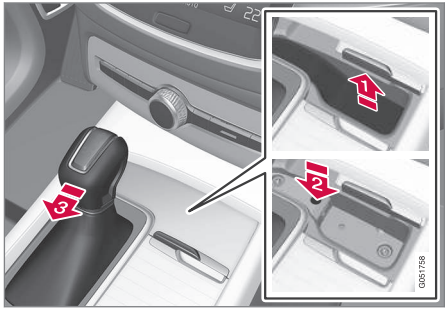
To be able to move the gear selector from the **P** position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

From neutral position - N

If the gear selector is in the **N** position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

To be able to move the gear selector from the **N** position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

Deactivate automatic gear selector inhibitor



If the car cannot be driven, e.g. due to a discharged battery, the gear selector must be moved from the **P** or **D** position so that the car can be moved.

1. Lift the rubber mat in the compartment in front of the gear selector. Locate the hole with a spring-loaded button in the bottom of the compartment.
2. Press a small screwdriver into the hole and hold.
3. Move the gear selector to position **N** and release the button.
4. Put the rubber mat back in place.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 361)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Changing gear with steering wheel paddles*

The steering wheel paddles are a complement to the gear selector and make it possible to change gear manually without releasing hands from the steering wheel.

Activating the steering wheel paddles

To be able to change gear with the steering wheel paddles they must first be activated:

– Pull one of the paddles toward the steering wheel.

  > A figure in the driver display indicates current gear.

Driver display when changing gear with steering wheel paddles.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Manual gearshift mode

In gear position **M** the steering wheel paddles are automatically activated.

Driver display when changing gear with steering wheel paddles in manual gearshift mode.

Changing gear

To change gear one step:

– Pull one of the paddles backwards - towards the steering wheel - and release.

1. "-": Selects the next lower gear.
2. "+": Selects the next higher gear.

A gear change occurs at each pull of the paddle provided that the engine speed does not leave the permitted range.

After each gear change the figure in the driver display changes to show the current gear.

Deactivating the function

Manual deactivation

– Deactivate the steering wheel paddles by pulling both paddles toward the steering wheel and holding in place until the figure in the driver display for the current gear extinguishes.

Automatic deactivation

If the steering wheel paddles are not used, they are deactivated after a short time. This is indicated by means of the figure for the current gear extinguishing.

The exception is during engine braking - then the paddles are activated for as long as engine braking is in progress.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 361)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 363)

Start/Stop

With the **Start/Stop** function, the engine switches off temporarily when the car has stopped e.g. at traffic lights or in a traffic queue, and then starts again automatically when the journey is resumed.

Start/Stop is one of several energy-saving functions intended to reduce fuel consumption, which in turn helps to reduce exhaust emissions.

The system makes it possible to adopt an environmentally-conscious driving style by allowing the car to engine auto-stop when possible.

Related information

- Using the Start/Stop function (p. 366)
- Conditions for the Start/Stop function (p. 368)

Using the Start/Stop function

The **Start/Stop** function temporarily switches off the engine when stationary and then restarts it automatically when the journey is resumed.

The **Start/Stop** function is available when the engine is started and can be activated if certain conditions have been met. The driver display indicates whether the function is available, active or unavailable, see heading "Symbols in driver display" below.

All of the car's normal systems such as lighting, radio, etc. work normally, even when the engine is auto-stopped. However, some equipment may have its output temporarily reduced, e.g. the climate control system's fan speed or extremely high volume on the audio system.

Auto-stop

The following is required for the engine to auto-stop:

- Stop the car with the foot brake and then keep your foot on the brake pedal - the engine stops automatically.

In drive mode **Comfort**[3] or **Eco**, the engine may auto-stop before the car is completely stationary.

With the **Adaptive cruise** or **Pilot Assist** function activated, the engine will autostop after approximately three seconds.

See the section "Conditions for Start/Stop function".

Autostart

The following is required for the engine to auto-start:

- Release the brake pedal - the engine will autostart and you can continue driving. On an uphill gradient hill start assist (HSA) engages, which prevents the car from rolling backwards.
- When the **Auto hold** function is activated, auto-start is delayed until the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- When the **Adaptive cruise** or **Pilot Assist** function are activated, the engine will autostart when the accelerator pedal is depressed, or by pressing the ↻ button on the left keypad of the steering wheel.
- Maintain foot pressure on the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal - the engine auto-starts.
- On a downhill gradient: Release pressure on the brake pedal slightly so that the car begins to roll - the engine will auto-start after a slight speed increase.

[3] Normal start mode.

Symbols in the driver display

With 12-inch driver display

- The text **READY** is shown in the tachometer when the function is available.
- A pointer in the tachometer points to **READY** when the function is active and the engine is auto-stopped.
- The text **READY** is greyed out when the function is not available.
- No text is shown when the function is deactivated.

The function is active and the engine is auto-stopped.

With 8-inch driver display

The symbol is shown in the lower edge of the speedometer.

Symbol	Specification
	White symbol: The function is available.
	Beige symbol: The function is active and the engine is auto-stopped.
	The function is not available, the conditions are not fulfilled.
	No symbol is shown when the function is deactivated.

Deactivating the function

In certain situations it may be desirable to temporarily deactivate the function.

Deactivate using the **Start/Stop** function button in the centre display's function view. The indication in the button is switched off when the function is deactivated.

The function is deactivated until

- it is reactivated
- the drive mode is changed to **Comfort** or **Eco**
- the next time the car is started.

Related information

- Start/Stop (p. 366)
- Conditions for the Start/Stop function (p. 368)
- Hill start assist (p. 382)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 382)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 273)
- Activating and starting the Pilot Assist* (p. 287)

Conditions for the Start/Stop function

For the **Start/Stop** function to work requires that a number of conditions are met.

If any condition is not met, this will be indicated in the driver display. See section "Using **Start/Stop** function".

The engine does not auto-stop

The engine does not auto-stop in the following cases:

- The car has not reached approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) after starting.
- After a number of repeated auto stops, speed must again exceed approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) before the next auto stop.
- The driver has unfastened the seatbelt.
- The capacity of the starter battery is below the minimum permissible level.
- The engine is not at normal operating temperature.
- The ambient temperature is under -5 °C or above approx. 30 °C.
- the windscreen's electric heating is activated.
- The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the set values.
- the car is reversed.
- The starter battery's temperature is below or above the permitted limit values.
- The driver makes sweeping steering wheel movements.
- The road is very steep.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The gearbox is not at normal operating temperature.
- When driving at high altitudes when the engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The gear selector is in ± position
- The ABS system has been activated.
- In the event of heavy braking (even without the ABS system having been activated).
- Many starts during a short period of time have activated the starter motor's thermal protection.
- Applies to cars with diesel engines: The exhaust system's particulate filter is full.
- A trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.

The engine does not auto-start

In the following cases the engine does not auto-start after having auto-stopped:

- The driver is unrestrained, the gear selector is in **P** position and the driver's door is open - a normal engine start must take place.

The engine auto-starts without the brake pedal having been released

In the following cases, the engine auto-starts even if the driver does not take his/her foot off the brake pedal:

- High humidity in the passenger compartment forms misting on the windows.
- The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the set values.
- There is a temporarily high current take-off or starter battery capacity drops below the lowest permissible level.
- Repeated pumping of the brake pedal.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The car starts to roll or increase speed slightly if the car auto-stopped without being completely stationary.
- The driver's seatbelt buckle is opened with the gear selector in **D** or **N** position.
- The gear selector is moved from **D** to position **R** or ±.
- The driver's door is opened with the gear selector in **D** position - a "ping" sound and text message indicate that the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

Do not open the bonnet when the engine has auto-stopped. Switch off the engine normally before lifting up the bonnet.

Related information

- Start/Stop (p. 366)
- Using the Start/Stop function (p. 366)
- Support battery (p. 504)

Drive modes*

Selection of drive mode affects the car's driving characteristics in order to enhance the driving experience and facilitate driving in special situations.

Using the drive modes it is possible to quickly have access to the car's numerous functions and settings for different driving needs. The following systems are adapted to obtain the best possible driving characteristics in each respective drive mode:

- Steering
- Engine/gearbox/all-wheel drive
- Brakes
- Air suspension and shock absorption
- Driver display
- Start/Stop function
- Climate settings

Select the drive mode that best suits the current driving conditions. Remember that not all drive modes can be selected in all situations.

Selecting drive mode

1. Press the drive mode control **DRIVE MODE**.
   > A pop-up menu is opened in the centre display.
2. Roll the wheel upward or downward until the desired drive mode is highlighted.
3. Press the drive mode control or tap directly on the touch screen to confirm the selection.
   > The selected drive mode is indicated in the driver display.

A message is shown when a drive mode is unselectable, for example:

- **Cannot be selected because gear is in manual**
- **Cannot be selected due to low battery**
- **Cannot be selected due to low temperature**

- **Cannot be selected due to limitations**
- **Cannot be selected because speed is too high**.

Selectable drive modes

COMFORT

This is the car's normal mode.

When the car starts, it is in the **Comfort** mode and the **Start/Stop** function is activated. These settings mean that the car feels comfortable, the steering is light, the shock absorption is soft and body's movement is smooth.

This drive mode is the certification mode for carbon dioxide emissions.

ECO

Adapt the car for more energy-efficient and environmentally-conscious driving with the **Eco** mode.

The drive mode means e.g. that the **Start/Stop** function is activated, the ground clearance is lower to reduce wind resistance and the output of certain climate settings is reduced.

The driver display has an **Eco** gauge that facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

More information on this drive mode is found in the section "Drive mode ECO".

OFF ROAD

Maximise the car's traction when driving in difficult terrain and on poor roads.

The drive mode provides high ground clearance, steering is light, all-wheel drive and the function for low speed control with hill descent control (Hill Descent Control) are activated. The **Start/Stop** function is deactivated.

The drive mode can only be activated at low speeds and the speedometer shows the range for speed limitation. If this speed is exceeded, **Off Road** mode is suspended and another drive mode is activated.

The driver display is supplemented with a compass and altimeter.

NOTE

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

NOTE

If the car is switched off in OFF ROAD mode, and therefore has high ground clearance, the car is lowered next time it is started.

IMPORTANT

The OFF ROAD drive mode must not be used while driving with a trailer without trailer connector. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the air bellows.

DYNAMIC

Dynamic mode makes the car feel sportier for more active driving.

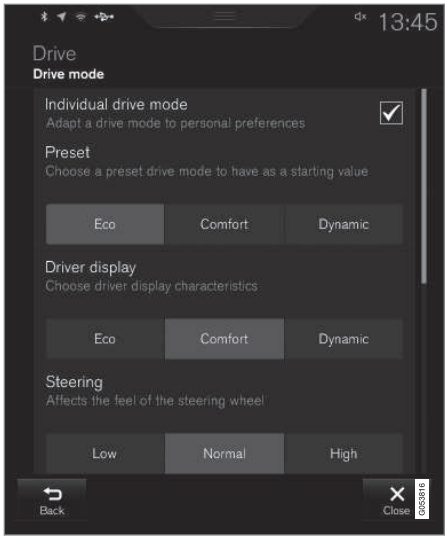
Steering response is faster, shock absorption is harder and a low ground clearance means that the body follows the roadway in order to reduce roll during cornering. The **Start/Stop** function is switched off.

INDIVIDUAL

Adapting a drive mode according to individual preferences.

Select a drive mode to start from, and then adjust the settings according to the desired driving characteristics.

An individual drive mode is only available if it is first activated in the centre display.



Settings view[4] for individual drive mode.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Individual Drive Mode** and select **Individual Drive Mode**.
3. Select a drive mode to start from: **Eco**, **Comfort** or **Dynamic**.

   Possible adjustments apply to settings for

   - **Driver Display**
   - **Steering force**
   - **Powertrain Characteristics**
   - **Brake Characteristics**
   - **Suspension Control**.

Related information

- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 258)
- Level control* (p. 374)
- Start/Stop (p. 366)
- Drive mode ECO (p. 372)
- All-wheel drive* (p. 375)
- Hill descent control* (p. 384)

4 The figure is schematic, the layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

Drive mode ECO

Driving mode ECO mode optimises the car's driving characteristics for more fuel efficient and environmentally-conscious driving.

Use this drive mode to save fuel and the environment.

The following properties are adapted for **Eco** driving:

- Gearbox gearshift points.
- Engine management and response from the accelerator pedal.
- The Eco Coast freewheel function is activated and engine braking is deactivated when the accelerator pedal is released at speeds between 65 and 140 km/h (40 and 87 mph).
- Some of the climate control system's settings work at reduced power or are deactivated.
- The level control function* provides a low ground clearance in order to reduce wind resistance.
- The driver display shows information in an **Eco** gauge which facilitates environmentally-conscious and fuel-efficient driving.

NOTE

When the ECO function is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only restored by deactivating the ECO function.

Selecting ECO mode

The **Eco** mode is deactivated when the engine is switched off, and it must therefore be activated after each time the engine is started. The driver display shows **ECO** when the function is activated.

With drive mode control*

1. Press the drive mode control **DRIVE MODE**.
   > A pop-up menu is opened in the centre display.
2. Roll the wheel upward or downward until the desired drive mode is highlighted.
3. Press the drive mode control or tap directly on the touch screen to confirm the selection.

In the centre display's function view

Cars without drive mode control have a function button for **Driving mode ECO** in the centre display's function view.

- Press the button in order to activate the function. An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Freewheel function Eco Coast

The freewheel function Eco Coast means in practice that engine braking ceases, meaning in turn that the car's kinetic energy is used to freewheel for longer distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal the gearbox is automatically disengaged from the engine whose speed is reduced to idling speed with reduced consumption.

The function is best used where it is possible to freewheel a long way, e.g. roads with a slight downhill gradient or when there is a predictable speed reduction to freewheel into a zone with a lower speed limit.

Activating the freewheel function

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released, in combination with the following parameters:

- **Driving mode ECO** is activated.
- The gear selector is in **D** position.
- Speed within the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The road's downhill gradient is not steeper than approx. 6%.

The driver display shows **COASTING** when the freewheel function is being used.

Limitations

The freewheel function is not available if:

- Engine and/or gearbox are not at normal operating temperature.
- The cruise control is activated.
- The gear selector is moved from the **D** position and the manual position.
- The speed is outside the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The road's downhill gradient is steeper than approx. 6%.
- Manual gear changing is performed with the steering wheel paddles*.

Deactivating and switching off the freewheel function

In certain situations it may be desirable to deactivate or switch off the function in order to use engine braking. Examples of such situations may be on steep downhill gradients or before an imminent overtaking manoeuvre - in order to be able to do it in the safest way possible.

Deactivate the freewheel function as follows:

- Actuate the accelerator or brake pedal.
- Move the gear selector to manual position.
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles*.

Switch off the freewheel function as follows:

- Change drive mode*, or switch off the **Driving mode ECO** in the function view.

Even without the freewheel function, it is possible to freewheel for short distances. This, in turn, reduces consumption. However, for the best fuel economy it is better to have the freewheel function activated and be able to freewheel for longer distances.

ECO gauge in the driver display

The **Eco** gauge indicates how fuel-efficient the driving is:

- With fuel-efficient driving, the gauge shows a low value with the pointer in the green zone.
- With non-fuel-efficient driving, e.g. during heavy braking or heavy acceleration, the gauge shows a high value.

The **Eco** gauge also has an indicator to show how a reference driver would drive the car under the same driving conditions. This is indicated with a "diamond" on the gauge.

Eco gauge in the 12-inch driver display.

Eco gauge in the 8-inch driver display.

Related information

- Driving economically (p. 393)
- Start/Stop (p. 366)
- Drive modes* (p. 369)

Level control*

Level control regulates the car's suspension and shock absorption characteristics automatically to ensure the best comfort and functionality while driving. It is also possible to adjust the level manually in order to facilitate loading or entry and exit.

Air suspension and shock absorption

The system is adapted according to the selected drive mode and according to the speed of the car. Using the air suspension, the car's ground clearance is adjusted to a lower level at higher speeds, which reduces wind resistance and increases stability. Shock absorption is normally set for the best possible comfort and is regulated continuously depending on the road surface, the car's acceleration, braking and cornering.

The driver display indicates when level control is in progress.

The level cannot be regulated when the bonnet or any side door is open.

Settings for level control

Entry assistance

The car can be lowered to facilitate entry and exit.

Activating entry assistance via the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Suspension** .
3. Select **Easy Entry/Exit Control**.
   > When the car is parked with the engine turned off, the car is lowered (level control stops if any door is opened). When the car starts and begins to roll, the car will raise to the height that applies for the selected drive mode.

Deactivation of air suspension and level control

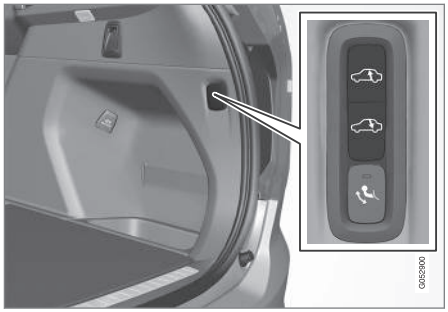
In certain cases, the function must be deactivated, e.g. before the car is raised with a jack. The difference in level created by raising the car with a jack can otherwise cause problems for the air suspension.

Deactivating the function via the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Suspension** .
3. Select **Deactivate Suspension & Leveling Control**.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Loading mode



Use the buttons in the cargo area to regulate the height of the car's rear section and facilitate loading/unloading or when connecting/disconnecting a trailer. See the section "Loading".

During parking

During parking, make sure you allow adequate space above and below the car since the car's ground clearance may vary e.g. depending on the outside temperature, how the car is loaded, the use of loading mode or the drive mode that is selected after starting.

The level may also be adjusted a period after the car is parked. This is to compensate for any height changes that may occur due to temperature changes in the air springs when the car cools down.

During transport

During transport of the car on a ferry, train or truck, the car must be lashed around the tyres and not around other parts of the chassis. Changes in the air suspension may occur during transport, which could affect the lashing negatively.

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 369)
- Loading (p. 212)

All-wheel drive*

All-wheel drive, AWD (All Wheel Drive), means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time, which improves traction.

To achieve the best possible traction and prevent wheel spin the motive force is distributed automatically to the wheels with the best grip. All-wheel drive also has a stabilising effect at higher speeds. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels.

All-wheel drive characteristics vary depending on the selected drive mode*.

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 369)
- Low speed control* (p. 383)

Brake functions

The car's brakes are used to reduce the speed or prevent the car from rolling.

Besides the foot brake and parking brake, the car is equipped with several automatic brake assist functions. These can assist the driver by not needing to keep his/her foot on the brake pedal when stationary at a traffic light, when starting on an uphill gradient or when driving on a downhill gradient.

Depending on the car's equipment, the following auto braking functions are available:

- Automatic braking when stationary
- Hill start assist (Hill Start Assist)
- Auto braking after a collision
- Hill descent control (Hill Descent Control)*

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 376)
- Parking brake (p. 379)
- Hill descent control* (p. 384)
- Hill start assist (p. 382)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 382)
- Auto braking after a collision (p. 378)

Foot brake

The foot brake is used to reduce the car's speed while driving.

Foot brake system

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If a brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal will engage deeper. Higher pressure on the pedal will therefore be needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.

⚠ WARNING

The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

If the foot brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal will feel stiff and a higher pedal pressure must be used to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes can be relieved by using engine braking in manual gearshift mode. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up. Use drive mode **Off Road*** for increased engine braking while driving on steep downhill gradients at low speeds.

Anti-lock braking system

The car has anti-lock brakes, Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), which prevent the wheels from locking while braking and allows maintained steering control. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the engine has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the system may be made at low speed. The test may be experienced as pulses in the brake pedal.

Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes. This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

Braking on salted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings. This may extend braking distance. You should there-

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

fore maintain an extra large safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

Maintenance

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

New and replaced brake linings and brake discs do not provide optimal braking effect until they have been "worn in" a few hundred kilometres. Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

IMPORTANT

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started: Automatic function check. Constant glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The car's normal brake system is still working, but without the ABS function.

WARNING

If both the warning lamps for brake fault and ABS fault illuminate at the same time, a fault has occurred in the brake system.

- If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

Related information

- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Brake assistance (p. 378)
- Brake lights (p. 135)
- Emergency brake lights (p. 378)

Emergency brake lights

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking. The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

The emergency brake lights are activated during heavy braking or if the ABS system is activated at high speeds. After emergency braking to a low speed, the brake lights return from flashing to the normal constant glow. The car's hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the hazard warning flashers.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 376)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 136)
- Brake lights (p. 135)

Brake assistance

The brake assist system, BAS (Brake Assist System), helps to increase brake force during braking, thereby shortening the braking distance.

The system detects the way in which the driver brakes and increases brake force where necessary. The brake force can be boosted up to the level when the ABS system is engaged. The function is suspended when the pressure on the brake pedal decreases.

NOTE

When BAS is activated the brake pedal lowers slightly more than usual, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary.

When the brake pedal is released, all braking ceases.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 376)

Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

Related information

- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 55)
- Airbags (p. 58)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 319)

Parking brake

The parking brake prevents the car from rolling away from stationary by means of mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.

The control for the parking brake is located in the tunnel console between the seats.

A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrically-operated parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is applied then it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is applied when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

Related information

- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Using the parking brake (p. 379)
- In the event of a fault in the parking brake (p. 381)

Using the parking brake

Use the parking brake to prevent the car from rolling from stationary.

Applying the parking brake

1. Pull the control upward.
   > The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the car is stationary.

Symbol in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the parking brake is applied. If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. Read the message on the driver display.

Automatic application

The parking brake is applied automatically:

- if the Auto Hold function (automatic braking when stationary) is activated and the car has been stationary approx. 5 minutes.
- when gear position **P** is selected on a steep hill.
- when the engine is switched off. (This function is optional, see the heading "Settings for parking brake" below.)

Emergency brake

In an emergency, the parking brake can be applied when the vehicle is in motion by pulling and holding up the control. Braking stops when the control is released.

NOTE

An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing manually

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Press the control down.
   > The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Releasing automatically

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Start the engine.
3. Select gear position **D** or **R** and depress the accelerator pedal.
   > The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Parking on a hill

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear, or in **P** if it has automatic transmission, is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by pulling the control upwards while driving the car away. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

Settings for parking brake

It is possible to deactivate/reactivate the function for automatic application via the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Electric Parking Brake** and deselect/select the function **Auto Activate Parking Brake**.

Related information
- Parking brake (p. 379)
- In the event of a fault in the parking brake (p. 381)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 382)

In the event of a fault in the parking brake

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop if it is not possible to release or apply the parking brake after several attempts.

An acoustic warning signal sounds when driving with the parking brake applied.

If the car must be parked before a possible fault is rectified, then the wheels must be turned as for parking on a hill and the gear selector must be in position **P**.

Low battery voltage
If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can neither be released nor applied. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

Replacing the brake linings
The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electrically-operated parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. See the message in the driver display.
	Fault in brake system. See the message in the driver display.
	Information message in driver display.

Message examples:

- **Parking brake Service required**
- **Parking brake System overheated**
- **Parking brake Temporarily unavailable**

Related information
- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Using the parking brake (p. 379)
- Parking brake (p. 379)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 359)

Hill start assist

Hill start assist, Hill Start Assist (HSA), prevents the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient. When reversing uphill, it prevents the car from rolling forwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver accelerates.

Hill start assist is available even if the function for automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) is deactivated.

Related information

- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 382)

Automatic braking when stationary

Automatic braking when stationary (Auto Hold) means that the driver can release the brake pedal while maintaining braking effect when the car has stopped at traffic lights or a junction.

When the car has stopped, the brakes are activated automatically. The function can use either foot brake or parking brake to hold the car stationary and it works on all gradients. When the accelerator pedal is depressed again, the brakes are released.

When braking to a stop on a downhill or uphill gradient - depress the brake pedal a bit harder before releasing to ensure that the car does not roll at all.

If the driver switches off the engine when the car is stationary, the parking brake is applied.

Switch for automatic brake

The switch illuminates when the function is activated.

Activate or deactivate Auto Hold with the switch in the tunnel console. The function remains deactivated until it is reactivated.

When the function is deactivated, hill start assist (HSA) remains active to prevent the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the foot brake to keep the car stationary.
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the parking brake to keep the car stationary.

Related information
- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Hill start assist (p. 382)

Low speed control*

The low speed control function Low Speed Control (LSC) facilitates off-road driving and driving on slippery surfaces, such as with a caravan on grass or a boat trailer on a launch ramp.

The function is adapted for off-road driving and towing a trailer at low speeds.

With low-speed control, low gears and all-wheel drive are prioritised, which help to avoid wheel-spin and provides better traction on all wheels. The accelerator is more dynamic in order to make it easier to regulate the speed at low speeds.

The function is activated together with Hill Descent Control (HDC) which provides increased engine braking to be able to maintain a low and even speed when driving on a steep downhill gradient. Which system is active depends on the road surface, gradient of the road and car speed.

Activating low speed control, LSC

The function is activated in different ways depending on the car's equipment.

With drive mode control*

- Select the **Off Road** drive mode in order to activate the function.
- Select a different drive mode in order to deactivate.

In the centre display's function view

Cars without drive mode control have a function button for low speed control with **Hill Descent Control** in the centre display's function view.

- Press the button in order to activate the function. An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

NOTE

When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

NOTE

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

NOTE

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

Related information

- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Hill descent control* (p. 384)
- Drive modes* (p. 369)

Hill descent control*

Hill descent control, Hill Descent Control (HDC), is a low speed function with enhanced engine braking. The function makes it possible to increase or reduce vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients using only the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake.

Hill descent control is adapted for off-road driving at low speeds and facilitates driving on steep downhill gradients with difficult surfaces. The driver does not need to use the brake pedal, but can instead focus on steering.

WARNING

HDC does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Function

Hill descent control allows the car to roll at inching speed both forward and backward with enhanced engine braking. The speed can be increased by using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is then released the car slows back down to crawling speed, regardless of the gradient of the hill and without the need for the foot brake to be used. The brake lights are switched on when the function is operating.

The driver can brake and reduce crawling speed, or stop the car at any time by using the foot brake.

This function is activated by Low Speed Control (LSC), which makes it easier to drive on slippery surfaces and enables a low and even speed. Which system is active depends on the road surface, gradient of the road and car speed.

Activating hill descent control, HDC

Hill descent control only works at low speeds.

The function is activated in different ways depending on the car's equipment.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

With drive mode control*

- Select the **Off Road** drive mode in order to activate the function.
- Select a different drive mode in order to deactivate. If the drive mode is changed while driving on a steep downhill gradient, the braking effect will gradually decrease.

In the centre display's function view

Cars without drive mode control have a function button for low speed control with **Hill Descent Control** in the centre display's function view.

- Press the button in order to activate the function. An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

NOTE

When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

NOTE

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

NOTE

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

Related information

- Brake functions (p. 376)
- Low speed control* (p. 383)
- Drive modes* (p. 369)

Driving in water

Driving in water means that the car is driven through deep water on a water-covered roadway. Driving in water must be carried out with great caution.

The car can be driven through water at a maximum depth of 45 cm at no more than walking speed. Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.

During driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the car. When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

- If necessary, clean the contacts for the electric heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.
- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.

▸▸

IMPORTANT

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In depths greater than 45 cm, water could enter the transmission. This reduces the lubricating ability of the oils and shortens the service life of these systems.

Damage to any component, engine, transmission, turbocharger, differential or its internal components caused by flooding, hydrostatic locking or oil shortage, is not covered by the warranty.

In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

Related information

- Towing (p. 402)
- Recovering the car (p. 403)

Overheating in the engine and drive system

Under special conditions, for example hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat - in particular with a heavy load.

- In the event of overheating, the engine's power may be limited temporarily.
- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high then a warning symbol is illuminated and the driver display shows the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes and cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is shown, stop the car and switch off the engine.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox, an alternative gear shift program will be selected. In addition, a built-in protection function is activated that, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol and the driver display shows the message **Transmission warm Reduce speed to lower temperature** or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling**. Follow the recommendation given, reduce speed or stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes to enable the gearbox to cool down.
- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

NOTE

It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	High engine temperature. Follow the recommendation given.
	Low level, coolant. Follow the recommendation given.
	Gearbox hot/overheated/cooled. Follow the recommendation given.

Related information
- Driving with a trailer under special conditions (p. 399)
- Preparations for a long trip (p. 387)

Overloading the starter battery

The electrical functions in the car load the starter battery to varying degrees. Avoid using the ignition position **II** when the engine is switched off. Instead, use ignition position **I** - which uses less power.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the engine is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system (high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low, the message **Low battery charge Will soon enter power save mode** is shown in the driver display. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

– In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the engine and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

Related information
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Starter battery (p. 501)

Preparations for a long trip

Prior to a long trip it is advisable to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully.

Check that:

- the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- all bulbs are working
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries
- the wiper blades are operable.

Related information
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 543)
- Checking the tyre pressures. (p. 452)
- Warning triangle (p. 473)

Preparations for winter road conditions

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost erosion down to approximately –35 °C. To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold. Read more about suitable oils in the section "Adverse driving conditions for engine oil".

IMPORTANT

Low viscosity oil must not be used for hard driving or in hot weather.

- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

NOTE

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Slippery driving conditions

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

Related information

- Winter wheels (p. 472)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 500)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 539)

Opening/closing the fuel filler flap and refuelling

The fuel tank is fitted with a coverless fuel filler system.

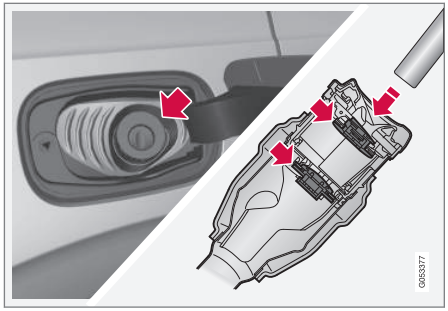
Opening/closing the fuel filler flap

The car must be unlocked for the fuel filler flap to be opened.

In the driver display, the arrow next to the tank symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel filler flap is located.

1. Open the fuel filler flap with a gentle press on the rear of the flap.
2. After refuelling is finished - close the flap with a gentle press.

Refuelling with fuel pump



Refuelling is carried out as follows.

1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Insert the pump nozzle in the fuel filler opening. Take care to insert the nozzle properly into the filler pipe. The filler pipe consists of two opening flaps. The nozzle must be pushed past both flaps before refuelling is started.
3. Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out the first time.
   > The tank is full.

NOTE

Excess fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.

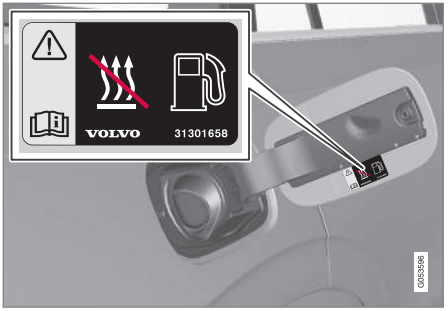
Filling with a fuel can[5]

When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Insert the funnel in the fuel filler opening. Make sure you insert the funnel fully into the fuel filler pipe so that it passes the two flaps in the pipe.

Label

Never use the fuel-driven heater when the car is in a filling station area.



Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Related information

- Handling of fuel (p. 390)

[5] Only applies to cars with diesel engine.

Handling of fuel

Do not use fuel with a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo, as this will negatively affect engine power and fuel consumption.

WARNING

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

WARNING

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

IMPORTANT

Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.

Related information

- Petrol (p. 390)
- Diesel (p. 391)
- Opening/closing the fuel filler flap and refuelling (p. 388)
- Driving economically (p. 393)

Petrol

Petrol is a form of motor fuel.

Only use petrol from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. The petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard.

- 95 RON can be used for normal driving.
- 98 RON is recommended for optimum performance and minimum fuel consumption.

When driving in temperatures above +38 °C, fuel with the highest possible octane rating is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

IMPORTANT

- Use only unleaded petrol to avoid damaging the catalytic converter.
- Fuel containing metallic additives must not be used.
- Do not use any additives which have not been recommended by Volvo.

Alcohols-ethanol

IMPORTANT

- Fuel that contains up to 10 percent by volume ethanol is permitted.
- EN 228 E10 petrol (max 10 percent by volume ethanol) is approved for use.
- Ethanol higher than E10 (max 10 percent by volume ethanol) is not permitted. T.ex. E85 is not permitted.

Related information

- Handling of fuel (p. 390)
- Opening/closing the fuel filler flap and refuelling (p. 388)

Diesel

Diesel is a form of motor fuel.

Only use diesel fuel from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. Diesel fuel must fulfil the EN 590, SS 155435 or JIS K 2204 standard. Diesel engines are sensitive to contaminants in the fuel, such as excessively high volumes of sulphur particles for example.

At low temperatures (lower than 0 °C) a paraffin precipitate may form in the diesel fuel, which may lead to ignition problems. The fuel qualities that are sold must be adapted for season and climate zone, but for extreme weather conditions, old fuel or moving between climate zones, paraffin precipitate may occur.

The risk of condensation in the fuel tank is reduced if the tank is kept well filled.

When refuelling, check that the area around the fuel filler pipe is clean. Avoid spilling fuel onto the paintwork. Wash off any spillage with detergent and water.

IMPORTANT

Diesel fuel must:

- Meet the standards EN 590, SS 155435 or JIS K 2204
- have a sulphur content not exceeding 10 mg/kg
- have a maximum of 7 vol % FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

IMPORTANT

Diesel type fuels that must not be used:

- Special additives
- Marine diesel fuel
- Heating oil
- FAME[6] (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) and vegetable oil.

These fuels do not fulfil the requirements in accordance with Volvo recommendations and generate increased wear and engine damage that is not covered by the Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Empty tank and diesel engine (p. 392)
- Diesel particulate filter (p. 392)

6 Diesel fuel may contain a maximum of 7% by volume of FAME, but further amounts must not be added.

Empty tank and diesel engine

Once the engine has stopped due to fuel starvation, the fuel system needs a few moments to carry out a check.

Before starting the engine after the fuel tank has been filled with diesel - proceed as follows:

1. The remote control key must be inside the car.
2. Set the car in ignition position **II** - turn the ignition dial to **START** without depressing the brake pedal and hold the knob in the **START** position for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the knob, which automatically returns to its starting position.
3. Wait approx. one minute.
4. To start the engine: Depress the brake pedal and turn the ignition dial to **START** again.

NOTE

Before filling with fuel in the event of fuel shortage:

- Stop the car on as flat/level ground as possible - if the car is tilting there is a risk of air pockets in the fuel supply.

Points to remember when filling with a fuel can

When filling diesel with a fuel can, use the funnel located under the floor hatch in the cargo area. Make sure you insert the funnel's pipe firmly into the filler pipe. The filler pipe has an openable cover and the funnel's pipe must be slid past the cover before filling can begin.

Related information

- Diesel (p. 391)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 543)

Diesel particulate filter

Diesel-driven cars are equipped with a particulate filter, which results in more efficient emission control.

The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving. So-called "regeneration" is started in order to burn away the particles and empty the filter. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature.

Regeneration of the particulate filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. It may take a little longer at a low average speed. Fuel consumption may increase slightly during regeneration.

Regeneration in cold weather

If the car is frequently driven short distances in cold weather then the engine does not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particulate filter does not take place and the filter is not emptied.

When the filter has become approx. 80% full of particles, a yellow warning triangle illuminates, and the message **Particulate filter full See Owner's manual** is shown in the driver display.

Start regeneration of the filter by driving the car until the engine reaches normal operating temperature, preferably on a main road or motorway.

The car should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes more.

NOTE

The following may arise during regeneration:

- a smaller reduction of engine power may be noticed temporarily
- fuel consumption may increase temporarily
- a smell of burning may arise.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

Use the parking heater* in cold weather - the engine then reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.

IMPORTANT

If the filter is completely filled with particles, it may be difficult to start the engine and the filter is non-functional. Then there is a risk that the filter will need to be replaced.

Related information

- Diesel (p. 391)

Driving economically

Drive economically and eco-consciously by driving smoothly, thinking ahead, and adjusting your driving style and speed to the prevailing conditions.

- For lowest fuel consumption, activate drive mode ECO.
- Use the Eco Coast[7] freewheel function - engine braking will cease and the car's kinetic energy can be used to freewheel for longer distances.
- Drive in the highest gear[8] possible, adapted to the current traffic situation and road - lower engine speeds result in lower fuel consumption. Use the gear shift indicator.
- Drive at a steady speed and keep a good distance to other vehicles and objects to minimise braking.
- High speed results in increased fuel consumption - the wind resistance increases with speed.
- Do not run the engine to operating temperature at idling speed, but rather drive with a normal load right after starting - a cold engine consumes more fuel than a warm one.
- Drive with the correct air pressure in the tyres and check this regularly - select ECO tyre pressure for best results.
- Choice of tyres can affect fuel consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from a dealer.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.
- Use engine braking to slow down, when it can take place without risk to other road users.
- A roof load and ski box increase air resistance, leading to higher consumption - remove the load carriers when not in use.
- Avoid driving with open windows.

WARNING

Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

Related information

- Drive mode ECO (p. 372)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 546)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 543)
- Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure (p. 22)

7 See the section "Drive mode ECO".
8 Applies to driving in manual gearshift mode.

Towing bracket*

The car can be equipped with a towing bracket that makes it possible to tow e.g. a trailer after the car.

There are two variants of towing equipment - fixed and extendable/retractable towbar.

For information on towing capacity and towball load, see the section "Towing capacity and towball load".

IMPORTANT

When the engine is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically so as not to drain the starter battery.

IMPORTANT

The towball needs regular cleaning and greasing.

NOTE

When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

NOTE

If the car is equipped with a towing bracket, there is no rear mounting for a towing eye.

Increased towing capacity*

Increased towing capacity requires a special towing bracket that can handle a larger load. Check with your nearest Volvo dealer whether the car's towbar fulfils the requirement of the higher towing capacity. Otherwise, the car's towing bracket must be changed to be able to use an increased load capacity.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 397)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 534)
- Trailer Stability Assist* (p. 400)
- Towing bracket specifications* (p. 396)
- Extendable/retractable towing brackets* (p. 394)

Extendable/retractable towing brackets*

The extendable/retractable towing hitch is always easily accessible and simple to extend or retract as needed. In the retracted position, the towing hitch is completely concealed.

WARNING

Follow the instructions for retracting and extending the towing bracket carefully.

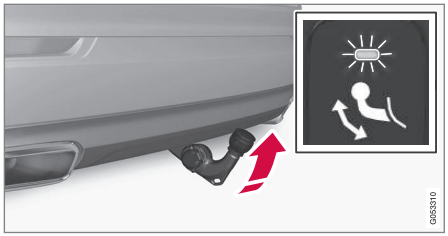
Extending the towing hitch

WARNING

Avoid standing close to the bumper in the centre behind the car when extending the towing hitch.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

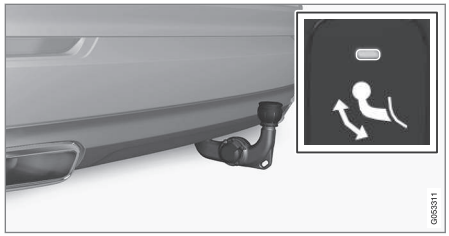
1. Open the tailgate. A button for extending/retracting the towbar is located on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area - an indicator lamp in the button must illuminate with a constant orange glow for the extension function to be active.



2. Press and release the button - extension might not start if the button is pressed for too long.
   > The towbar extends out and down in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp flashes orange.

WARNING

Do not press the extend/retract button if a trailer is attached to the towing bracket.



3. Move the towbar to its end position, where it is secured and locked in place - the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant orange glow.
   > The towbar is ready for use.

WARNING

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

NOTE

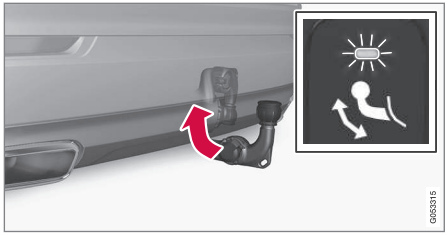
Power save mode activates after a while and the indicator lamp goes out. The system is reactivated by closing and opening the tailgate. This applies when retracting or extending the towing bracket.

Retracting the towing hitch

IMPORTANT

Make sure that there is no plug or adapter in the electrical socket when retracting the towing bracket.

1. Open the tailgate. Press and release the button on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area - retraction might not start if the button is pressed for too long.
   > The towing bracket automatically lowers in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp in the button flashes orange.



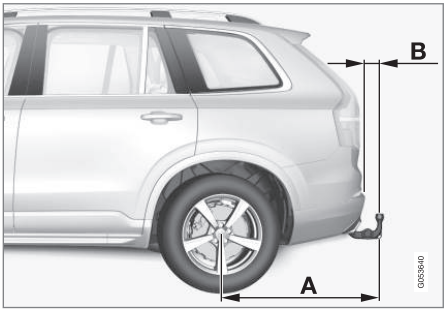
2. Lock the towing bracket by moving it back to its retracted position, where it is locked.
   > The indicator lamp will now illuminate with a constant glow if the towing bracket is correctly retracted.

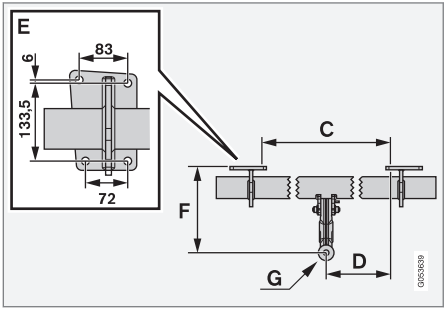
Related information

- Towing bracket* (p. 394)
- Towing bracket specifications* (p. 396)

Towing bracket specifications*

Dimensions and mounting points for the towing bracket.





* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Dimensions, mounting points (mm)	
A	1476
B	86
C	875
D	437,5
E	See the image above
F	273
G	Ball centre

Related information

- Towing bracket* (p. 394)

Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towing bracket, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towing bracket must be of an approved type.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towing bracket complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load. For more information on tyre pressure, see the section "Approved tyre pressures".
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km.
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear and adjust your speed.
- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- The maximum trailer weights given only apply to altitudes up to 1000 metres above sea level. At higher altitudes, engine power and thus the car's climbing ability is decreased due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer weight must therefore be reduced. The weight of the car and trailer must be decreased by 10 % for each additional 1000 m (or part thereof).
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel quality are factors that could affect the car's fuel consumption.

Trailer connector

An adapter is required if the car's towing bracket has a 13 pin connector and the trailer has a 7 pin connector. Use an adapter approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

IMPORTANT

When the engine is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically so as not to drain the starter battery.

Trailer weights

Information about Volvo's permitted trailer weights is available in the article "Towing capacity and towball load".

WARNING

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

NOTE

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars may be certified for higher or lower towing weights than the car can actually tow.

Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer

If one or more of the trailer lamps is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message.

Symbol	Message
	• **Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction** • **Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction**
	• **Trailer brake light Malfunction**

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to check that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

The engine must be switched off to perform the check.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towing bracket, the **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** message is shown in the driver display.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.
   > The lamp check starts.
3. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.
   > All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.
4. Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.
5. After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.
   > The check is complete.

Switching off automatic checking

The automatic checking function can be switched off in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

Manual checking

If the automatic checking is switched off then it is possible to start the check manually.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.
   > The lamp check starts. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Level control*

The rear shock absorbers maintain a constant height irrespective of the car's load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer under special conditions (p. 399)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 534)
- Trailer Stability Assist* (p. 400)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 546)
- Towing bracket* (p. 394)

Driving with a trailer under special conditions

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

The automatic gearbox selects the optimum gear related to load and engine speed.

In the event of overheating, a warning symbol illuminates in the driver display together with a message, see section "Overheating in the engine and drive system".

Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic gearbox in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine speed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Select gear position **P**.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Select gear position **D**.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving off.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 397)
- Overheating in the engine and drive system (p. 386)
- Low speed control* (p. 383)
- Using the parking brake (p. 379)

Trailer Stability Assist*

The function of the trailer stability assist Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is to stabilise cars with attached trailers in situations where they begin snaking. The function is included in the stability system ESC[9].

Reasons for snaking

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. But, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example, end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

Trailer Stability Assist function

The trailer stability assist function continually monitors car movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time that trailer stability assist comes into action, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

NOTE

The stability function is deactivated if the driver selects Sport mode by deactivating **ESC** via the menu system in the centre display.

The trailer stability assist may fail to engage if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver that is causing the snaking.

When trailer stability assist is operating, the **ESC** symbol flashes in the driver display.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 397)
- Driving with a trailer under special conditions (p. 399)
- Electronic stability control (p. 258)

9 Electronic Stability Control (Electronic stability control)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

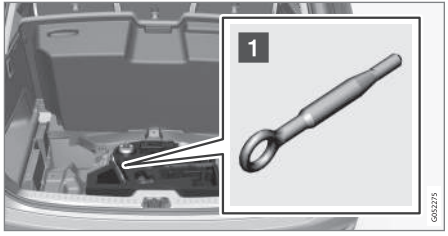
Towing eye

Use the towing eye for towing. The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

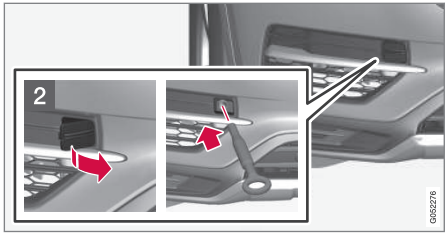
NOTE

If the car is equipped with a towing bracket, there is no rear mounting for a towing eye.

Fitting the towing eye

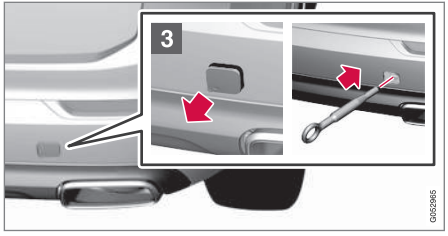


1 Take out the towing eye from the foam block under the floor hatch in the cargo area.



2 Front: Remove the cover - use the marking along one of its short sides.

> The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.



3 Rear: Remove the cover - press on the marking with a finger and, at the same time, fold out the opposite side/corner using a coin or similar.

> The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.

4. Screw the towing eye right in until it stops. Tighten the towing eye firmly e.g. using the wheel wrench.

After use, unscrew the towing eye and return it to its place.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

IMPORTANT

It is important that the towing eye is firmly screwed into place - right in until it stops.

The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible.

If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye.

Raise the car using the recovery vehicle's lifting device if necessary.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

Related information

- Towing (p. 402)
- Recovering the car (p. 403)

Towing

During towing, one vehicle pulls another vehicle along behind it by means of a towline.

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before the towing begins.

Preparations and towing

1. Activate the car's hazard warning flashers.
2. Secure the towline in the towing eye.
3. Deactivate the steering lock by unlocking the car.

NOTE

In ignition position **II** the steering lock is deactivated if the car has been unlocked. See section “Ignition position” for more information.

4. Set the car in ignition position **II** by turning the ignition dial to **START** and holding the ignition dial in the **START** position for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the knob, which automatically returns to its starting position.
5. Move the gear selector to position **N** and release the parking brake.
6. The towing vehicle can now start towing.
7. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.
8. Be prepared to brake to stop.

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h (50 mph) or for distances in excess of 80 km.

WARNING

- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- Ignition position **II** must be active - in ignition position **I** all airbags are deactivated.
- Always keep the remote control key in the car when it is being towed.

WARNING

The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

Jump starting

Do not tow the car to jump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the starter battery is discharged and the engine does not start.

IMPORTANT

The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

Related information

- Warning triangle (p. 473)
- Towing eye (p. 401)
- Recovering the car (p. 403)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 359)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Recovering the car

For recovery, the car is taken away with the help of another vehicle.

Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye can be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform.

Applies to cars with level control*: If the car is equipped with air suspension , this must be disabled before the car is raised. Deactivating the function via the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Suspension** .
3. Select **Deactivate Suspension & Leveling Control**.

The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible to pull it up onto a flatbed platform. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up. The car should then be lifted using the recovery vehicle's lifting device.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

- An all-wheel drive car (AWD) with raised front suspension must not be towed at speeds above 70 km/h (40 mph). It should not be towed further than 50 km.

NOTE

If the car is equipped with a towing bracket, there is no rear mounting for a towing eye.

Related information

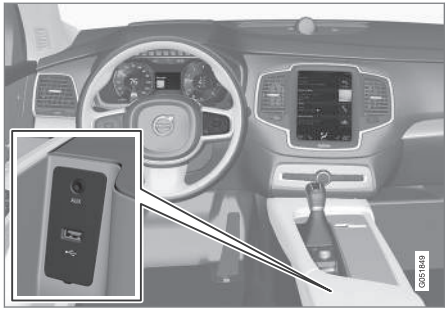
- Towing (p. 402)
- Towing eye (p. 401)

AUDIO AND MEDIA

Audio and media

The audio and media system consists of media player, radio and Bluetooth phone connection. With an online car it is also possible to listen to services via apps.

Functions can be controlled by voice command or via the steering wheel keypad and the centre display.



Overview of audio and media.

System updating

The audio and media system is continuously improved. Fetch updates for optimal performance, see the "System updates" section and support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Media player (p. 413)
- Radio (p. 407)
- Phone (p. 424)
- Online car (p. 430)
- Apps (p. 435)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)
- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- System updates (p. 481)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 438)

Audio settings

The audio system is preset for optimal sound reproduction, but can be adapted according to needs.

The volume is normally adjusted with the volume control below the centre display or with the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

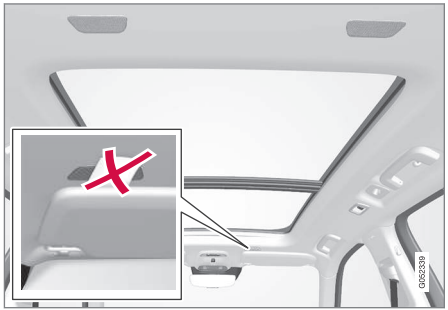
Setting for optimal sound reproduction

The audio system is pre-calibrated for optimum sound reproduction by means of digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account loudspeakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position, etc., for each combination of car model and audio system. There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the setting of the volume control and vehicle speed.

Audio settings are described in the corresponding section in the owner information. To access the settings, open the top view and tap on **Settings ➔ Sound**.

Active noise reduction[1]

The car is equipped with an active noise reduction function that suppresses engine noise in the passenger compartment via the audio system. Microphones in the car's roof detect disruptive noise and the audio system outputs anti-noise in order to dampen the noise.



Microphones in the car's roof.

NOTE

Do not cover the car's microphones; otherwise a rumbling sound from the audio system may be produced.

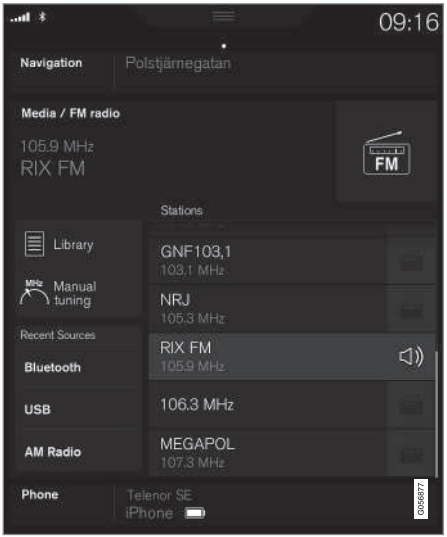
Related information

- Audio settings for media (p. 420)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 106)
- Settings for phone (p. 429)
- Audio and media (p. 406)
- Online car (p. 430)

[1] Applies to certain car models.

Radio

It is possible to listen to the AM and FM bands and to digital radio (DAB)*. When the car is online it is also possible to listen to Internet radio.



The radio can be operated using voice recognition, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

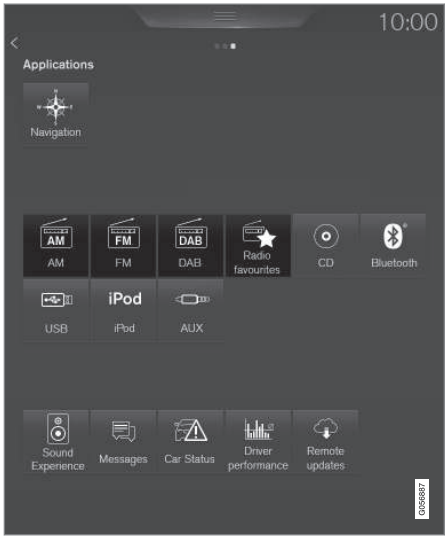
Related information

- Changing and searching radio stations (p. 408)
- Digital radio (p. 411)
- RDS radio (p. 411)
- Online car (p. 430)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Media player (p. 413)

Changing and searching radio stations

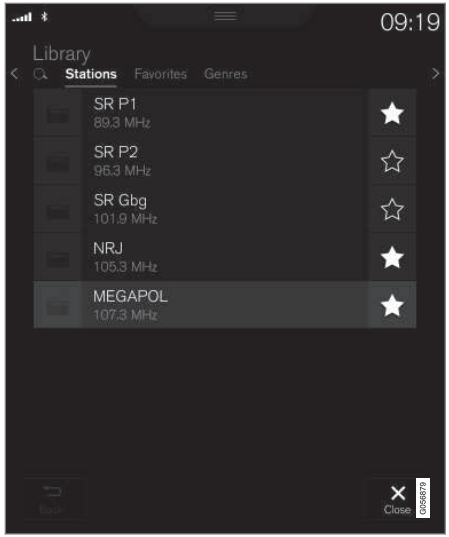
The radio automatically compiles a station list of the radio stations within the area that are transmitting the strongest signals.

Starting the radio



1. Open the app (e.g. **FM**, **Radio favourites**) from the app view.
2. Select station.

Changing lists within the frequency band



1. Press **Library**.
2. Select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites**, **Genres** or **Ensembles**[2].
3. Tap on the desired station from the list.

2 Only applies to digital radio (DAB).

Favourites — only plays back selected favourite channels, see heading “Favourites” below.

Genres — only plays back channels broadcasting the selected genre/programme type, e.g. pop or classical.

Changing stations within the selected list

– Press on **< >** under the centre display or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
  > The highlight moves up or down one place in the selected playlist.

You can also change stations from the centre display.

Favourites

When a favourite is saved from a list, the radio will automatically search for the best frequency. But if a favourite is saved from a manual station search, the radio does not automatically change to a stronger frequency.

To choose among favourites within the frequency band, see the heading “Changing lists within the frequency band” above. To choose from among all favourites, see the heading “Radio Favourites” below.

– Tap on ☆ to add or remove a channel to or from frequency band favourites and Radio Favourites.

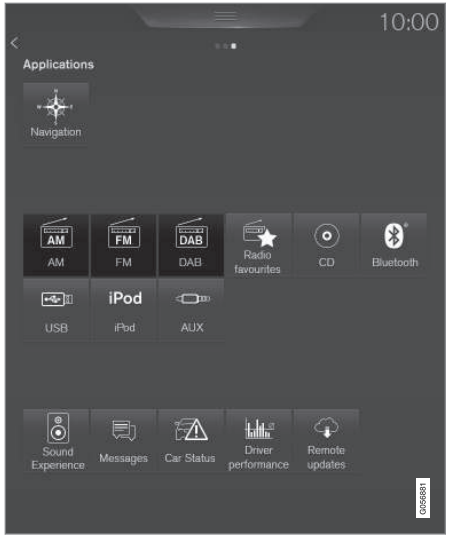
Radio Favourites

Radio Favourites shows saved favourites from all frequency bands.

1. Open the app **Radio favourites** from the app view.
2. Tap on the desired station in the list to start listening.

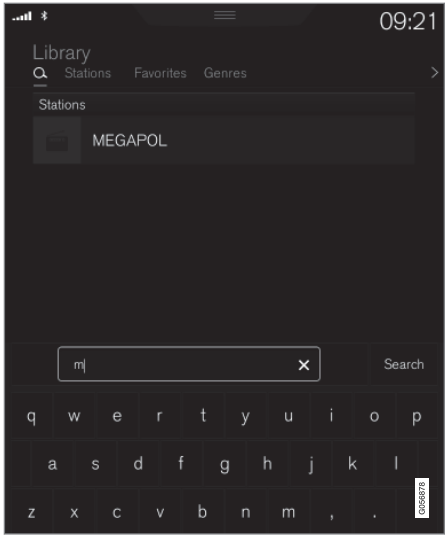
When you remove a favourite, it will also be removed from frequency band favourites.

Changing radio band



– Tap on the app (such as **FM**) from app view, or open the app menu with the right-hand steering wheel keypad and select from there.

Searching for radio stations



The parameters you can search on depend on the frequency band selected:

- AM — station and frequency.
- FM — station, genre and frequency.
- DAB - ensembles and stations.

1. Press **Library**.
2. Press .
   > Search view with keyboard is opened.
3. Enter the search terms.
   > Searching takes place with each input of a character and the search results are shown by category.

Manual tuning

On changing over to manual tuning, the radio no longer changes frequency automatically when reception is poor.

– Tap on **Manual tuning**, pull the control or tap on **< >** to the desired frequency.

Related information

- Radio (p. 407)
- Digital radio (p. 411)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)

RDS radio

With RDS (Radio Data System) the radio can automatically change to the strongest transmitter. RDS provides the ability to receive e.g. traffic information and to search for certain programme types.

RDS links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Switch automatically to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Search for programme category, e.g. programme types or traffic information.
- Receive text information on current radio programme.

NOTE

Some radio stations do not use RDS or only selected parts of its functionality.

When broadcasting news or traffic messages, the radio can switch stations, interrupting the audio source currently in use. For example, if the CD player is in use, it is paused. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast. To go back earlier, press ◯ on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or tap **Cancel** in the centre display.

Related information

- Radio (p. 407)
- Settings for radio (p. 412)

Digital radio

Digital radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting, DAB) is a digital broadcasting system for radio. The radio supports DAB, DAB+ and DMB (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

The radio can be operated using voice recognition, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

The digital radio app is launched from app view in the centre display.

Digital radio plays back in the same way as FM and AM, see section "Changing and searching for radio stations". Besides the options to select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites** and **Genres**, there is also the option to select playback from subchannels and **Ensembles**. An ensemble is a set of radio channels (a channel group) broadcasting on the same frequency.

DAB subchannel
Secondary components are usually named subchannels. These are temporary and can contain e.g. translations of the main programme into other languages. Subchannels are indicated with an arrow symbol in the channel list.

Related information
- Changing and searching radio stations (p. 408)
- Linking between different radio bands FM and DAB (p. 412)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Radio (p. 407)
- Settings for radio (p. 412)

Linking between different radio bands FM and DAB
The function enables the digital radio to switch from a channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group (ensemble) with better reception, within DAB and/or between DAB and FM.

DAB to DAB and DAB to FM linking
1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Media** ➔ **DAB**.
3. Tick/untick **DAB To DAB Handover** and/or **DAB To FM Handover** in order to activate/deactivate the respective functions.

Related information
- Digital radio (p. 411)
- Radio (p. 407)
- Settings for radio (p. 412)

Settings for radio
Settings for the different radio bands.

The broadcast of traffic messages etc. can be temporarily interrupted by tapping on ◯ in the right-hand steering wheel keypad or by tapping on **Cancel** in the centre display.

Drag down the top view and select **Settings** ➔ **Media** and the desired radio band. Activating/deactivating functions.

AM/FM
- **Show Radio Text** — shows information on programme content, artists, etc.
- **Freeze Program Service Name** — select to stop the programme service name from scrolling continuously. Instead it freezes after 20 seconds.
- **News** - interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts news. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the news broadcast is finished.
- **Traffic Announcement** - interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
- **Local Interruptions** — interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions in the neighbourhood. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

The **Local Interruptions** function is a geographically restricted version of the **Traffic Announcement** function. The **Traffic Announcement** function must be activated at the same time.

- **Alarm** - interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

DAB

- **Sort Services** - selection for how channels will be sorted. Either alphabetically or by service number.
- **DAB To DAB Handover** - starts the function for linking within DAB. If reception of a radio channel is lost, another channel is found automatically in another channel group (ensemble).
- **DAB To FM Handover** - starts the function for linking between DAB and FM. If reception of a radio channel is lost, an alternative frequency is searched for automatically.
- **Select Announcements Types** — select the types of messages to be received while DAB is playing. Selected messages will interrupt the current media playback to play back the message. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

  Alarm - interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

  Road Traffic Flash — receives information about traffic disruptions.

  News Flash — receives news.

  Transport Flash — receives information about public transport, e.g. ferry and train timetables.

  Warning/ Services — receives information about incidents of lower significance than the Alarm function, e.g. power failures.
- **Show Radio Text** — select to show radio text or selected types of radio text, e.g. artist.
- **Show Program Related Images** — select whether or not to show images for programmes on the screen.

Related information

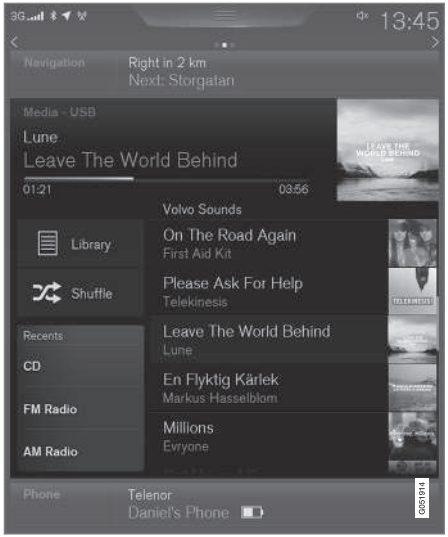
- Radio (p. 407)
- Digital radio (p. 411)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)

Media player

The media player can play back audio from CDs* and externally connected audio sources via the AUX/USB input or wirelessly stream audio files from external devices via Bluetooth. Video can be watched from USB connected devices. In an Online connected car, it is possible to listen to Internet radio, audiobooks and music services via apps.

The media player also operates the radio, which is described in a separate section.

▸▸



The media player is controlled from the centre display, but several functions can be controlled from the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or by voice recognition control.

Related information

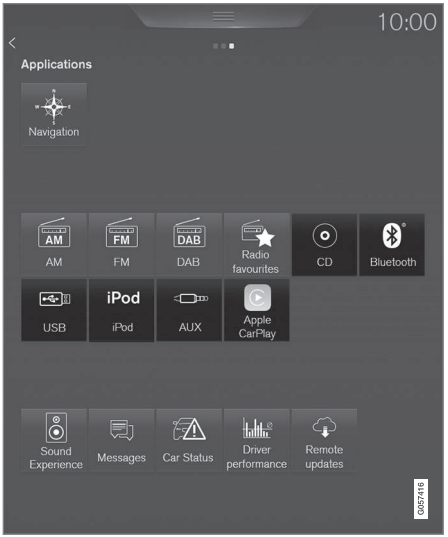
- Media playback (p. 414)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Apps (p. 435)
- Radio (p. 407)
- CD player* (p. 418)
- Media via Bluetooth (p. 418)
- Media via AUX/USB input (p. 419)

Media playback

The media player is controlled from the centre display. Several functions can also be controlled from the right keypad on the steering wheel or with voice recognition.

The media player also operates the radio, which is described in a separate section.

Starting the media source



* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

CD*

1. Insert a CD.
2. Open the app **CD** from the app view.
3. Select what to play back.
   > Playback begins.

USB memory

1. Insert the USB memory.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Select what to play back.
   > Playback begins.

Mp3 player and iPod®

NOTE

To start playback from iPod, use the iPod app (not USB).

When an iPod is used as audio source, the car's audio and media system has a menu structure that is similar to the iPod player's own menu structure.

1. Connect media source.
2. Start playback from the connected media source.
3. Open the app (**iPod**, **USB**, **AUX**) from the app view.
   > Playback begins.

Bluetooth connected device

1. Activate Bluetooth in the media source.
2. Connect media source.
3. Start playback from the connected media source.
4. Open the app **Bluetooth** from the app view.
   > Playback begins.

Internet media

1. Connecting the car.
2. Open the app from the app view.
   > Playback begins.

video

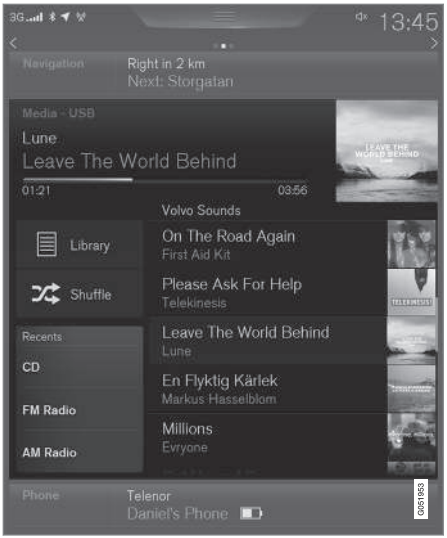
1. Connect media source.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.
   > Playback begins.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay is described in a separate section.

Controlling and changing media

The media player can be operated by voice recognition, from the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.



Volume - turn the control knob under the centre display or use the steering wheel's right-hand keypad in order to increase or decrease the volume.

Play/pause - tap on the image belonging to the song being played, the button under the centre display or ○ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Change track/song - tap on the desired track in the centre display, press on **< >** under the centre

▸▸

display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Fast forward/move in time - tap on the time axis in the centre display and drag sideways, or press and hold **< >** depressed under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Changing media - select under **latest** in the app, tap on the desired app in app view, or select with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Library - tap on the button to play back from the library.

Shuffle - tap on the button to shuffle the playback order.

Similar - tap on the button in order to use Gracenote to search for similar music on the USB device and to create a playlist from it. The playlist can contain a maximum of 50 songs.

Change device - tap on the button in order to switch between USB devices when several are connected.

Settings for video

With the video player in full screen mode, or by opening the top view and pressing **Settings ➔ Video**, the following can be adjusted: **Primary Audio Default Language**, **Subtitle** and **Primary Subtitle Default Language**.

Playing back DivX®

This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Tap **Video ➔ DivX® VOD** and retrieve the registration code.
3. Go to vod.divx.com for more information and to complete the registration.

Related information

- Using the application menu in the driver display (p. 96)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Connecting the car (p. 431)
- Apps (p. 435)
- Searching media (p. 417)
- Connecting media via Bluetooth (p. 418)
- Connecting media via AUX/USB input (p. 419)
- CD player* (p. 418)
- Radio (p. 407)
- Gracenote® (p. 416)
- video (p. 419)
- Audio settings for media (p. 420)
- Apple CarPlay* (p. 420)
- Technical specifications for media (p. 423)

Gracenote®

Gracenote identifies artist, album, song titles and associated images, which are shown during playback.

Gracenote MusicID® is a standard for music recognition.

Activate/deactivate Gracenote

On activation, Gracenote data replace the original data.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Media ➔ Gracenote®**.
3. Activate/deactivate Gracenote by ticking/unticking the box for **Gracenote®**.
4. Select settings for activated Gracenote data:

- **Gracenote® Online Look Up** - searches in Gracenote's online database for playing media.
- **Gracenote® Multiple Results** - selects how to display Gracenote data if there are more than one search results.

  1 - the file's original data are used.

  2 - Gracenote data are used.

  3 - Gracenote or original data can be selected.
- **None** - no results are shown.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Related information
- Media playback (p. 414)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 438)

Searching media

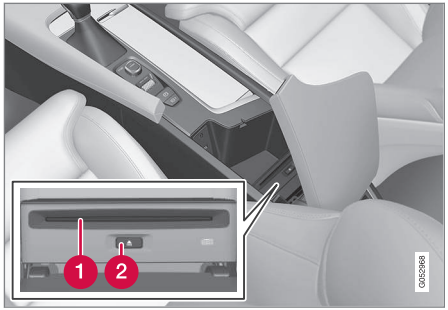
It is possible to search by artist, composer, song (titles), album, video, audio book, playlist and podcasts (digital media via Internet).

1. Press .
   > Search view with keyboard is opened.
2. Enter the search terms.
3. Press **Search**.
   > Connected devices are searched and the search results are shown by category.

Related information
- Media player (p. 413)
- Media playback (p. 414)
- Using the keyboard in the centre display (p. 46)

CD player*

The media player can play back CD discs with audio files. See technical specifications for supported formats.



1. Disc insert and eject slot.
2. Disc eject button.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 414)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Technical specifications for media (p. 423)

Media via Bluetooth

The car's media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can wirelessly play streaming audio files from external devices with Bluetooth, such as mobile phones and PDAs.

Related information

- Connecting media via Bluetooth (p. 418)
- Media playback (p. 414)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Technical specifications for media (p. 423)

Connecting media via Bluetooth

Connect a Bluetooth device with the car in order to stream media and use as Internet connection if it is available.

Many phones on the market now have wireless Bluetooth technology, but not all of them are fully compatible with the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

The procedure for connecting a media device is the same as for connecting a phone.

Related information

- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Media via Bluetooth (p. 418)
- Media playback (p. 414)
- Media player (p. 413)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Media via AUX/USB input

An external media source, e.g. an iPod or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system.

A media source with rechargeable batteries is recharged when connected via USB and when the ignition is in position **I**, **II** or the engine is running.

To facilitate the use of a USB memory stick, only store compatible formats on it. It takes a lot longer for the system to load storage media that contains anything other than compatible formats. In addition to audio, the media player also supports video playback when the device is connected via USB.

Some MP3 players have their own file systems that are not supported by the audio system.

Related information

- Connecting media via AUX/USB input (p. 419)
- Media playback (p. 414)
- Voice recognition control of radio and media (p. 107)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- video (p. 419)
- Apple CarPlay* (p. 420)
- Technical specifications for media (p. 423)

Connecting media via AUX/USB input

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via any of the connectors in the tunnel console.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 414)
- Media via AUX/USB input (p. 419)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Technical specifications for media (p. 423)

video

Video from a USB-connected device can be played back with the media player.

There will be no picture when the car is moving, but the audio continues to be played back. The picture returns when the car is stationary.

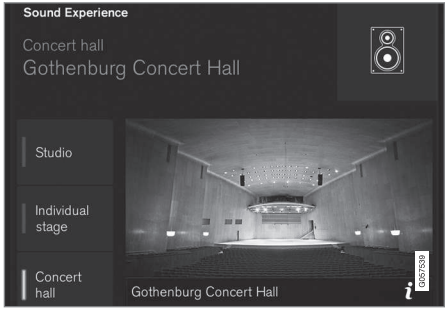
See section "Technical specifications for media" for supported video formats.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 414)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Technical specifications for media (p. 423)

Audio settings for media

Personalisation of audio settings for media playback.



Audio mode that recreates the acoustics from Gothenburg Concert Hall.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** and select settings:
   - **Sound Experience*** — more audio playback options, e.g. playback with concert hall feel. Settings replace any selections made in accordance with the points below for audio settings.
   - **Tone** — personal settings for bass, treble, equaliser, etc.
   - **Balance** - balance between right/left loudspeakers and balance between front/rear loudspeakers.

System volumes for media

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Sound ➔ System Volumes**:
   - **AUX** - If an external audio source (e.g. an MP3 player or iPod) is connected to the AUX input then the audio source that is connected can have a different volume than the audio system's internal volume (e.g. radio). Correct this by adjusting the volume of the input. If the volume is too high or too low then the quality of the sound can be impaired.
   - **Speed and Volume Compensation** - the audio system compensates for disrupting noises in the passenger compartment by increasing the volume in relation to the speed of the car. Compensation level can be set.

Related information

- Audio settings (p. 406)
- Media player (p. 413)

Apple CarPlay*

Apple CarPlay gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while you stay focused on your driving. Apple CarPlay works with selected Apple devices.

If the car is not already equipped with Apple CarPlay then it is possible to install it, contact a en Volvo dealer.

Information about which apps are supported and which phones are compatible is available on Apple's website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Note! Volvo does not check the content in the Apple CarPlay app.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

If a phone or media player is connected to the car via Bluetooth then it will not be available while Apple CarPlay is active due to Bluetooth being deactivated. To connect the car, use Wi-Fi or the car's built-in modem*.

When using map navigation via Apple CarPlay there is no guidance in the driver display or Head-up display, but only in the centre display.

The Apple CarPlay apps can be voice-controlled using Siri or controlled using the centre display as well as the phone. Certain functions can also be controlled using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. A long press on the steering wheel button starts voice recognition control using Siri and a short press deactivates.

By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.

Starting Apple CarPlay

Voice recognition control with Siri must be activated in the phone before using Apple CarPlay.

The first time an iPhone is connected

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB input.
2. Read the information in the pop-up message and then tap on **OK**.
3. Tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.
4. Read the conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.
   > The subview with Apple CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
5. Tap on the desired app.
   > The app starts.

Previously connected iPhone

1. Connect the phone to the USB input.
   > **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the subview with Apple CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
2. **If the setting for automatic start is not selected** - open the **Apple CarPlay** app from the app view.
   > The subview with Apple CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
3. Tap on the desired app.
   > The app starts.

Apple CarPlay runs in the background if another app is started in the same subview. To show Apple CarPlay in the subview again - tap on the Apple CarPlay icon in the app view.

Switch the connection between Apple CarPlay and iPod

Apple CarPlay to iPod

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Untick the box for the Apple device that shall no longer start Apple CarPlay when it is connected.
4. Disconnect and connect the Apple device to the USB input.
5. Open the app **iPod** from the app view.

iPod to Apple CarPlay

1. Tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.
2. Read the information in the pop-up message and then tap on **OK**.
3. Disconnect and connect the Apple device to the USB input.
   > The subview with Apple CarPlay opens.

Related information

- Media player (p. 413)
- Media playback (p. 414)
- Connecting media via AUX/USB input (p. 419)

- Settings for Apple CarPlay* (p. 422)
- Connecting the car (p. 431)

Settings for Apple CarPlay*

Settings for phone connected as Apple CarPlay.

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Apple CarPlay** and select setting:
   - Tick the box - Apple CarPlay starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Untick the box - Apple CarPlay does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Apple devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

A factory reset is required in order to delete the list, see the section "Resetting settings in the settings view".

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** ➔ **System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navigation**
   - **Ringtone**

Related information

- Apple CarPlay* (p. 420)
- Resetting settings in the settings view (p. 164)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Technical specifications for media

Compatible file formats and audio specifications.

Audio files

Format	File extension	Codec
MP3	.mp3	MPEG1 Layer III, MPEG2 Layer III, MP3 Pro (mp3 compatible), MP3 HD (mp3 compatible)
AAC	.m4a, .m4b, .aac	AAC LC (MPEG-4 part III Audio), HE-AAC (aacPlus v1/v2)
WMA	.wma	WMA8/9, WMA9/10 Pro
WAV	.wav	LPCM
FLAC	.flac	FLAC

Video files

Format	File extension
MP4	.mp4, m4v
MPEG-PS	.mpg, .mp2, .mpeg, .m1v
AVI	.avi
AVI (DivX)	.avi, divx
ASF	.asf, .wmv
MKV	.mkv

Subtitles

Format	File extension
SubViewer	.sub
SubRip	.srt
SSA	.ssa

DivX®

DivX certified devices have been tested for high-quality DivX (.divx, .avi) video playback. When you see the DivX logo, you have the freedom to play DivX films.

Profile	DivX Home Theater
Video codec	DivX, MPEG-4
Resolution	720x576
Bit rate	4.8Mbps
Frame rate	30 fps
File extension	.divx, .avi
Max file size	4 GB
Audio codec	MP3, AC3
Subtitles	XSUB
Special functions	Multiple subtitles, multiple audio, resume play
Reference	Meets all requirements of the DivX Home Theater profile. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX Home Theater video.

Storage on USB device

In order for the system to read the USB device correctly, the following specifications must be followed. No folder structure will be shown in the centre display during playback.

	Max number
Files	15000
Folders	1000
Folder levels	8
Playlists	100
Items in a playlist	1000
Subfolders	No limit

Related information

- Media player (p. 413)
- Media playback (p. 414)

Phone

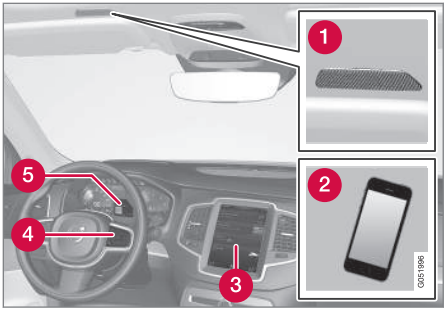
A mobile phone equipped with Bluetooth can be connected wirelessly to the car's built-in hands-free system.

The audio and media system acts as a handsfree, with the facility to remotely control a selection of the mobile phone's functions. The mobile phone can still be operated with its own keys if it is connected to the car.

When a mobile phone has been connected with the car and connected, it can be used make calls, send/receive messages, stream media and provide an Internet connection.

The phone is operated from the centre display, but some operations are also available via voice recognition and the app menu, which are accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Overview



1. Microphone.
2. Mobile phone.
3. Phone operation from centre display.
4. Keypad for operating phone functions that are shown in the driver display and voice recognition.
5. Driver display.

Related information

- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Connecting/disconnecting the phone (p. 426)
- Managing phone calls (p. 427)
- Managing text messages (p. 428)
- Settings for phone (p. 429)

- Settings for text messages (p. 430)
- Bluetooth settings (p. 432)
- Voice recognition (p. 105)
- Using the application menu in the driver display (p. 96)
- Media player (p. 413)

Connect phone

Connect a Bluetooth-activated phone to the car to make calls, send/receive messages, stream media and connect the car to the Internet.

It is possible to have two Bluetooth devices connected at once, in which case one of them can only be streaming media. The most recently connected phone will automatically be connected to make calls, send/receive messages, stream media and provide an Internet connection. To change the use of the phone, see section "Bluetooth settings".

Connection is performed once per device. After connection, the Bluetooth device no longer needs to be visible/searchable but only needs to have Bluetooth activated. To connect the car to the Internet via a phone, tethering must be activated on the phone. A maximum of 20 connected Bluetooth devices can be stored in the car.

There are two options for connecting. Either search the phone from the car or search the car from the phone.

Option 1 - search phone from car

1. Make the phone searchable/visible via Bluetooth.
2. To connect the car to the Internet via the phone's Bluetooth, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) via Bluetooth on the phone.
3. Open the subview for phone.
   - If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone**.
   - If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change** . In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone**.

   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
4. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
5. Check that the specified number code in the car matches that in the phone. In which case, choose to accept in both places.
6. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

NOTE

- The message function must be activated in some phones.
- Not all mobile phones are compatible and can show contacts and messages in the car.

Option 2 - search car from phone

1. Open the subview for phone.
   - If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone** ➔ **Make car discoverable**.
   - If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change** . In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone** ➔ **Make car discoverable**.
2. Activate Bluetooth on the phone.
3. To connect the car to the Internet via the phone's Bluetooth, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) via Bluetooth on the phone.
4. Search on the phone for Bluetooth devices.
   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
5. Select the name of the car on the phone.
6. Check that the specified number code in the car matches that in the external device. In which case, choose to accept in both places.
7. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

NOTE

- The message function must be activated in some phones.
- Not all mobile phones are compatible and can show contacts and messages in the car.

NOTE

If the phone's operating system is updated then the connection may be broken. In which case, delete the phone from the car and then connect again.

Compatible phones

Many phones on the market now have wireless Bluetooth technology, but not all of them are fully compatible with the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Phone (p. 424)
- Connecting/disconnecting the phone (p. 426)
- Bluetooth settings (p. 432)
- Managing phone calls (p. 427)
- Managing text messages (p. 428)

Connecting/disconnecting the phone

Connect, change or disconnect a connected phone.

Connect phone automatically

1. Activate Bluetooth and tethering (portable/personal hotspot) on the phone before setting the car in ignition position **I**.
2. Set the car in ignition position **I** or higher.
   > The phone will connect.

Connect the phone manually.

1. Activate Bluetooth and tethering (portable/personal hotspot) on the phone.
2. Open the subview for phone and tap on **Change phone**.
   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
3. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
   > The phone will connect.

Disconnecting the phone

– Deactivate Bluetooth on the phone.

When the phone is out of range of the car it is automatically disconnected. If disconnection occurs during an active call then the call can be continued on the phone.

Changing phones

1. Open the subview for phone.

2. Press **Change** .
   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
3. Tap on the phone to be connected.

Removing a phone

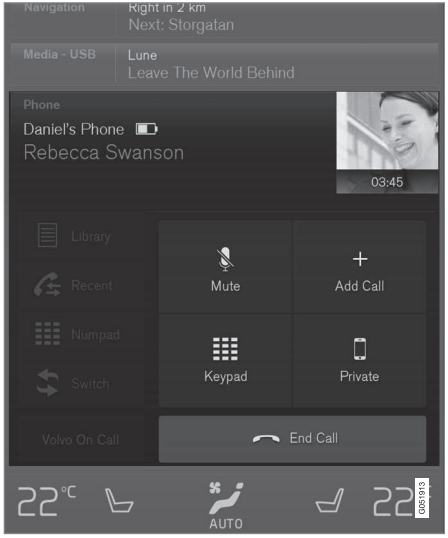
1. Open the subview for phone.
2. Press **Settings** ➔ **Communication** ➔ **Bluetooth**.
   > A list of connected Bluetooth devices is displayed.
3. Tap on the phone to be removed.
4. Tap on **Remove device** and confirm your selection.
   > The phone is no longer connected with the car.

Related information

- Phone (p. 424)
- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Settings for phone (p. 429)
- Bluetooth settings (p. 432)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

Managing phone calls

Call handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.



Making phone calls

1. Open the subview for phone.
2. Select call from: call history, enter number using the keypad or via the contact list. It is possible to search or browse in the contact list. Tap on ☆ in the contact list in order to add a contact under **Favourites**.
3. Tap on **Call** or .
4. Tap on **End call** to end the call.

You can also make calls from the call log via the app menu, which is accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad .

Making multi-party calls

During a call:

1. Press **Add call**.
2. Choose to make a call from the call log or the contact list.
3. Tap on an entry/row in the call log, or tap on alongside the contact in the contact list.
4. Tap on **Swap call** to switch between the parties.
5. Tap on **End call** to end the active call.

Conference calls

During an active multi-party call:

1. Tap on **Join calls** to merge the active multi-party call.
2. Tap on **End call** to end the call.

Incoming phone calls

Incoming phone calls are shown in the driver display and the centre display. Manage the call on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or in the centre display.

1. Tap on **Answer/Reject**.
2. Tap on **End call** to end the call.

Incoming phone call during an active call

1. Tap on **Answer/Reject**.
2. Tap on **End call** to end the call.

Private call

– During the current call, press **Privacy** and select setting:

- **Switch to mobile phone** - the hands-free function is disconnected and the call continues on your mobile phone.
- **Driver focused** - the microphone in the roof on the passenger side is switched off and the call continues with the car's handsfree function.

Related information

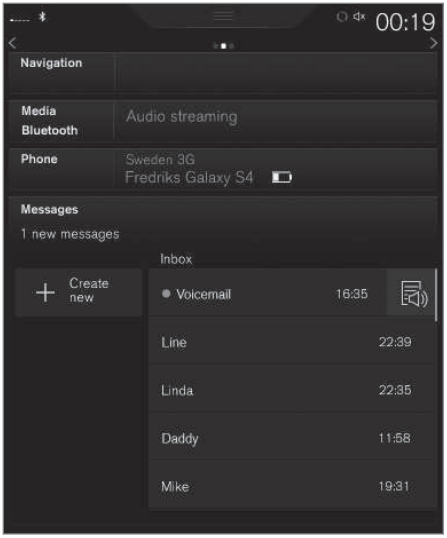
- Phone (p. 424)
- Voice recognition control of the phone (p. 107)
- Using the application menu in the driver display (p. 96)
- Using the keyboard in the centre display (p. 46)
- Settings for phone (p. 429)

Managing text messages

Message handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.

On certain phones the message function must be activated. Not all mobiles are fully compatible and capable of displaying contacts and messages in the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

Reading a text message in the centre display



1. In app view, tap on **Messages** to open it.
2. Press **Read out** to have the message read out, or press on the message you would like read.

Reading a new text message in the driver display

A text message is only shown in the driver display if the option is selected, see section "Settings for text messages".

– Press the down arrow on the steering wheel keypad in order to read the message.

  To have the message read out - select **Read out** using the steering wheel keypad.

Send text message

1. In app view, tap on **Messages** to open it.
2.
   - Reply to message — tap on the contact whose message you wish to reply to, then tap on **Answer**.
   - Create a new message — tap on **Create new** ➔ **+**. Select a contact or enter a number.
3. Type the message.
4. Press **Send**.

Message notification

For notification settings, see section "Settings for text messages".

Related information

- Phone (p. 424)
- Settings for text messages (p. 430)
- Settings for phone (p. 429)
- Voice recognition control of the phone (p. 107)
- Using the keyboard in the centre display (p. 46)

Settings for phone

Settings for connected phone.

Phone

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Phone** and select settings:
   - **Ringtones** - select ringtone. It is possible to use a ringtone from the phone or the car. Some phones are not fully compatible and their ringtones may therefore not be available in the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.
   - **Sort order for contacts** - select sort order of contact list.

   For call notifications in the head-up display*, see section "Head-up display".

Related information

- Settings for text messages (p. 430)
- Bluetooth settings (p. 432)
- Phone (p. 424)
- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Head-up display* (p. 102)

Settings for text messages

Settings for text messages on connected phone.

Message

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication ➔ Text Messages** and select settings:
   - **Notification in centre display** - shows message notifications in the centre display's status bar.
   - **Notification in driver display** - shows notifications in the driver display. When notifications in the driver display are active, it is possible to manage incoming messages with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
   - **Text message tone** - select tone for incoming text message.

Related information

- Phone (p. 424)
- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Managing text messages (p. 428)
- Settings for phone (p. 429)

Online car

An online car provides the ability to use e.g. Internet radio and music services via apps as well as contact dealers in the car and download software.

The car is connected via Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or a cable connected to the USB input, or with the car's built-in modem*.

When the car is connected to the Internet, its Internet connection (Wi-Fi hotspot) can be shared to allow other devices to use the Internet connection[3].

Connection status is indicated by the symbol in the centre display's status bar.

Related information

- Connecting the car (p. 431)
- Apps (p. 435)
- Book service and repair (p. 478)
- System updates (p. 481)
- Volvo ID (p. 20)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)
- Sharing Internet via Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 433)

[3] This does not apply in the case of connection with Wi-Fi.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Connecting the car

Connect the car to the phone via Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, with a cable plugged into the USB input, or with the car's built-in modem*.

The mobile phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing the Internet connection) and the plan must include data.

NOTE

Data is transferred when using the internet (data traffic), which can have a cost.

Activation of data roaming can result in further charges.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

NOTE

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or car modem*.

Read **Terms and Conditions for Services** and **Customer Privacy Policy** at support.volvocars.com before connecting.

Connecting with Bluetooth

See Connecting a phone.

Connecting with Wi-Fi

1. Activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) on the mobile phone.
2. Press **Settings** in top view.
3. Press **Communication** ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for Wi-Fi.
5. Tap on the network name of the network to be connected.
6. Enter the network password.
7. If another connection source has been used in the past - confirm the option to change connection.
   > The car connects to the network.

Note that certain phones switch off tethering after the contact with the car has been disconnected, e.g. when leaving the car and until the next time it is used. The tethering in the phone therefore needs to be reactivated the next time it is used.

When a phone is connected to the car, it is saved for future use. When the maximum number of saved phones (50) is reached, the first connected phones are deleted. To show the list of saved networks or manually delete saved networks, press **Settings** ➔ **Wi-Fi** ➔ **Saved networks**.

For network connection requirements, see the section “Technology and security for Wi-Fi”.

Connect with a cable plugged into the USB input

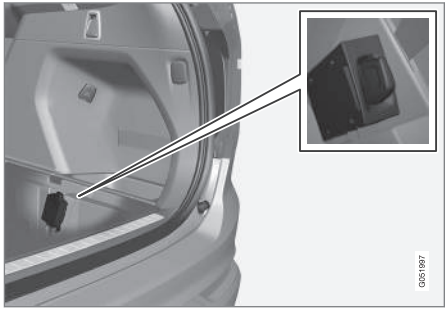
1. Plug the phone by a cable into the car's USB connection in the tunnel console's storage compartment.
2. Activate USB tethering on the mobile phone.
3. If another connection source has been used in the past - confirm the option to change connection.
   > The car connects to the network.

Connecting with car modem*[5]

When the car is connected to the Internet via the car modem, Volvo On Call services will use this connection.

5 Only cars with Volvo On Call.

1.



Fit a personal SIM card into the holder.

2. Press **Settings** in top view.
3. Press **Communication** ➔ **Car Modem Internet**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car modem Internet**.
5. If another connection source has been used in the past - confirm the option to change connection.
6. Enter the SIM card's PIN code.

   > The car connects to the network.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)
- Remove Wi-Fi network (p. 434)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 434)
- No or poor connection (p. 434)
- Settings for car modem* (p. 435)
- Bluetooth settings (p. 432)
- Apple CarPlay* (p. 420)

Bluetooth settings

Settings for Bluetooth-connected phone.

Bluetooth

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Bluetooth** and select settings:

- **Previously paired devices** - lists connected devices.

  Remove device - removes the connected device.

  Allowed services for this device - select whether images should be shown.
- **Internet connection** - selection to connect to the Internet via the device's Bluetooth connection.
- **Add device** - starts the pairing of a new device.

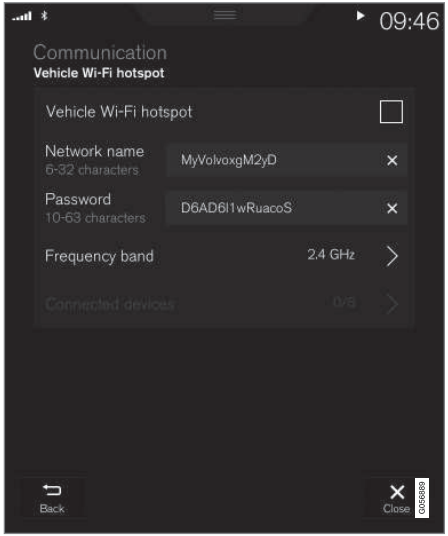
Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Phone (p. 424)
- Connect phone (p. 425)
- Media player (p. 413)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Sharing Internet via Wi-Fi hotspot

When the car is connected to the Internet, its Internet connection can be shared to allow other devices to use the Internet connection.[7]



The network operator (SIM card) must support tethering (sharing of Internet connection).

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
3. Tap on **Network name** and name the shared connection.
4. Tap on **Password** and select a password to be entered on connecting devices.
5. Tap on **Frequency band** and select the frequency on which the hotspot is to transmit data. Note that selection of frequency band is not available in all markets.
6. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
7. If Wi-Fi has previously been used as a connection source, confirm the option to change connection.
   > It is now possible for external devices to connect to the car's tethering (Wi-Fi hotspot).

NOTE

Activation of Wi-Fi-hotspot can result in further charges from your network operator.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

Connection status is indicated by the symbol in the centre display's status bar.

Press **Connected devices** to see a list of the currently connected devices.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 434)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 42)
- No or poor connection (p. 434)

[7] This does not apply in the case of connection with Wi-Fi.

No or poor connection

Factors affecting the network.

The amount of data transferred is dependent on the services or apps in use in the car. For example, streaming audio can require large amounts of data which requires a good connection and good signal strength.

Mobile phone to car

The speed of the connection may vary depending on the location of the mobile phone in the car. Move the mobile phone handset closer to the centre display in order to increase the signal strength. Ensure that there is no source of interference in between.

Mobile phone to network

The speed of the mobile network varies depending on the coverage in the present location. Poor network coverage may occur, for example in tunnels, in mountainous country, in deep valleys or indoors. The speed also depends on the agreement you have with your network.

NOTE

In the event of problems with data traffic, contact your network operator.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Connecting the car (p. 431)

Remove Wi-Fi network

Removing a network that is not to be used.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Wi-Fi ➔ Saved networks**.
3. Tap on **Forget** alongside the network to be removed.
4. Confirm the selection.
   > The car will no longer connect to the network in future.

Remove all networks

All networks can be removed simultaneously by restoring factory settings. Please note that all user data and system settings are reset to original factory settings.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Connecting the car (p. 431)
- Resetting settings in the settings view (p. 164)

Wi-Fi technologies and security

Possible network types to connect to.

It is only possible to connect to the following types of network:

- Frequency — 2.4 or 5 GHz[8].
- Standards — 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- Security type - WPA2-AES-CCMP.

The car's Wi-Fi system is designed to handle Wi-Fi devices inside the car.

If several devices operate on the frequency at the same time then it may result in reduced performance.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Connecting the car (p. 431)
- Sharing Internet via Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 433)
- No or poor connection (p. 434)

Settings for car modem*[9]

The car is equipped with a modem that can be used to connect the car to the Internet. It is also possible to share the Internet connection via Wi-Fi.

1. Press **Settings** in top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Car Modem Internet** and select settings:

- **Car modem Internet** - select whether to use the car modem as Internet connection.
- **Data usage** - tap on **Reset** resets the counters for received and sent data volume.
- **Network**

  Select network operator - automatic or manual selection of network operator.

  Data roaming - if the box is ticked, the car modem will attempt to connect to the Internet when the car is abroad and outside its home network. Note that this may result in heavy costs. Check your roaming agreement for data traffic abroad with your network provider in your home country.
- **SIM card PIN**

  Change PIN - a maximum of 4 digits can be entered.

  Disable PIN - select whether the PIN code shall be required for access to the SIM card.
- **Send request code** — used e.g. to top up or check the balance on a prepaid card. Functionality depends on the provider.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Sharing Internet via Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 433)

Apps

Applications (apps) are programs that are used to control some of the car's functions.

Application view.

Some basic apps are always available. More are available for download. The apps that are available to download vary, but can include Internet radio and music services.

8 Selection of frequency is not available on all markets.
9 Only cars with Volvo On Call.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

– Tap on an app in the app view to launch it.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps (p. 436)
- Changing settings for apps (p. 165)

Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps

Download new apps, keep existing apps updated or uninstall apps.

NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

The apps are managed via **Remote update service** in application view.

To be able to download, update or uninstall apps, the car must be online.

Downloading an app

1. Open the app **Remote update service**.
2. Select **Explore** in order to open a list of apps that are available but not installed in the car.
3. Tap anywhere on the row for an app in order to expand in the list and get more information about the app.
4. Select **Install** in order to start the download of the desired app.
   > The status of the installation is shown while it is in progress.

   A message is shown if a download cannot be started for the moment. The app will remain in the list and it is possible to try to start a download again.

Cancelling a download

– Tap on **Abort** to cancel a download in progress.

Note that only the download can be cancelled — installation cannot be cancelled once it has begun.

Updating apps

If an app is being used during an ongoing update, it will be restarted in order for the installation to be completed.

Update all

1. Open the app **Remote update service**.
2. Select **Install all**.
   > Updating is started.

Update some

1. Open the app **Remote update service**.
2. Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all available updates.
3. Locate the desired app and select **Install**.
   > Updating is started.

Uninstalling an app

An app that is being used must be closed in order for the uninstallation to be completed.

1. Open the app **Remote update service**.
2. Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all installed apps.
3. Locate the desired app and select **Uninstall** in order to start the uninstallation of the app.
   > When the app has been uninstalled, it disappears from the list.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Radio (p. 407)
- Media player (p. 413)
- System updates (p. 481)

License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement granting a right to conduct some activity or to make use of another person's right under the terms and conditions of the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

Bowers & Wilkins

Bowers & Wilkins and B&W are trademarks of the B&W Group Ltd. Nautilus is a trademark of B&W Group Ltd. Kevlar is a registered trademark of DuPont.

Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimises the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues. Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls Dirac Unison all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logotypes are trademarks belonging to Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and used under licence.

About. DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX® certified device which has been tested and found capable of playing DivX video. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files to DivX video.

ABOUT DIVUX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films. Get the registration code by locating the DivX VOD section in the device's settings menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete the registration.

Patent numbers

Protected by one or more of the following US patents. 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052

Gracenote®

Parts of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its suppliers.

Gracenote,Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the USA and/or other countries.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement
This program or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California, USA ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote ("Gracenote software") activates this program to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track and title ("Gracenote data") from online servers or embedded databases (together called "Gracenote servers") and in order to perform other actions. You may only use Gracenote data in accordance with the intended end-user functions for this program or this device.

You agree to only use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers for your own personal non-commercial use. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit this Gracenote software or any Gracenote data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

You agree that your non-exclusive right to use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers will be terminated if you violate these restrictions. If your license is terminated you agree to cease all use of Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers. Gracenote holds exclusive rights to all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Gracenote will under no circumstances have any obligation to pay you for any information you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce the company's rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track enquiries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to enable the Gracenote service to count enquiries without knowing anything about who you are. Additional information is available on the web page for Gracenote's privacy policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and everything included in Gracenote data are licensed to you "as is". Gracenote provides no undertakings or warranties, express or implied, as to the accuracy of the Gracenote data contained in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote servers or to change data categories for any reason that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is provided that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers are fault-free or that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers will operate without interruption. Gracenote has no obligation to provide you with new, improved or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future, and the company reserves the right to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. GRACENOTE DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE RESULTS OBTAINED THROUGH YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR A GRACENOTE SERVER. GRACENOTE WILL IN NO EVENT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES.

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California. All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS

INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Declaration of Conformity for Bluetooth® module

Declaration of Conformity

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works
2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513 Japan

We declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product :	Audio Navigation Unit	
Model/Type Number :	NR-0V	
Directive and Standards used :	Radio :	EN 300 328 V1.8.1 :2012-6
	EMC :	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 :2011-09
		EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 :2012-09
	Safety :	IEC 60950-1:2005 (Second Edition) + Am 1:2009 and/or
		EN 60950-1 : 2006+A1:2010+A11:2009+A12:2011
	Health :	EN 62479: 2011-09

The authorized signatory to this declaration :

Date: 13th May 2014

Signature: T. Kyomoto

Name: **Takeshi Kyomoto**
Title: Manager,
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works
Address: 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan

The responsible person based within the EC :

Date: 2014-05-14

Signature:

Name: **Jan Billig**
Title: General Manager,
Mitsubishi Electric Automotive Europe,B.V.
Swedish Branch, Technical Center
Address: Ostra Eriksbergsgatan 38, SE41878 Gothenburg, Sweden

Country/ Area	
EU:	 Exporting country: Japan Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Type of equipment: Audio Navigation Unit Hereby, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation declares that this Audio Navigation Unit is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EG.

Country/ Area	
China:	1. ■ 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz ■ 等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益＜ 10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ① ■ 最大功率谱密度： 天线增益＜ 10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ① ■ 载频容限：20 ppm ■ 带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 频段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP) ■ 杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： • ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz) • ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz) • ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它 1 - 12.75 GHz) 2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线； 3.使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； 4.使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰； 5.不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

Country/ Area	
Korea:	B 급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재) 이 기기는 가정용(B 급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다. 해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다.
Taiwan:	**低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法** 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自 變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 **低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應 立停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線 電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備** 之干擾。

Country/ Area	
Brazil:	 Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto e, náo tem direito a protecão contra interferéncia prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferéncia a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br
Kazakh-stan:	 Model name: NR 0V Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Exporting country: Japan

Country/ Area	
Mexico:	
The United Arab Emirates:	

Related information

- Audio and media (p. 406)
- Media player (p. 413)
- Online car (p. 430)
- Gracenote® (p. 416)
- Sensus - connection and maintenance (p. 26)

Terms and conditions for services and Customer Privacy Policy

Read the terms and conditions for services and the Customer Privacy Policy at support.volvocars.com.

Terms and services for services

Volvo is committed to offering you the absolute best services to ensure that it is as safe, comfortable and pleasant as possible for you to drive your Volvo. Volvo offers a wide range of services, from assistance in emergency situations to navigation in various infotainment services.

Read these terms and conditions ("Service Terms and Conditions") carefully before using the services - support.volvocars.com.

Customer Privacy Policy

This policy applies for the processing of customer data and personal data. The purpose of the policy is to provide our existing, previous and prospective customers with a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we gather and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we gather.
- The reasons we gather your personal data.
- How we handle your personal data.

This policy can be read in its entirety at support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- License agreement for audio and media (p. 438)
- License agreement for the driver display (p. 90)
- Type approval for radar units (p. 296)

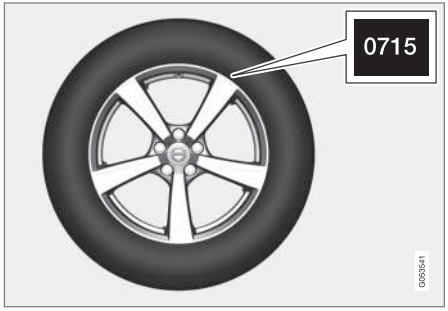
WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres

Amongst other things, the function of the tyres is to carry load, provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.

The tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 0715. The tyre in the figure was manufactured in week 07 of 2015.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discoloration.

Wear and maintenance

Correct tyre pressure results in more even wear. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly the tyres age and wear.

To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns forming on the tyres, the front and rear wheels can be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km and then at 10000 km intervals.

Volvo recommends the an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, then the least worn tyres must always be fitted on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

WARNING

A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

Storage

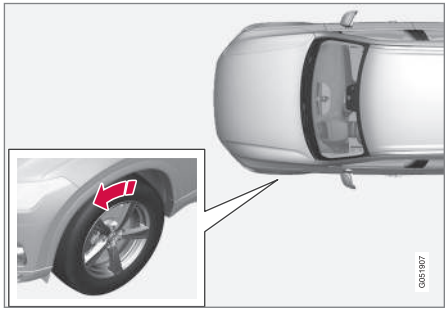
Wheels with tyres fitted must be stored lying down or hanging up - never standing up.

Related information

- Checking the tyre pressures. (p. 452)
- Tyres' rotation direction (p. 451)
- Tread wear indicators on the tyres (p. 451)
- Tyre pressure monitoring (p. 453)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 463)
- Size designation for tyre (p. 475)

Tyres' rotation direction

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan. Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa. If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected. Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

NOTE

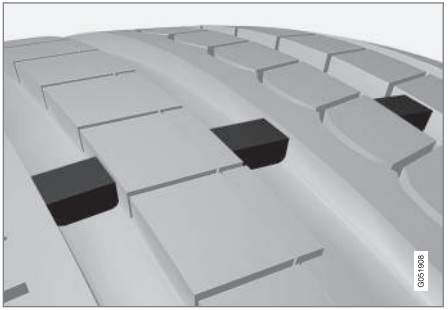
Make sure that both pairs of wheels have the same type and dimension, and also the same make.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 450)

Tread wear indicators on the tyres

Tread wear indicators show the status of the tyre's tread depth.



A tread wear indicator is a narrow elevation across the longitudinal grooves of the tyre's tread pattern. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm, the tread will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 450)

Checking the tyre pressures.

Tyres with the correct air pressure increase driving safety, save fuel and extend the service life of the tyres.

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature. Inadequate tyre pressure increases fuel consumption, shortens tyre lifespan and impairs the car's driving characteristics. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Recommended tyre pressure

The tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions.

Improved fuel economy with ECO pressure
For optimum fuel economy at speeds below 160 km/h (100 mph) an ECO pressure is recommended for both full and light load.

Checking the air pressure

1. Check the tyre pressures monthly. Carry out the check on cold tyres, which means that the tyres should have the same temperature as the outside temperature. After several few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.
2. If necessary, inflate so that the air pressure corresponds with the approved tyre pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 450)
- Check tyre pressure with the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 455)
- Inflate tyres with the compressor from the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 467)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 546)

Tyre pressure monitoring[3]

The tyre pressure monitoring system, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), gives a warning with an indicator symbol in the driver display when the pressure in one or more of the car's tyres is too low.

If the symbol first flashes for about one minute and then changes to a constant glow, it may indicate that the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.

Tyre pressure monitoring uses detectors located on the air valve in each wheel. When the car is driven at approx. 30 km/h (20 mph), or faster, the system detects the tyre pressure. If the pressure is too low, a low tyre pressure indicator symbol in the driver display illuminates and a message is shown.

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol illuminates in the event of low tyre pressure. In the event of a fault in the TPMS system, the symbol will first flash for approx. one minute and then illuminate with a constant glow.

General information on the tire pressure monitoring system

Each tyre, including the spare tyre*, should be checked once a month. When checking, the tyre should be cold and have the air pressure recommended by the car manufacturer specified on the tyre pressure label or in the tyre pressure table. If the car has tyres of a different size than that recommended by the manufacturer, find out what the correct air pressure level is for these.

As an extra safety feature, the car is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS), which shows when the air pressure of one or more tyres is too low. When the indicator symbol for low air pressure is lit, stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate to the correct air pressure.

Driving on tyres with low tyre pressure may cause the tyre to overheat, which can cause a puncture. Low tyre pressure also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre service life, and can affect car handling and stopping ability. Note that TPMS does not replace regular tyre maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if the limit for low tyre pressure has not been reached so that the indicator symbol illuminates.

The car is also equipped with a TPMS system fault indicator, which indicates when the system is not functioning correctly. The TPMS system fault indicator is combined with the indicator symbol for low tyre pressure. When the system detects a fault, the symbol in the driver display will flash for about one minute and then remain illuminated. This procedure will be repeated when the car is started until the fault has been rectified. When the symbol is illuminated, the system's ability to detect or warn of low tyre pressure may be affected.

A TPMS system fault can occur for several reasons, such as after changing to a spare tyre, or changing tyres or wheels that prevent TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the indicator symbol for TPMS after changing one or more tyres to make sure the new tyre or wheel is functioning correctly with TPMS.

Both factory-fitted and optional wheels can be equipped with TPMS sensors in the valves. If the spare wheel or a wheel without a TPMS detector is used, an error message will be shown in the driver display after a few minutes of driving.

The system does not replace normal tyre maintenance.

3 Standard in certain markets.

Messages in the driver display

The following messages may be shown when the indicator symbol is illuminated:

- **Tyre pressure system Service required**.
- **Tyre pressure system Temporarily unavailable**
- **Tyre pressure low** as well as which tyre(s) is/are involved.
- **Tyre needs air now**, as well as which tyre(s) is/are involved.

If the system cannot determine which tyre has low pressure, a general warning is issued:

- **Tyre pressure low Check tyres**
- **Tyre needs air now Check tyres**

Recommendations

- TPMS sensors should be fitted to all of the car's wheels, winter wheels as well.
- Sensors should not be moved between different wheels.
- If a wheel has been changed, or if the TPMS sensor has been moved to another wheel then the valve seal and valve core must be replaced.
- When TPMS sensors are installed, the car should be switched off for at least 15 minutes otherwise an error message will be shown in the driver display.
- Always check the system after changing a wheel in order to ensure that replacement wheels work with the system. Make sure that new wheels have TPMS detectors to prevent system fault warnings.

NOTE

After changing to a tyre dimension that results in a change in recommended tyre pressure, the TPMS system must be reconfigured. Contact a Volvo dealer for further information.

Deactivating the function[4]

Tyre pressure monitoring can be switched off via the centre display.

1. Park the car and switch off the engine.
2. Activate ignition position **I**.
3. Press on **Settings** in the top view:
4. Press **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** and deselect **Tyre Pressure Monitor**.
   > The function remains deactivated until it is activated the next time.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 450)
- Check tyre pressure with the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 455)
- Calibrating the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 457)
- Rectifying low tyre pressure with tyre pressure monitoring (p. 456)
- The approval for tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 459)

4 Only applies to certain markets.

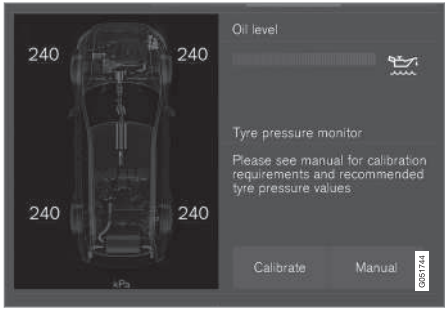
Check tyre pressure with the tyre pressure monitoring system[9]

With the system for monitoring tyre pressure, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), tyre pressure can be viewed in the centre display.

Checking status

Open the **Car status** app in the app view and tap on **Status** to show the measured tyre pressure values.

The graphics show the air pressure for each tyre.



Status view[10].

Status indication

When tyre pressure is normal (i.e. exceeds the permitted limit value for low tyre pressure), only the tyre pressure value will be shown.

- A yellow marking under the tyre pressure value indicates low tyre pressure. Stop and check/rectify the tyre pressure as soon as possible.
- A red marking under the tyre pressure value indicates very low tyre pressure. Stop and rectify the tyre pressure immediately.
- If the tyre pressure value is not shown, you may need to drive for a few minutes above 30 km/h (20 mph) for a value to be displayed. This may indicate that the system has not yet measured a value, or that a calibration is being performed.
- A flashing indicator symbol that changes to a constant glow after about 1 minute, accompanied by the message **Service required**, indicates a fault in the system.

Settings for tyre pressure monitoring

Change the unit for tyre pressure via the centre display:

1. Press on **Settings** in the top view:
2. Press **System** ➔ **Units**.
3. Under **Tyre Pressure**, select the desired unit for tyre pressure: **Bar**, **kPa** or **Psi**.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring (p. 453)
- Calibrating the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 457)
- Rectifying low tyre pressure with tyre pressure monitoring (p. 456)
- Car status (p. 478)

9 Standard in certain markets.
10 The figure is schematic. Layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

Rectifying low tyre pressure with tyre pressure monitoring[14]

When the tyre pressure monitoring system, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), gives a warning, the tyre pressure in one or more of the car's tyres is too low.

Check and rectify the tyre pressure when the indicator symbol for TPMS is illuminated and the message **Tyre pressure low** or **Tyre needs air now** is shown.

1. Check the tyre pressure as indicated on the tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure as indicated on the tyre pressure label on the door pillar on the driver's side.

3. In some cases it may be necessary to drive the car for a few minutes at a speed above 30 km/h (20 mph) in order to clear the TPMS symbol and message.

NOTE

- The TPMS system uses a so-called compensated pressure value, based on both tyre temperature and ambient temperature. This means that the tyre pressure may differ slightly from the recommended pressures listed on the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between front and rear doors). It may therefore be necessary to pump hot tyres to approx. 0.3 bar, alternatively 30kPa, above the recommended tyre pressure to get rid of a low tyre pressure message.
- To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

14 Standard in certain markets.

WARNING

When inflating a tyre equipped with TPMS, hold the nozzle of the pump directly against the valve to avoid damaging the valve.

WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring (p. 453)
- Check tyre pressure with the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 455)
- Calibrating the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 457)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 546)
- Inflate tyres with the compressor from the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 467)

Calibrating the tyre pressure monitoring system[18]

If necessary, change the reference values for tyre pressure monitoring, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

Calibrate the TPMS system after adjusting tyre pressure in accordance with Volvo's tyre pressure recommendations, e.g. for driving with a heavy load or at a high speed.

NOTE

The car must be stationary when calibration is started.

1. Stop the engine.
2. Inflate the tyres to the desired pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the door pillar on the driver's side.

3. Start the engine.
4. Open the **Car status** app in the app view.

5. Tap on **Status** to view tyre pressure monitoring.

18 Standard in certain markets.

6. Press **Calibrate** and then **Done**.

   It is also possible to start calibration via the centre display's top view. Press **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** and select **Calibrate Tyre Pressure**.

7. Drive for at least 10 minutes at a speed of at least 30 km/h (20 mph).
   > The calibration starts automatically after initialisation. The system provides a confirmation when the calibration is complete.

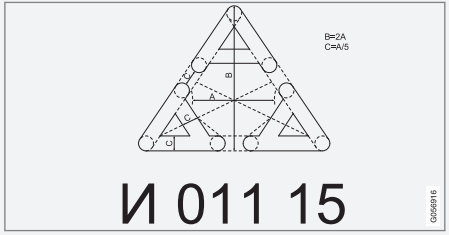
The new reference values apply until the calibration is carried out again.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring (p. 453)
- Check tyre pressure with the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 455)
- Rectifying low tyre pressure with tyre pressure monitoring (p. 456)

The approval for tyre pressure monitoring system[22]

Type approval of the sensors for tyre pressure monitoring, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), can be read in the table below.

Country/Area	
Europe EU	Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk
Serbia	
Moldova	

22 Standard in certain markets.

Country/Area	
Ukraine	 Schrader Electronics цім стверджує, що обладнання Радіопередавач моделі VHSS4 системи контролю тиску в шині автомобіля відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ № 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader Electronics та надається за запитом на електрону адресу emcteam@schrader.co.uk
Brazil	
The United Arab Emirates	TRA REGISTERED NO:ER36479/14 DEALER NO:DA0047074/10

Country/Area	
Philippines	
Jordan	Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressure sensor. Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics Ltd Model:VH SS4 Type Approval Number:TRC/LPD/2014/261
Singapore	Complies with IDA Standards DA 105282
South Africa	

Country/Area	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR10410 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément: 21/05/2015
Argentina	Schrader VHSS4 Numero de Registro CNC: AFTIC: H-14802

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring (p. 453)

Emergency puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK), is used to seal a puncture as well as to check and adjust the air pressure.

The puncture repair kit consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The sealing works as a temporary repair. The sealing fluid effectively seals tyres punctured in the tread.

The emergency puncture repair kit has limited capacity to seal tyres which have punctures in the wall. Do not use the puncture repair kit on tyres that have larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

NOTE

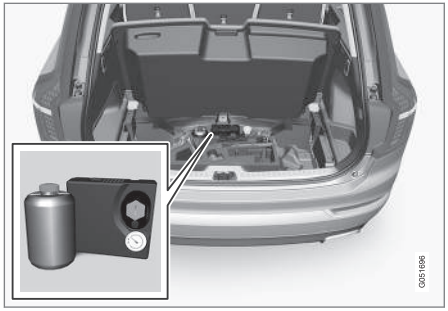
The emergency puncture repair kit is only intended for sealing tyres with a puncture in the tread.

NOTE

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo.

Location

The puncture repair kit is located in the foam block under the floor in the cargo area.



Location in the cargo area.[24]

Sealing fluid bottle

Replace the bottle with sealing fluid before the expiration date has passed and after use. Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

WARNING

The bottle contains 1.2-Ethanol and natural rubber-latex.

Harmful if ingested. Could result in allergic reaction in the event of skin contact.

Avoid contact with the skin and eyes.

Store out of the reach of children.

WARNING

In the event of skin contact with the fluid, it must be washed off immediately with soap and plenty of water.

Related information

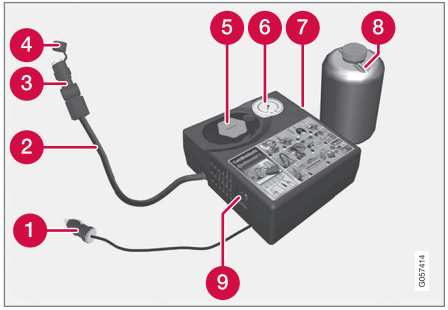
- Using the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 464)
- Inflate tyres with the compressor from the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 467)
- Tyres (p. 450)

24 The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Using the emergency puncture repair kit

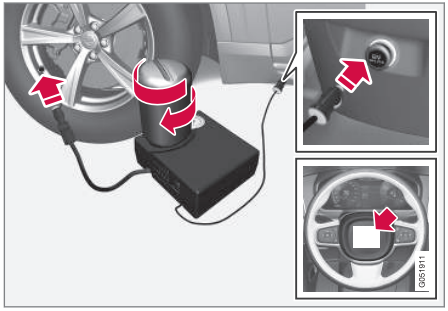
Seal a puncture with the emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK).

Overview



1. Electrical cable
2. Air hose
3. Pressure reducing valve
4. Protective cap
5. Bottle holder (orange cap)
6. Pressure gauge
7. Label, maximum permitted speed
8. Sealing fluid bottle
9. Switch

Connecting



1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location.

   If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar, allow this to remain in the tyre. It helps to seal the hole.

2. Detach the label for maximum permitted speed (which is fitted on one side of the compressor) and affix it to the steering wheel. You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used.
3. Check that the switch is in position **0**, and locate the electrical cable and the air hose.
4. Unscrew the orange-coloured cap from the compressor, and unscrew the cork from the bottle.

NOTE

Do not break the bottle's seal before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed in.

5. Screw in the bottle to the bottom of the bottle holder.
   > The bottle and the bottle holder are equipped with a reverse catch to prevent sealant leakage. When the bottle is screwed in it cannot be unscrewed from the bottle holder again. Bottle removal must be performed at a workshop, Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

The sealing fluid can irritate the skin. In the case of contact with skin, wash away the fluid with soap and water.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

6. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap.

   Check that the pressure reducing valve on the air hose is fully screwed on, and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the tyre valve's thread.

7. Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

NOTE

Make sure that none of the other 12 V sockets is in use when the compressor is operating.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

8. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I**.

WARNING

Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

NOTE

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar but the pressure drops after approximately 30 seconds.

9. Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

10. Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar and maximum 3.5 bar. (Release air with the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

WARNING

If the pressure is below 1.8 bar then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

11. Switch off the compressor and detach the electrical cable.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve and refit the dust cap on the tyre.
13. Fit the protective cap on the air hose in order to avoid leakage of the remaining sealing fluid.

14. As soon as possible, drive at least 3 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre.

NOTE

Sealant will spurt out of the puncture during the first few rotations of the tyre.

WARNING

Make sure that nobody is standing near the car and gets the sealing fluid splashed onto them when the car is driven away. The distance should be at least two metres.

15. **Follow-up inspection**

    Connect the air hose on the tyre valve and screw in the valve connection to the bottom of the tyre valve's thread. The compressor must be switched off.

16. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
    - If it is below 1.3 bar then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact a tyre centre.
    - If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

17. If the tyre needs to be inflated:
    1. Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.
    2. Start the compressor and inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure label.
    3. Switch off the compressor.

18. Remove the tyre sealing equipment, fit the protective cap on the air hose and fold the hose in the box.

    Place TMK in the cargo area.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

19. Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that the car is driven to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

WARNING

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends a visit to an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 463)

Inflate tyres with the compressor from the emergency puncture repair kit

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position **0** and locate the cable and air hose.
2. Unscrew the wheel's dust cap and screw in the air hose valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.
3. Connect the cable to one of the car's 12 V sockets and start the engine.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

4. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I**.

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified on the tyre pressure label on the driver side door pillar. (Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

6. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and cable.
7. Refit the dust cap.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 463)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 546)

When changing wheels

The car's wheels can be changed, e.g. to winter wheels or a spare wheel.

Follow the relevant instructions for removing and fitting wheels.

When changing to another tyre dimension

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop for updating the software at each change of tyre dimension. A software download may be necessary both when changing to larger and smaller dimensions, and also when switching between summer and winter wheels.

Related information

- Removing a wheel (p. 468)
- Fitting the wheels (p. 470)
- Tools in the cargo area (p. 472)
- Winter wheels (p. 472)
- Spare wheel* (p. 471)
- Wheel bolts (p. 471)

Removing a wheel

Instructions for removing a wheel when changing wheels.

1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being changed in a trafficked location.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage gear position **P**.

   Applies to cars with **Leveling Control***: If the car is equipped with air suspension, this must be disabled before the car is raised with a jack.

   Deactivate the function via the top view of the centre display by pressing **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **Suspension** and selecting **Deactivate Suspension & Leveling Control**.

⚠ WARNING

Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.

3. Take out the jack*, wheel wrench* and tools for the wheel bolts' plastic caps that are fitted in the foam block.

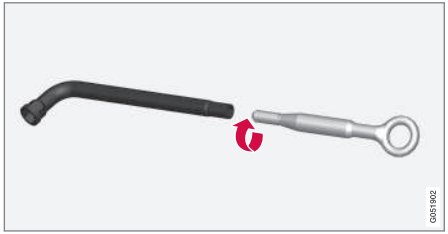
Tool for removing the plastic caps on the wheel bolts.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

NOTE

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture, changing to winter/summer wheels, etc. Only the jack for the specific car model may be used to raise the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

4. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels which will remain on the ground to prevent them from rolling. Use heavy wooden blocks or large stones for example.
5. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench* to the stop position.



IMPORTANT

The towing eye must be screwed all the way into the wheel bolt wrench.

6. Remove the plastic caps from the wheel bolts with the intended tool.
7. Loosen the wheel bolts ½-1 turn anticlockwise with the wheel wrench.

WARNING

Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.

IMPORTANT

The ground must be firm, smooth and level.

8. When raising the car it is important that the jack or lifting arms are fitted in the intended points on the car's underbody. The triangle markings in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the jacking/lifting points. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess for the jack at each point.

Crank up the jack so that it makes contact with the car's jacking point. Check that the head of the jack is correctly positioned in the jacking point so that the bump in the centre of the head fits into the jacking point hole and the base is positioned vertically below the jacking point. Also make sure you turn the jack so that the crank is as far away from the side of the car as possible, at which point the jack's arms are perpendicular to the direction of the car.

WARNING

Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.

Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack. If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.

9. Lift the car so that the wheel is free. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 468)
- Raise the car (p. 484)
- Fitting the wheels (p. 470)
- Tools in the cargo area (p. 472)

Fitting the wheels

Instructions for fitting a wheel when changing wheels.

WARNING

Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.

Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack. If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.

1. Clean the contact surfaces between wheel and hub.
2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.
3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm. Check the tightening torque with a torque wrench.

5. Refit the plastic caps on the wheel bolts.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

Related information

- Removing a wheel (p. 468)
- When changing wheels (p. 468)
- Spare wheel* (p. 471)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to attach the wheels to the hubs.

IMPORTANT

The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. Overtightening can damage the nuts and the bolts.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories. Check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts with a torque wrench.

Locking wheel bolts*

In the foam block under the cargo area floor there is space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 468)

Spare wheel*

The spare wheel, the Temporary spare type, can be used to temporarily replace a punctured normal wheel.

The spare wheel is located in the spare wheel well with the outside down. The same bolt runs through to secure the spare wheel and the foam block. The foam block contains all the tools needed to change the wheels.

The car's handling may be altered by the use of the spare wheel. The spare wheel must be replaced by a normal wheel as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is smaller than the regular wheel, which will affect the car's ground clearance. Pay attention to high kerbs and do not machine wash the car.

- Follow the manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure for the spare wheel.
- On all-wheel drive cars the drive on the rear axle can be disconnected.
- If the spare wheel is fitted on the front axle, it is not possible to use snow chains at the same time.
- The spare wheel must not be repaired.

IMPORTANT

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.

Taking out the spare wheel

1. Fold up the cargo area floor, from the rear and forwards.
2. Undo the retaining screw.
3. Lift out the foam block with its tools.
4. Lift out the spare wheel.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 468)

Winter wheels

Winter wheels are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

NOTE

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice about which wheel rim and type of tyre are most suitable.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

NOTE

The legal provisions for the use of studded tyres vary from country to country.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm.

Snow chains

Volvo recommends that snow chains are not used on wheel dimensions greater than 19 inches.

Mounting instructions are supplied with Volvo original snow chains.

Snow chains may only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars). Never drive faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) with snow chains. Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.

WARNING

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.

In the event of uncertainty about the show chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 468)

Tools in the cargo area

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are found in the car's cargo area.

The foam block under the cargo area floor contains the car's towing eye, emergency puncture repair kit, tools to remove the wheel bolts' plastic caps, the jack* and the wheel wrench*. There is also space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 468)
- Jack* (p. 473)
- Warning triangle (p. 473)
- First aid kit (p. 474)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Warning triangle

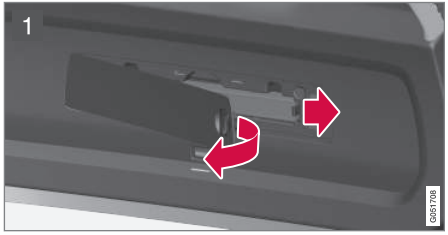
Use the warning triangle to warn other road users if the car is stationary in traffic.

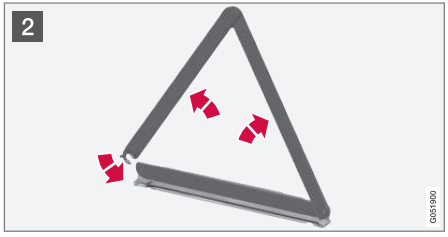
Also activate the hazard warning flashers.

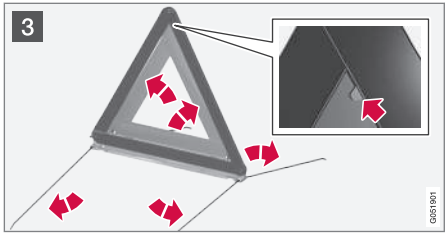
Storage spaces

The warning triangle is located in the compartment on the inside of the tailgate.

Folding up the warning triangle







1. Open the hatch by first turning the knob 90 degrees and then pulling the hatch from its attachment in the top and bottom edges.

   Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2. Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3. Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

Related information

- Tools in the cargo area (p. 472)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 136)

Jack*

Use the jack to raise the car, such as when changing a wheel.

Only use the original jack when fitting a spare wheel or when changing between summer and winter wheels. The jack's thread must always be well greased.

IMPORTANT

The tools and jack* must be stored in the intended location in the car's cargo area when not in use.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

NOTE

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture, changing to winter/summer wheels, etc. Only the jack for the specific car model may be used to raise the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

Applies to cars with level control*
If the car is equipped with air suspension then this must be deactivated before the car is raised with the jack.

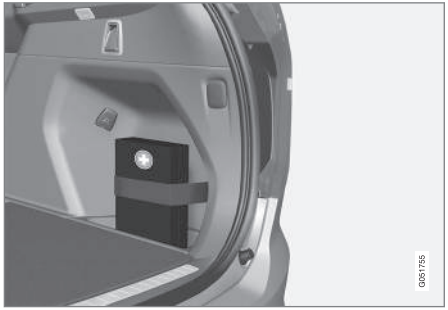
Switch off the function via the centre display:

1. Press on **Settings** in the top view:
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Suspension** .
3. Select **Deactivate Suspension & Leveling Control**.

Related information
- Tools in the cargo area (p. 472)
- Raise the car (p. 484)

First aid kit
The first aid kit contains first aid equipment.

First-aid kit is located on the right-hand side of the cargo area.



Related information
- Tools in the cargo area (p. 472)

Size designation for wheel rim
Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

All wheel rims have a dimension designations, for example: 8Jx18x42.5.

8	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
18	Rim diameter in inches
42,5	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Related information
- Tyres (p. 450)
- Size designation for tyre (p. 475)

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Size designation for tyre

Designations for tyre dimension, load index and speed rating.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Designation of dimensions

All tyres have a dimension designation, such as 235/60 R18 103 H.

235	Tyre width (mm)
60	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
18	Rim diameter in inches
103	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
H	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 210 km/h (130 mph).)

Load index

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres. The lowest permitted load index is specified in a load index table.

Speed rating

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed. Tyre speed rating, SS (Speed Symbol), must at least correspond with the car's top speed. The table below shows the maximum permitted speed for each speed rating (SS). The only exception to these regulations is winter tyres [25], where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is chosen, the car must not be driven faster than the speed rating of the tyre (for example, class Q can be driven at a maximum of 160 km/h (100 mph).) The top speed at which the car can be driven depends on road conditions, not the speed rating of the tyres.

NOTE

The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

Q	160 km/h (100 mph) (used only on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

WARNING

The lowest permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for the tyres for each respective engine variant are shown in the car's registration document. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat and be damaged.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 450)
- Size designation for wheel rim (p. 474)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 546)

[25] Both those with metal studs and those without.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature to guarantee the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Related information

- Servicing the climate control system (p. 491)

Car status

The car's general status can be shown in the centre display along with the opportunity to book service.

The **Car status** app is started from app view in the centre display and has three tabs:

- **Messages** - saved status messages
- **Status** - check of tyre pressure and engine oil level
- **Appointments** - booking of service and repair work.

Related information

- Managing messages saved from the driver display and centre display (p. 100)
- Check tyre pressure with the tyre pressure monitoring system (p. 455)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 489)
- Book service and repair (p. 478)

Book service and repair[3]

Manage service, repair and booking information directly from your online car.

The information is handled in the **Car status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display.

This service provides, for certain markets, a convenient way to book service and workshop visits directly from your car. Vehicle data is sent to your dealer, who can prepare the workshop visit. The dealer will get back to you with a booking suggestion. For certain markets, the system will remind you of a scheduled appointment time as it approaches and the navigation system[4] can also guide you to the workshop when the time comes. You also have information on your dealer available in the car and can contact your workshop at any time.

Before the service can be used

Volvo ID

- Create a Volvo ID, see section "Volvo ID".
- Register the Volvo ID for your car, see section "Volvo ID". If a Volvo ID already exists, use the same e-mail address that was used when the Volvo ID was created.

3 Applies to certain markets.
4 Applies to Sensus Navigation*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

Changing contact address
If you would like to change to another e-mail address, you can contact a Volvo dealer.

Selecting a Volvo dealer
Select the Volvo dealer you would like to contact for service and repairs by going to www.volvocars.com and navigating to My Volvo.

Prerequisite for booking from car
For the car to send and receive booking information, it must be connected to the Internet, see section "Online car".

Using the service

When it is time for service, and in some cases when the car is in need of repair, a message will appear in the driver display and at the top of the centre display. The service date is determined by how much time has passed, hours that the engine has been running, or distance driven since the last service.

You can also book a workshop visit later via the My Volvo owner's portal. To ensure that your dealer has the latest information on your car you can send vehicle data, see section "Sending Vehicle Data" below.

Book service or repair
Fill in the appointment request when desired or when a message stating that service or repairs are needed is shown in the driver display and at the top of the centre display.

Filling in and sending an appointment request.
The car's engine must be running for it to be possible to send an appointment request.

1. Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press the **Appointments** button.
3. Press the **Request appoint.** button.
4. Make sure that the correct **Volvo ID** is filled in.
5. Make sure that the desired **Workshop** is filled in.
6. Select **Preferred technician**[5].
7. Select **I prefer to wait during the visit** or **I prefer to leave the car**[5].
8. If **I prefer to leave the car** has been selected, also select **I would like alternative transportation** if you would like a courtesy car[5].
9. Fill in information for the workshop in the field **Tap to write information to the workshop**, e.g. if there is anything you would like done during the workshop visit or any other important information to your workshop.

Or press the button and speak the information. The information is then entered in the information field in your appointment request.

5 Applies to certain markets.

10. Press the **Send appointment request** button.
    > You will receive an appointment suggestion to your car within a couple of days.[6]. You will also receive the same communication via e-mail and when you visit Min Volvo.

    In certain markets, once you have sent the appointment request, the message that the car needs service is extinguished in the driver display.
11. Press the **Cancel request** button to cancel your request.

The appointment request contains vehicle data when it is sent from your car to the workshop via your Internet connection. This information facilitates planning for the workshop.

Accept the appointment suggestion

The car will retrieve appointment suggestions via your Internet connection when it is available. When the car has received an appointment suggestion, a message will be shown at the top of the centre display.

1. Tap the message.
2. If the suggested booking is acceptable, tap on the **Accept** button. Otherwise press either of the **Send new proposal** or **Decline** buttons.

When an appointment suggestion is accepted, the reply will be sent to the workshop via your Internet connection.

Sending vehicle data

The car's engine must be running for it to be possible to send vehicle data.

You can send vehicle data at any time from your car, e.g. if you book a workshop visit directly via the My Volvo owner's portal, and will help your workshop with better basic information.

1. Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press the **Appointments** button.
3. Press the **Send car data** button.
    > A message that vehicle data are being sent is shown at the top of the centre display. You can cancel data transmission by tapping the X in the activity indicator.

    The vehicle data are sent via your Internet connection.

See workshop information

1. Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press the **Appointments** button.
3. Press the **Workshop information** button.
    > A pop-up window with information on your dealer will open.
4. Call your dealer if you like, or tap on the address or GPS coordinates to start navigation to your workshop[4].

Booking information and vehicle data

When you decide to book a service or send data from your car, the booking information and vehi-

6 This time frame may vary depending on market.

4 Applies to Sensus Navigation*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

cle data will be sent via you Internet connection. The vehicle data make it easier for your workshop to plan your next visit.

The vehicle data consists of information in the following areas:

- Service requirement
- time since last service
- function status
- fluid levels
- Meter reading
- The car's vehicle identification number (VIN[7])
- The car's software version
- the car's diagnostics data.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 20)
- Online car (p. 430)
- Car status (p. 478)

Remote updates

Several of the car's systems can be updated from the centre display with an online car.

The **Remote update service** app is started from app view in the centre display and enables:

- searching for and updating system software
- updating map data for Sensus Navigation
- downloading, updating and uninstalling apps.

Related information

- System updates (p. 481)
- Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps (p. 436)

System updates

System updates are intended for the Internet-connected and infotainment components of the car. If system software updates are available, the updates can be made all at once or one at a time.

System updates are handled via the **Remote update service** app in the centre display's application view. A tap on the button starts a download application in the home view's bottom subview. If no search for available updates has been performed since the last time the infotainment system was started, a search is performed. No search is performed if a software installation is in progress. An icon in the download application's button **System updates** shows how many updates are available. A tap on the button shows a list of updates that can be installed in the car. For more information and answers to common questions regarding function and to download certain system updates, go in to support.volvocars.com.

In order for system updates to be possible, the car must be online.

Background searching for software updates is activated when the car is supplied from the factory.

7 Vehicle Identification Number.

NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

NOTE

An update can be interrupted when the ignition is switched off and the car is left.

However, the update does not have to be completed before the car is left, this is because the update is resumed the next time the car is used.

Update all system software

– Select **Install all** at the bottom of the list.

If no list is desired, then **Install all** can be selected at the **System updates** button instead.

Update individual system software programs

– Select **Install** for the software required.

Cancelling the download

– Tap on X in the activity indicator that has replaced the button **Install** at the start of the download.

Note that only the download can be cancelled, when the installation phase has started, this cannot be cancelled.

Background search for software updates

The function can be deactivated via the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Remote Update Service**.
3. Deselect **Auto Software Update**.

If an update is available, the message **New software updates available** is shown in the centre display's status bar. A tap on the message starts a download application in the home view's bottom subview. As soon as the download application has started, an icon in the download application's button **System updates** shows how many updates are available.

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Downloading, updating and uninstalling apps (p. 436)
- Remote updates (p. 481)

Data transmission between car and workshop[8]

The time required for a booked visit to a Volvo workshop can be shortened by transmitting troubleshooting data as soon as the car stops at the workshop.

The data can be transmitted most conveniently by selecting the option **Automatically connect when I arrive** in settings view in the centre display.

Each time the car slows to a slow enough speed it starts searching for a Wi-Fi network. If an authorised Volvo network (at a workshop) is found, a message is displayed or a pop-up window opens in the centre display. (This does not apply when you connect manually, see the section "Connecting to a workshop manually" below).

Connecting to a workshop automatically

NOTE

To avoid the driver being disturbed by unwanted connection inquiries (for example, if the car is often parked in the neighbourhood of a workshop with an authorised Volvo network), the connection mode will change to manual if the driver declines connection twice within a period of 5 days.

Without driver confirmation
This option provides the most convenient way of transmitting troubleshooting data. The car connects without the need for the driver to confirm.

If the car stops at the workshop and the engine is switched off with the start knob, a message is shown at the top in the centre display. The car will connect automatically when the driver's door is opened unless the driver presses the **Cancel** message button.

With driver confirmation
This option requires confirmation by the driver for the car to connect.

If the car stops at the workshop and the engine is switched off with the start knob, a pop-up window opens in the centre display. The car will connect automatically when the driver's door is opened provided the driver presses the **Connect** button in the pop-up window. If the driver does nothing, or presses the **Abort** button in the pop-up window, no connection will be made.

Connecting to a workshop manually

Manual connection is made by the service technician.

Changing the connection mode

The way the car connects can be changed in the settings view in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Volvo Service Networks**.
3. Select **Automatically connect when I arrive**, **Ask before connecting** or **Never connect and never ask** (manual connection).

Related information

- Online car (p. 430)
- Settings view (p. 161)

[8] This functionality will be gradually introduced in connection with the service workshops extending their services.

Raise the car

When raising the car it is important that the car jack or the workshop/garage jack is fitted to the intended points on the car's underbody.

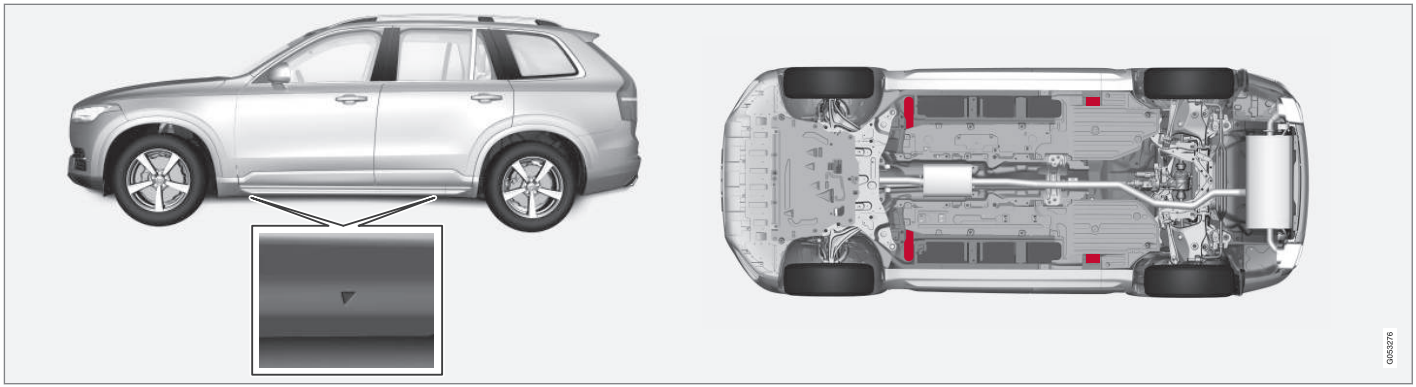
For cars with level control*, air suspension, if fitted, must be switched off before the car is raised. Switch off the function via the centre display:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Suspension** .
3. Select **Deactivate Suspension & Leveling Control**.

NOTE

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



The triangles in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the lifting points (marked in red).

If the car is raised with a workshop jack, it must be positioned under one of the four lifting points. Ensure that the workshop jack is positioned so that the car cannot slide off the jack. Make sure the jack plate is equipped with a rubber pad so that the car will be stable and not be damaged. Always use axle stands or similar.

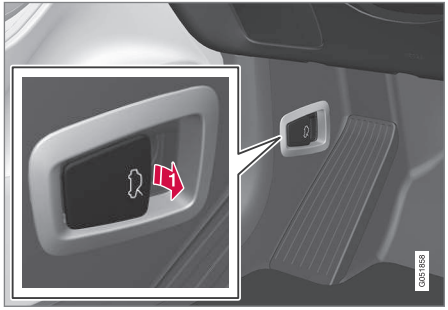
Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 468)
- Jack* (p. 473)

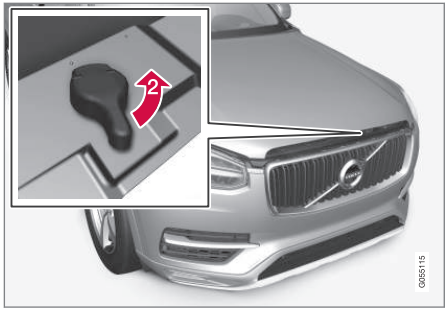
Opening and closing the bonnet

The bonnet can be opened using the handle in the passenger compartment and a handle under the bonnet.

Open the bonnet



1. Pull the handle near the foot pedals to release the bonnet from its fully closed position.



2. Turn the handle under the bonnet anticlockwise to release the bonnet from the lock catches and lift the bonnet.

Warning - bonnet not closed

When the bonnet is released, the warning symbol and the graphics in the driver display will light up and an acoustic reminder will sound. If the car starts rolling, an acoustic warning signal will repeat.

For more information on graphics, see section "Door and seatbelt reminder".

NOTE

If the warning symbol is lit or the warning signal is heard despite the bonnet being closed properly, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Close the bonnet

1. Push the bonnet down until it starts to fall from its own weight.
2. When the bonnet stops against the lock catch, push the bonnet to close it completely.

WARNING

Risk of crushing! Ensure that the closing path under the bonnet is not obstructed, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury.

WARNING

Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed. The bonnet must engage at both sides audibly.

Bonnet completely closed.

WARNING

Never drive with an open bonnet!

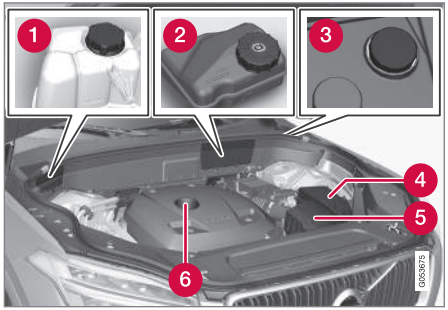
If there are any signs that the bonnet is not properly closed whilst driving, stop immediately and close it.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 487)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 57)

Engine compartment overview

The overview shows some service-related components.



The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on engine variant.

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Reservoir for brake fluid (located on the driver's side)
3. Washer fluid filler pipe[9]
4. Central electrical unit
5. Air filter
6. Engine oil filler pipe

WARNING

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start automatically some after the engine has been switched off.

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

WARNING

The ignition system works at a very high and hazardous voltage. The car's electrical system must always be in ignition position **0** when work is being performed in the engine compartment.

Do not touch the spark plugs or ignition coil when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or when the engine is hot.

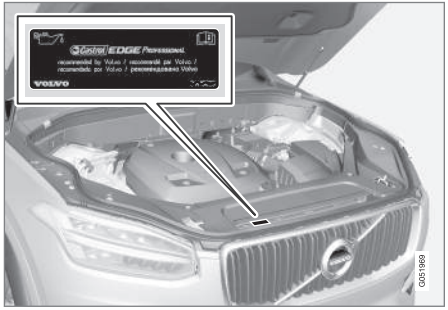
Related information

- Opening and closing the bonnet (p. 486)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 500)
- Topping up coolant (p. 490)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 508)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 489)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

[9] Fill the washer fluid at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling.

Engine oil

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied.



G051969

Volvo recommends:

Castrol EDGE PROFESSIONAL

G053097

IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo Car Corporation disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low oil pressure. Certain engine variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the driver display's warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the driver display's warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade.

Related information

- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 489)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 539)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 537)

Checking and filling with engine oil

The oil level is detected with the electronic oil level sensor.

Filler pipe[10].

In some cases, oil may need to be topped up between service intervals.

Action with regard to engine oil level does not need to be taken until a message is shown in the driver display.

WARNING

If this symbol is shown together with the message **Engine oil level Service required**, visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The oil level may be too high.

IMPORTANT

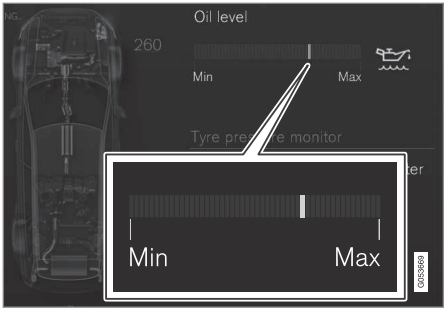
If this symbol is shown together with a message about low oil level, such as **Engine oil level low Top up 0.5 litres of engine oil** for example, only fill the volume specified, such as 0.5 litres, for example.

WARNING

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

Check the oil level

Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display and press **Status** to display oil level.



Graphics for oil level in the centre display.

The oil level is checked using the electronic oil level gauge in the centre display when the engine is switched off.

NOTE

The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The car must have been driven approx. 30 km and have been stationary for 5 minutes with the engine switched off and on level ground before the oil level indication is correct.

10 Engines with electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.

NOTE

If the right conditions for measuring the oil level (time after engine shutdown, the car's inclination, outside temperature, etc.) are not met, then the message **No values available** will be shown in the centre display. This does **not** mean that there is something wrong in the car's systems.

Related information

- Engine oil (p. 488)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 537)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 539)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)
- Car status (p. 478)

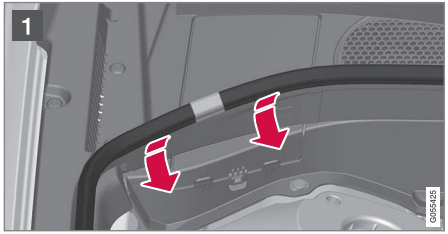
Topping up coolant

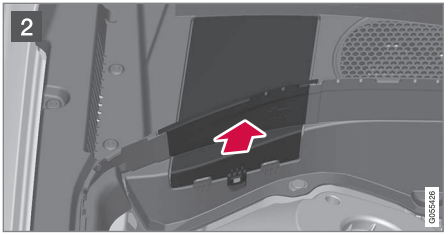
The coolant cools the internal combustion engine to the correct operating temperature. The heat that is transferred from the engine to the coolant can be used to heat the passenger compartment.

When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

WARNING

Coolant can be very hot. If the coolant requires topping up when the engine is at operating temperature, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to gently release the overpressure.





1. Lift off the rubber strip by pressing it inward in the engine compartment.
2. Detach the flap in the plastic cover by folding out the release catch and turning the flap upward.
3. Screw off the cap and top up with coolant. The level must lie between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the expansion tank.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

IMPORTANT

- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.
- Always use coolant with anti-corrosion agent as recommended by Volvo.
- Ensure that the coolant mixture is 50% water and 50% coolant.
- Mix the coolant with approved quality tap water. In the event of any doubt about water quality, used ready-mixed coolant in accordance with Volvo recommendations.
- When changing coolant/replacing cooling system components, flush the cooling system clean with approved quality tap water or flush with ready-mixed coolant.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.

Related information

- Coolant — specifications (p. 540)

Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light must be used during leak detection.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Cars with R134a refrigerant

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

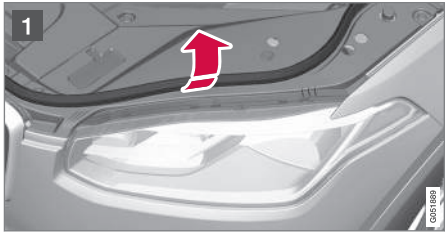
Related information

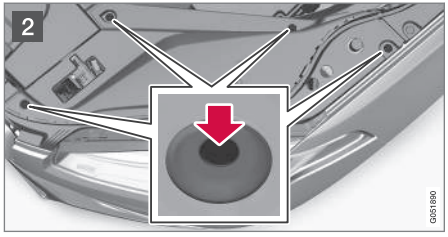
- Volvo service programme (p. 478)

Bulb replacement

The bulbs in halogen headlamps can be replaced by the driver.

The bulbs in the halogen headlamp can be replaced without the help of a workshop, but the plastic cover over the headlamp must be removed before the bulbs can be replaced.





1 Lift off the rubber strip by pressing it inward in the engine compartment.

2 Release the pins in the plastic cover's four clips by pressing down the pins with a screwdriver or similar and removing the cover.

Refit the cover in reverse order.

NOTE

The pins in the clips need to be pressed back completely before the clips are refitted in the cover.

When the cover is refitted the pins must be pressed in until their end surfaces are level with the surfaces of the clips.

The dipped beam bulb becomes accessible when the headlamp's round rubber cover is removed.

Bulbs for the direction indicator, main beam and the daytime running light/position lamp become accessible when the headlamp's oval cover is removed.

Contact a workshop[11] if faults occur in other lamps. This also applies to the bulbs for reversing lights. If a fault occurs in LED[12] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

WARNING

The car's electrical system must be in ignition position **0** when replacing bulbs.

IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

NOTE

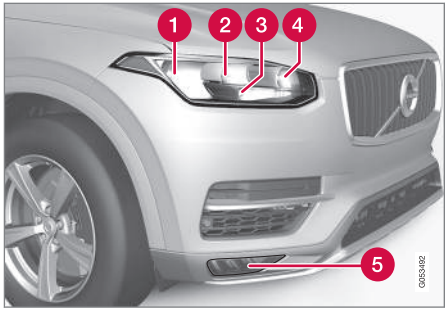
If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend visiting an authorised Volvo workshop.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

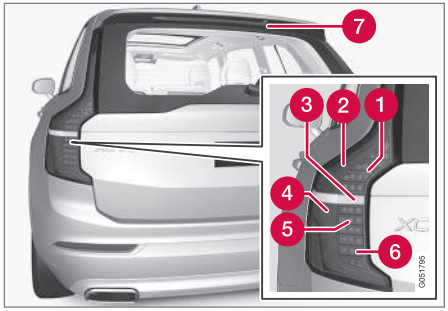
11 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
12 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Lamps, front (car with halogen headlamps)



1. Dipped beam
2. Main beam
3. Daytime running lights/position lamps
4. Indicator
5. Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED[12])

Lamps, rear



1. Brake light (LED[12])
2. Position lamps (LED)
3. Reversing lamp[13]
4. Position lamps (LED)
5. Direction indicator (LED)
6. Fog lamp (LED)
7. Brake light - central, high-level (LED)

Related information

- Replacing the dipped beam bulb (p. 494)
- Removing the headlamp's oval cover (p. 494)
- Bulb specifications (p. 497)
- Ignition positions (p. 356)

12 LED (Light Emitting Diode)
13 Contact a workshop for replacement - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

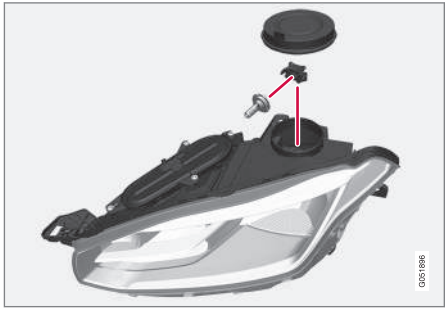
Replacing the dipped beam bulb

The dipped beam bulb in halogen headlamps can be replaced by the driver.

Before the bulb can be replaced, the plastic cover over the headlamp must be removed; see the section "Bulb replacement".

IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.



1. Detach the headlamp's round rubber cover.
2. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
3. Detach the bulb by pulling straight out.
4. Replace the bulb.
5. The guide pin on the bulb must be facing straight up when it is inserted into the socket.
6. Press in the connector.
7. Refit the headlamp's round rubber cover.

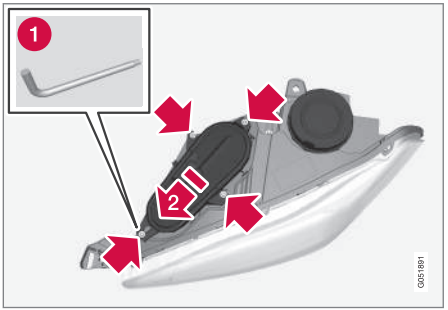
Related information

- Bulb replacement (p. 492)
- Bulb specifications (p. 497)

Removing the headlamp's oval cover

Most of the headlamp's bulbs become accessible when the oval cover has been removed.

Before the oval cover can be removed, the plastic cover over the headlamp must be removed; see the section "Bulb replacement".



1. Unscrew the cover's four screws using a Torx tool, size T20 (1). They must not be screwed all the way out, 3 - 4 turns is enough.
2. Slide the cover to one side.
3. Remove the cover.

Reinstall the cover in reverse order.

Related information

- Replacing the main beam lamp (p. 495)
- Replacing daytime running light bulb/position lamp bulb, front (p. 496)
- Replacing the front direction indicator bulb (p. 496)
- Bulb replacement (p. 492)

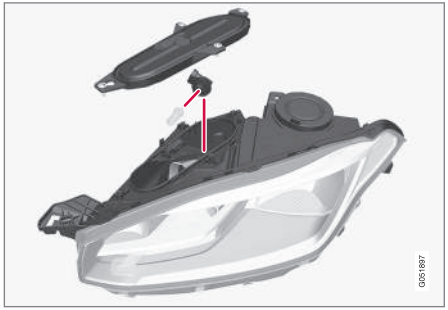
Replacing the main beam lamp

The main beam lamp in halogen headlamps can be replaced by the driver.

Before the bulb can be replaced, the oval cover of the headlamp must be removed; see the section "Removing the headlamp's oval cover".

IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.



1. Detach the bulb by turning the bulb holder upward and then pulling straight out.
2. Carefully prize the plastic cover at the connector's lock lug so that it releases.
3. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
4. Replace the bulb.
5. Fit the bulb in the socket and turn downward. The lamp can only be secured in one position.

Related information

- Removing the headlamp's oval cover (p. 494)
- Bulb specifications (p. 497)

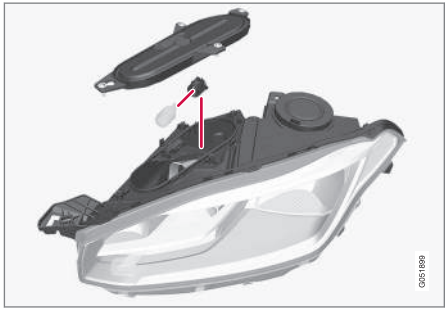
Replacing daytime running light bulb/position lamp bulb, front

The bulb for the daytime running light/position lamp in halogen headlamps can be replaced by the driver.

Before the bulb can be replaced, the oval cover of the headlamp must be removed; see the section "Removing the headlamp's oval cover".

NOTE

Detach the main beam bulb by rotating the bulb holder upwards and pulling straight out. The position/warning lamp bulb will then be easier to reach.



1. Pull the bulb holder straight out.
2. Detach the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Fit the bulb holder into the socket and press it into place.
5. If the main beam bulb has been removed, fit it into the socket and screw in. The lamp can only be secured in one position.

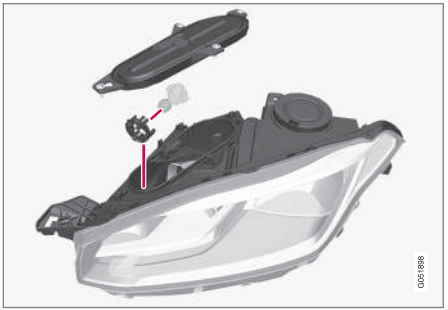
Related information

- Removing the headlamp's oval cover (p. 494)
- Bulb specifications (p. 497)

Replacing the front direction indicator bulb

The direction indicator bulb in halogen headlamps can be replaced by the driver.

Before the bulb can be replaced, the oval cover of the headlamp must be removed; see the section "Removing the headlamp's oval cover".



1. Press the catches together and pull the bulb holder straight out.
2. Replace with a new bulb holder with bulb.
3. Fit the bulb holder into the socket and press it into place.

Related information

- Removing the headlamp's oval cover (p. 494)
- Bulb specifications (p. 497)

Bulb specifications

The specifications apply to bulbs in halogen headlamps. Contact a workshop[14] if a fault occurs in any other lamp.

Function	[W][A]	Type
Dipped beam	55	H7
Main beam	65	H9
Direction indicators	24	PY24W
Daytime running lights/ position lamps	21/5	W21/5W

A Watt

Related information

- Bulb replacement (p. 492)

Wiper blades in service position

The windscreen wiper blades must be in service position when, for example, they are to be replaced.

Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (e.g. for scraping off ice from the windscreen) they must be in service position.

IMPORTANT

Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

Activating service position

Service mode cannot be activated when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Service mode can be activated in two ways via the centre display:

Via function view

Press the **Wiper Service Position** button. The light indicator in the button illuminates when the service position is activated. Upon activation, the wipers move to standing straight up.

Via settings

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Wipers**.
3. Select **Wiper Service Position**.
   > The wipers move up to standing straight up.

Deactivating service position

Service position can be deactivated in different ways:

14 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Via function view

Press the **Wiper Service Position** button in the centre display. The light indicator in the button extinguishes when the service position is deactivated.

Via settings

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Wipers**.
3. Deselect **Wiper Service Position** to deactivate service position.

The wiper blades also exit service position if:

- Windscreen wiping is activated.
- Windscreen washing is activated.
- Rain sensor activated.

IMPORTANT

If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the wipers are activated. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

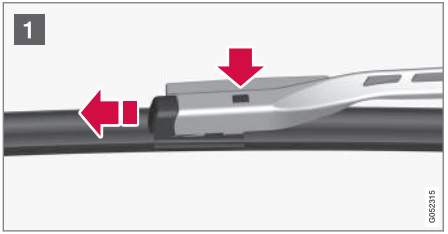
Related information

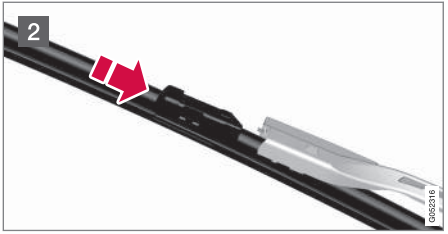
- Replacing a wiper blade (p. 498)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 500)
- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)
- Windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 142)

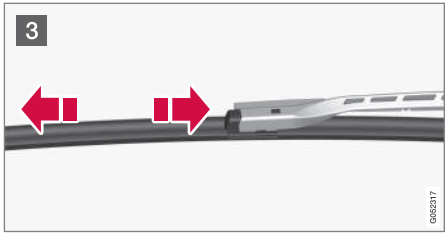
Replacing a wiper blade

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with the washer fluid they clean the windows and ensure visibility for driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

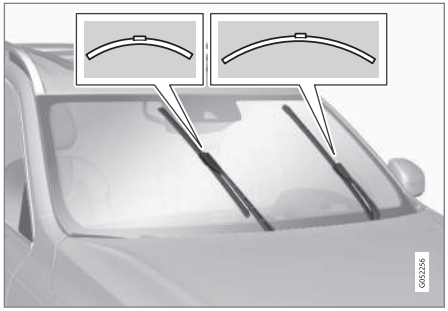
Replacing a windscreen wiper blade







1. Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.
2. Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.
3. Check that the blade is firmly installed.
4. Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

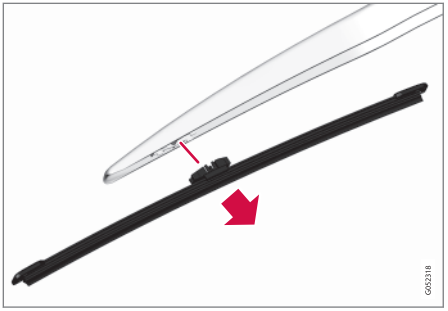


The wiper blades are different lengths.

NOTE

The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window



1. Fold out the wiper arm.
2. Grip the inner section of the blade (by the arrow).
3. Turn anticlockwise to use the blade's end position against the wiper arm as a lever to detach the blade more easily.
4. Press the new wiper blade into place. You should hear a click. Check that it is firmly installed.
5. Lower the wiper arm.

IMPORTANT

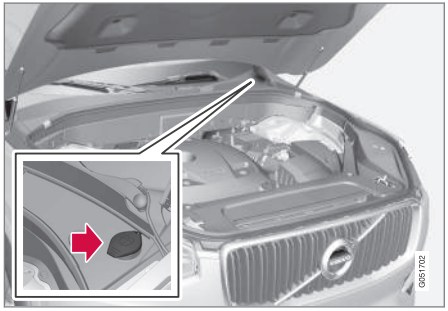
Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

Related information

- Wiper blades in service position (p. 497)
- Cleaning the exterior (p. 520)

Filling washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps and windows. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Washer fluid is filled by opening the blue cap.

NOTE

When approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remains in the reservoir the message **Washer fluid Level too low, refill** is shown in the driver display together with the symbol .

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo - with frost protection during cold weather and below freezing point.

IMPORTANT

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

IMPORTANT

Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid freezing in the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres.
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres.

Related information

- Windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 142)

Starter battery

The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

The starter battery is used to start up the electrical system and drive the starter motor as well as other electrical equipment in the car.

The starter battery should be replaced by a workshop.

The car has a voltage-regulated AC alternator.

The starter battery is a 12 V AGM battery, designed for the carbon dioxide reducing functions, Start/Stop and regenerative charging, and to support the functionality of the car's different systems.

The service life and function of the starter battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions etc.

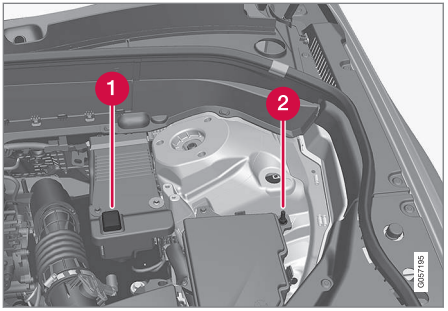
- Never disconnect the starter battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the starter battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

When connecting an external starter battery or battery charger, use the car's charging points in the engine compartment. The battery terminals on the car's starter battery in the cargo area must **not** be used.

During charging, both the starter battery and the support battery are charged.



1 Positive charging point

2 Negative charging point

IMPORTANT

When charging the starter battery and the support battery, only use a modern battery charger with controlled charging voltage. Fast charging function must not be used since it may damage the battery.

IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the energy saving function for infotainment may be temporarily disengaged, and/or the message in the driver display about the starter battery's state of charge may be temporarily inapplicable, following the connection of an external starter battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must **never** be used for connecting an external starter battery or battery charger - only the **car's negative charging point** may be used as the grounding point.

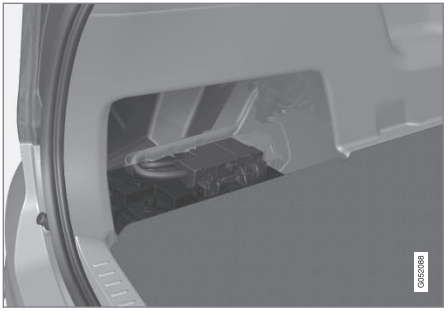
NOTE

The life of the battery is shortened if it becomes discharged repeatedly.

The life of the battery is affected by several factors, including driving conditions and climate. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a longer time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

To maintain the battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving/week is recommended or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging.

A battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.



The starter battery is located in the cargo area.

The following table shows specifications for the starter battery, which is available in two variants, depending on car's model variant.

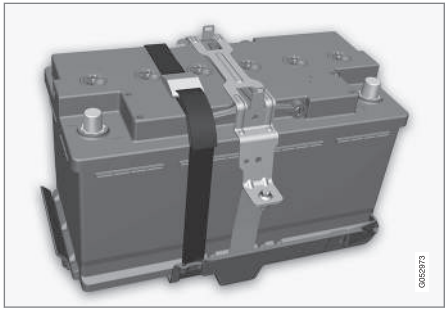
	Battery	
	H7 AGM	H8 AGM
Voltage (V)	12	12
Cold start capacity[A] - CCA[B] (A)	800	850

	Battery	
	H7 AGM	H8 AGM
Size , L×W×H (mm)	315×175×190	353×175×190
Capacity (Ah)	80	95

A According to EN standard.
B Cold Cranking Amperes.

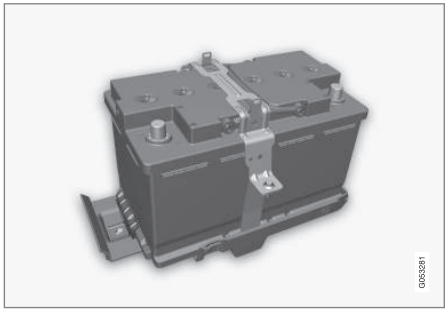
IMPORTANT

The H8 AGM battery has a retaining strap. Make sure the retaining strap is properly tightened.



H8 AGM battery with straps.

There are no straps for the H7 AGM battery.



H7 AGM battery.

Volvo recommends entrusting battery replacement to an authorised Volvo workshop.

IMPORTANT

When replacing the starter battery or support battery, a battery of AGM[15] type must be fitted.

IMPORTANT

If the starter battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

NOTE

The starter battery's container size must be consistent with the dimensions for the original battery.

Related information

- Symbols on the batteries (p. 504)
- Support battery (p. 504)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 359)

15 Absorbed Glass Mat.

Symbols on the batteries

There are information and warning symbols on the batteries.

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual for the car.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.
	Avoid sparks and naked flames.
	Risk of explosion.
	Must be taken for recycling.

NOTE

An expended starter battery or support battery must be recycled in an environmentally safe manner since it contains lead.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 501)
- Support battery (p. 504)

Support battery

Cars with Start/Stop function, in addition to the starter battery, are equipped with a support battery.

Cars with the Start/Stop function are equipped with two 12 V batteries - one extra powerful starter battery for starting and one support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function's starting sequence.

The support battery is located in a box next to the strut tower.

The following table shows specifications for the support battery.

Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity[A] - CCA[B] (A)	170

Size , LxWxH (mm)	150x90x130
Capacity (Ah)	10

A According to EN standard.
B Cold Cranking Amperes.

IMPORTANT

When replacing the starter battery or support battery, a battery of AGM[16] type must be fitted.

NOTE

- The higher the current take-off in the car, the more the alternator must be working and the batteries charging = Increased fuel consumption.
- When the capacity of the starter battery has fallen below the lowest permissible level then the Start/Stop function is disengaged.

Temporarily reduced Start/Stop function due to high current take-off means:

- The engine auto-starts without the driver lifting his/her foot from the foot brake pedal.

The support battery normally requires no more service than the normal starter battery. A workshop should be contacted in the event of questions or problems - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the Start/Stop function may temporarily cease to work after the connection of an external starter battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must **never** be used for connecting an external starter battery or battery charger - only the **car's negative charging point** may be used as the grounding point.

NOTE

If the starter battery has become so discharged that everything is "black" and in principle the car does not have all the normal electrical functions and the engine is subsequently started using an external battery or battery charger, then the Start/Stop function will be activated. It will then be possible for the engine to be auto-stopped but in the event of an auto-stop the Start/Stop function may fail to auto-start the engine due to inadequate capacity in the starter battery.

The battery must first be charged in order to ensure a successful auto-start after an auto-stop. At an outside temperature of +15 °C the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour. At a lower outside temperature a charging time of 3-4 hours is recommended. The recommendation is that the battery is charged using an external battery charger.

If this is not possible then the recommendation is to temporarily deactivate the Start/Stop function until the starter battery has been adequately recharged.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 501)
- Start/Stop (p. 366)

16 Absorbed Glass Mat.

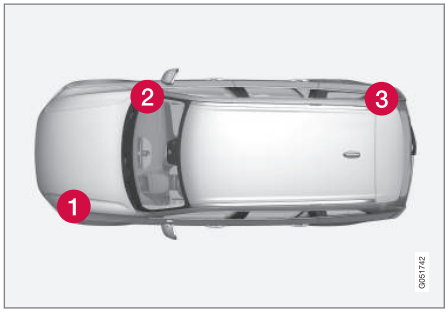
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 359)
- Symbols on the batteries (p. 504)

Fuses

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Location of central electrical units



Central electrical unit locations in a left-hand drive car. In a right-hand drive car the central electrical units under the glovebox change sides.

1. Engine compartment
2. Under the glovebox
3. Cargo area

Related information

- Replacing a fuse (p. 507)

Replacing a fuse

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

Changing

1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

WARNING

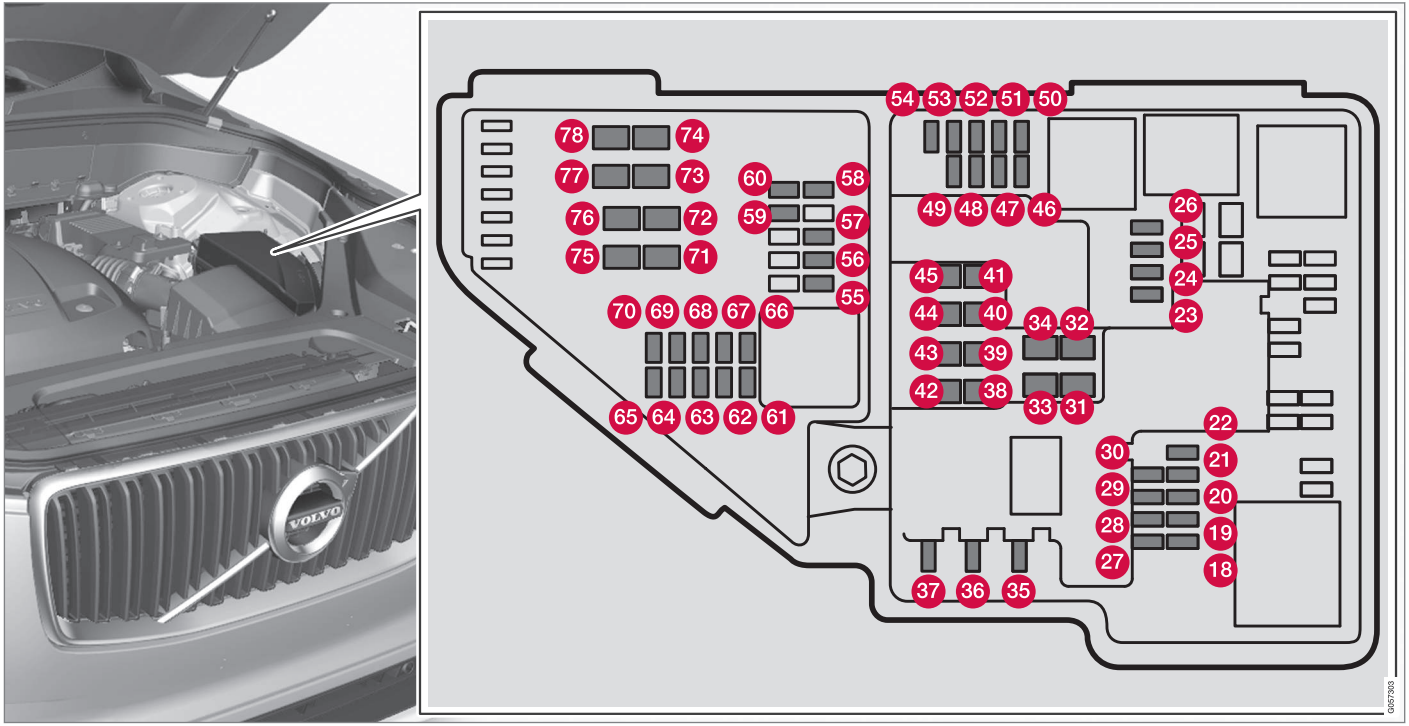
Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

Related information

- Fuses (p. 506)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 508)
- Fuses under glovebox (p. 512)
- Fuses in cargo area (p. 516)

Fuses in engine compartment

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The fuse box also provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

- Fuses 18-30, 35-37, 46-54 and 55-70 are of the "Micro" type.
- Fuses 31-34, 38-45 and 71-78 are of the "MCase" type and should be replaced by a workshop[17].

	Function	[A][A]
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	-	-
21	-	-
22	-	-
23	USB port in tunnel console, front*	5
24	12 V socket in tunnel console, front	15
25	12 V socket in tunnel console, by legroom for second seat row[B] 12 V socket in tunnel console, between the rear seats[C]; USB ports in tunnel console, between the rear seats[C]	15
26	12 V socket in cargo area* USB ports for iPad holder[C]	15
27	-	-
28	-	-
29	-	-
30	-	-
31	Heated windscreen* left-hand side	Shunt
32	Heated windscreen* left-hand side	40
33	Headlamp washers*	25
34	Windscreen washers	25
35	-	-
36	Horn	20
37	Siren*	5
38	Control module for brake system (valves, parking brake)	40
39	Windscreen wipers	30
40	Rear window washer	25
41	Heated windscreen* right-hand side	40
42	Parking heater*	20
43	Control unit for brake system (ABS pump)	40
44	-	-
45	Heated windscreen* right-hand side	Shunt

17 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	[A]A
46	Supplied when the ignition is switched on: Engine control module; Transmission components; Electric steering servo; Central electronic module Control module for brake system	5
47	-	-
48	Right-hand headlamp	7.5
49	-	-
50	-	-
51	Module for controlling battery engagement	5
52	Airbags	5
53	Left-hand headlamp	7.5
54	Accelerator pedal sensor	5
55	Transmission control module	15
56	Engine Control Module (ECM)	5

	Function	[A]A
57	-	-
58	-	-
59	-	-
60	-	-
61	Engine control module; Actuator; Throttle unit; EGR valve (diesel); Position sensor for turbo (diesel); Valve for turbocharger (petrol)	20
62	Solenoids (petrol); Valves; Thermostat for engine cooling system (petrol); EGR cooling pump (diesel); Glow control module (diesel)	10
63	Vacuum regulators; Valve	7.5
64	Control module, spoiler roller cover; Control module, radiator roller cover	5
65	-	-
66	Lambda sond, front; Lambda sond, rear (petrol); Soot sensor (diesel)	15

	Function	[A]A
67	Solenoid for engine oil pump; Solenoid clutch A/C; Lambda sond, centre (petrol); Lambda sond, rear (diesel)	15
68	-	-
69	Engine Control Module (ECM)	20
70	Ignition coils (petrol); Spark plugs (petrol)	15
71	Fuel filter heater (diesel)	30
72	-	-
73	-	-
74	-	-
75	-	-
76	-	-
77	Starter motor	Shunt
78	Starter motor	40

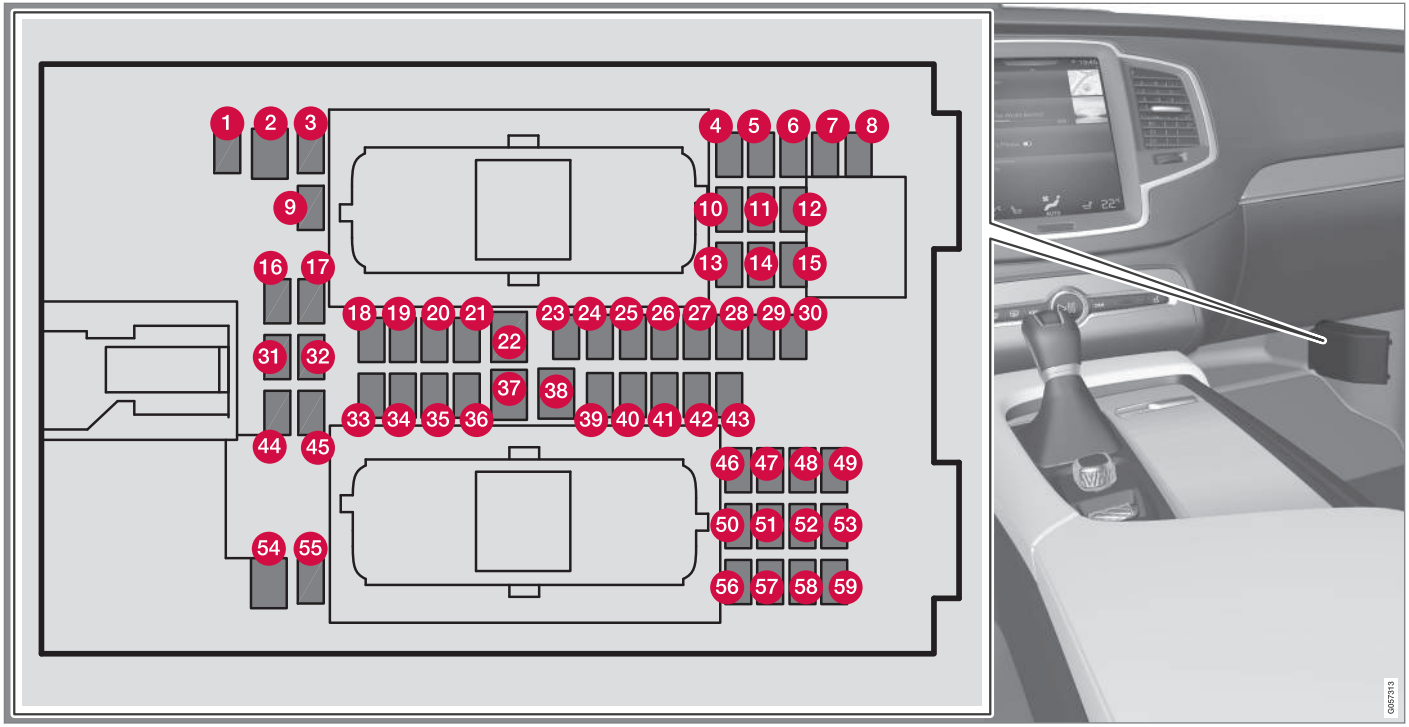
A Ampere
B Not Excellence
C Excellence

Related information

- Replacing a fuse (p. 507)
- Fuses under glovebox (p. 512)
- Fuses in cargo area (p. 516)

Fuses under glovebox

Fuses under the glovebox protect, amongst other things, the 230 V socket, displays and door modules.



On the inside of the cover for the **fuse box in the engine compartment** there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The **fuse box in the engine compartment** also provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

- Fuses 1, 3-21, 23-36, 39-53 and 55-59 are of the "Micro" type.
- Fuses 2, 22, 37-38 and 54 are of the "MCase" type and should be replaced by a workshop[18].

	Function	[A][A]
1	-	-
2	230 V socket in tunnel console, by legroom for second seat row*[B] 230 V socket in tunnel console, between the rear seats[C]	30
3	-	-
4	Movement detector*	5
5	Media player	5
6	Driver display	5
7	Keypad in centre console	5
8	Sun sensor	5
9	-	-
10	-	-
11	Steering wheel module	5
12	Module for ignition dial and for parking brake control	5
13	Steering wheel module for heated steering wheel*	15
14	-	-
15	-	-
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	Control module for climate control system	10
19	Steering lock	7.5
20	Diagnostic socket OBDII	10
21	Centre display	5
22	Fan module for climate control system, front	40
23	-	-
24	Controls lighting; Interior lighting; Dimming of interior rearview mirror*; Rain and light sensor*; Keypad in tunnel console, by legroom for second seat row*[B]; Power front seats* Power rear seats[C]; Display for rear seat comfort functions[C]; Modules for seat comfort (massage) rear[C]	7.5
25	Control module for driver support functions	5
26	Panorama roof with sun blind*	20
27	Head-up display*	5
28	Passenger compartment lighting	5
29	-	-
30	Display in roof console (Seatbelt reminder/Indicator for airbag on the front passenger seat)	5
31	-	-

18 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

	Function	[A][A]
32	Humidity sensor	5
33	Door module in right-hand rear door	20
34	Fuses in cargo area	10
35	Control module for Internet-connected car; Control module for telematics	5
36	Door module in left-hand rear door	20
37	Audio control unit (amplifier)	40
38	Fan module for climate control system, rear*	40
39	Module for multi-band antenna	5
40	Modules for seat comfort (massage) front*	5
41	-	-
42	Rear window wiper	15
43	Control module for fuel pump	15
44	-	-

	Function	[A][A]
45	-	-
46	Seat heating, driver's side front	15
47	Seat heating, passenger side front	15
48	Coolant pump	10
49	-	-
50	Door module in left-hand front door	20
51	Control module for suspension (active chassis)*	20
52	-	-
53	Sensus control module	10
54	-	-
55	-	-
56	Door module in right-hand front door	20
57	Display for rear seat comfort functions[C]	5[C]

	Function	[A][A]
58	TV* (certain markets)	5
59	Primary fuse for fuses 53 and 58	15

A Ampere
B Not Excellence
C Excellence

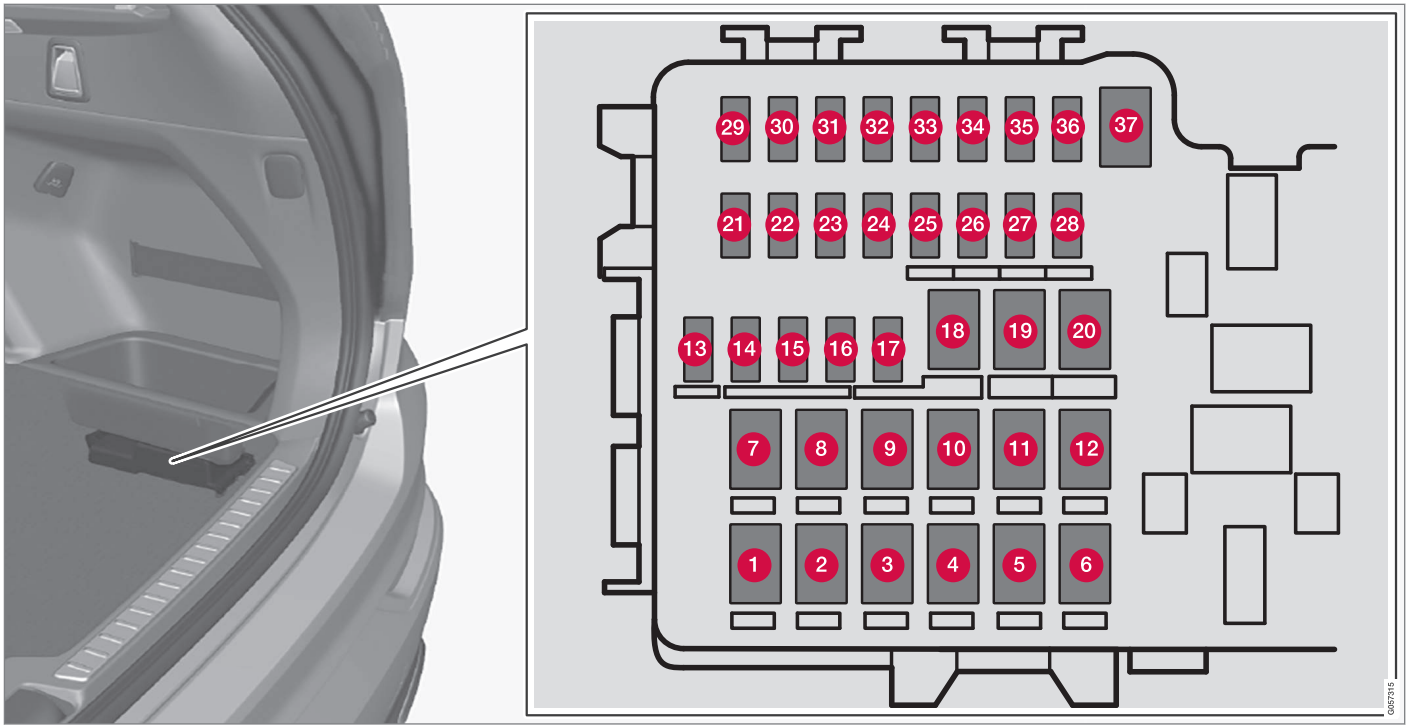
Related information

- Replacing a fuse (p. 507)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 508)
- Fuses in cargo area (p. 516)

Fuses in cargo area

Fuses in the cargo area protect, amongst other things, power seats*, airbags and seatbelt tensioners.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



The central electrical unit is located under the storage compartment on the right-hand side.

On the inside of the cover for the **fuse box in the engine compartment** there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The **fuse box in the engine compartment** also provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

- Fuses 13-17 and 21-36 are of the "Micro" type.
- Fuses 1-12, 18-20 and 37 are of the "MCase" type and should be replaced by a workshop[19].

	Function	[A][A]
1	Rear window defroster	30
2	Electrically operated seat, left-hand side rear[B]	20[B]
3	Compressor for air suspension*	40
4	Electric additional heaters right-hand side rear*	30
5	-	-
6	Electric additional heaters left-hand side rear*	30
7	Electrically operated seat, right-hand side rear[B]	20[B]
8	-	-
9	Power operated tailgate*	25
10	Electrically operated front passenger seat*	20
11	Towbar control module*	40
12	Seatbelt pretensioner module, right-hand side	40
13	Internal relay coils	5
14	-	-
15	Module for detecting foot movement* (for opening the power operated tailgate)	5
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	Towbar control module*	25
19	Power driver seat*	20
20	Seatbelt pretensioner module, left-hand side	40
21	Parking camera*	5
22	-	-
23	-	-
24	Ionic air cleaner[B]	5[B]
25	-	-
26	Control module for airbags and seatbelt tensioners	5
27	Refrigerator[B]; Heated/cooled cup holder, rear[B]	10[B]
28	Seat heating left-hand side rear *	15
29	-	-
30	Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*	5
31	-	-
32	Seatbelt pretensioner modules	5
33	Actuator for exhaust gases	5
34	-	-

19 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

	Function	[A][A]
35	AWD control module*	15
36	Seat heating right-hand side rear*	15
37	-	-

A Ampere
B Excellence

Related information

- Replacing a fuse (p. 507)
- Fuses under glovebox (p. 512)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 508)

Cleaning the exterior

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Handwashing

- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. Bird droppings contain chemicals that affect and discolour paintwork very quickly. For example, use soft paper or sponge soaked in plenty of water. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.

WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refuelling.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Automatic car wash

An automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of washing the car, but it cannot reach everywhere. Handwashing the car is recommended for achieving optimum results.

NOTE

The car must only be washed by hand over the first few months. This is because the paint is more delicate when it is new.

IMPORTANT

Before driving the car into an automatic car wash, deactivate the functions for Automatic braking when stationary (Auto Hold) and Automatic application of parking brake. If these functions are not deactivated, the brake system will jam when the car is stationary and the car will not be able to move.

In car washes where the car is towed through with rolling wheels, the following applies:

1. Drive into the automatic car wash.
2. Deactivate the function for automatic braking when stationary (Auto Hold) using the switch in the tunnel console.
3. Deactivate the function for automatic application of parking brake via the centre display.
4. Move the gear lever to position **N**.

5. Switch off the engine by turning the start knob in the tunnel console to **STOP**. Hold the knob in **STOP** position for at least 4 seconds.
   > The car is ready for the automatic car wash.

IMPORTANT

The system will automatically switch to **P** mode unless the above step is followed. The wheels are locked in **P** mode, which they should not be when putting the car through an automatic car wash.

High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm to the surface of the car (the distance applies to all exterior parts). Do not spray directly onto the locks.

Testing the brakes

Lightly depress the brake pedal now and then when driving long distances in rain or slush. The heat from the friction causes the brake linings to warm up and dry. Do the same thing after starting in very damp or cold weather.

WARNING

Always test the brakes after washing the car, including the parking brake, to ensure that moisture and corrosion do not attack the brake linings and reduce braking performance.

Wiper blades

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, set the wiper blades in service position.

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

Exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

Rims

Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

Related information

- Polishing and waxing (p. 522)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 497)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 382)
- Using the parking brake (p. 379)
- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 361)

Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection. The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight.

Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork.

Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

IMPORTANT

Only paint treatment recommended by Volvo should be used. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 520)
- Paint damage (p. 525)

Rustproofing

The car has effective protection against corrosion.

Anti-corrosion protection for the body consists of modern metallic protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process, corrosion-protected and minimised metal overlap, and shielding plastic components, abrasion protection and supplemental rust inhibitor in exposed areas. This combination guarantees that the body will remain free from corrosion problems over time. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminium.

Inspection and maintenance

The car's anti-corrosion protection normally requires no maintenance, but a good way to further reduce the risk of corrosion is to keep the car clean. Strong alkaline or acidic cleaning solutions must always be avoided on glossy trim components. Any stone chips should be rectified as soon as they are discovered.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 520)
- Paint damage (p. 525)

Cleaning the interior

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

IMPORTANT

- Certain items of coloured clothing (e.g. dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, pure petrol or white spirit to clean the interior, since this may damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe them instead using a moistened cloth containing the cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.

Fabric upholstery and ceiling upholstery

Volvo offers a comprehensive fabric care product for fabric upholstery and ceiling upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the properties of the upholstery. The fabric care product is available at Volvo dealers.

Leather upholstery*

Volvo's leather upholstery is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the leather shall be preserved. Volvo offers a comprehensive product, Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes, for the cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the leather's protective coating.

To achieve best results, Volvo recommends the cleaning and application of the protective cream once to four times per year (or more if required). The Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is available from Volvo dealers.

Leather steering wheel

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic. Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is recommended for cleaning the leather steering wheel.

Leather panel*

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather on the top of the instrument panel or at the door panel. Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is recommended for cleaning the leather panels.

Interior plastic, metal and wood parts

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers.

Seatbelts

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from Volvo dealers. Ensure that the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

Inlay mats and floor mat

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

Remove the inlay mat by taking hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.

Fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

WARNING

Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

▸▸

A special textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat after vacuuming. Floor mats should be cleaned with agents recommended by Volvo dealers.

Related information

- Cleaning the centre display (p. 524)

Cleaning the centre display

Dirt, stains and grease from fingers can affect the centre display's performance and readability. Clean the screen frequently with a microfibre cloth.

Home button for the centre display.

1. Turn off the centre display with a long press on the home button.
2. Wipe the screen with the microfibre cloth supplied or use another microfibre cloth of equivalent quality. The screen should be wiped with a clean and dry microfibre cloth with small circular movements. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth with clean water.
3. Activate the display with a short press on the home button.

IMPORTANT

The microfibre cloth used to clean the centre display must be free from sand and dirt.

IMPORTANT

When cleaning the centre display, only use gentle pressure on the screen. Heavy pressure can damage the screen.

IMPORTANT

Do not spray any liquid or caustic chemicals directly on the centre display. Do not use window cleaning agent, other cleaning agents, aerosol spray, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or cleaning agent containing abrasive.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, these can scratch the centre display.

Related information

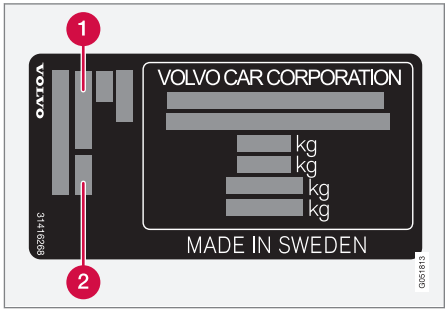
- Cleaning the interior (p. 523)
- Overview of the centre display (p. 30)

Paint damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rustproofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

Colour code

The colour code label is located on the car's door pillar and becomes visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.



1 Exterior colour code

2 Any secondary exterior colour code

It is important that the correct colour is used.

Touching up minor paintwork damage

To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

Materials that may be needed

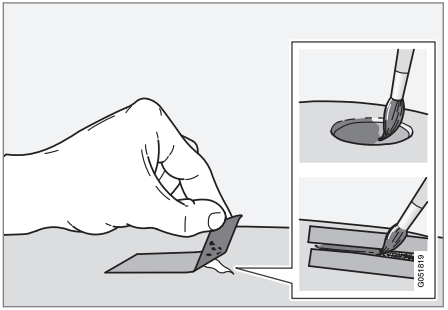
- Primer[20] - a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers.
- Basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks[21].
- Masking tape.
- fine sand paper[20].

Related information

- Repairing paint damage (p. 525)
- Type designations (p. 528)
- Rustproofing (p. 522)

Repairing paint damage

When repairing paint damage, the car must be clean, dry and have a temperature of over 15 °C.



1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

   If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

20 If required.

21 Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is cleaned thoroughly and left to dry.
3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.

For scratches, proceed as described above, but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

Touch-up pens and spray paints are available from Volvo dealers.

NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the meal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

Related information

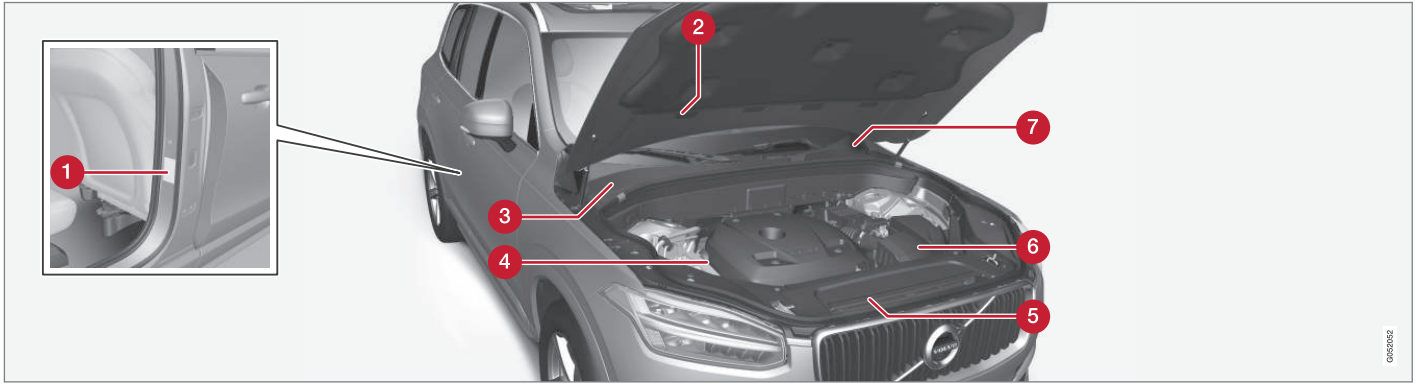
- Paint damage (p. 525)
- Cleaning the exterior (p. 520)

SPECIFICATIONS

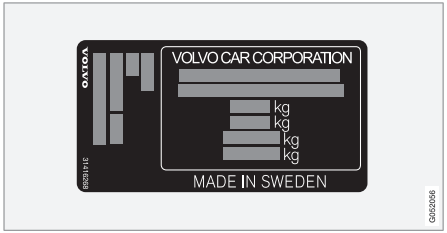
Type designations

Type designation, vehicle identification number, etc., i.e. information unique to the car, can be read on labels in the car.

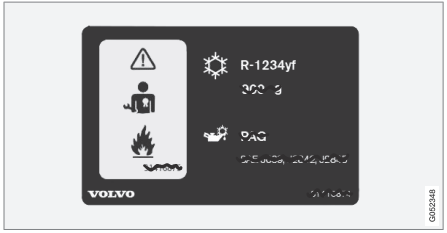
Label location



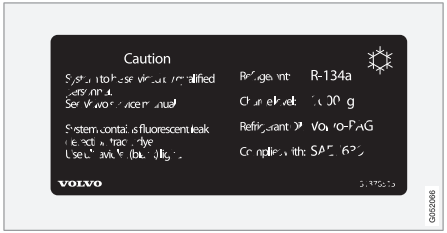
Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all contact with an authorised Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.



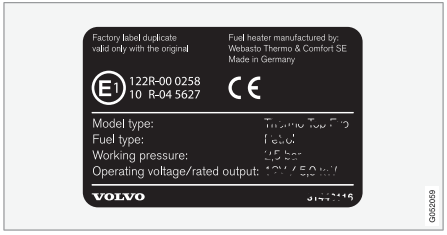
1 Type designation, vehicle identification number, permissible maximum weights and code designation for exterior colour and type approval number. The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.



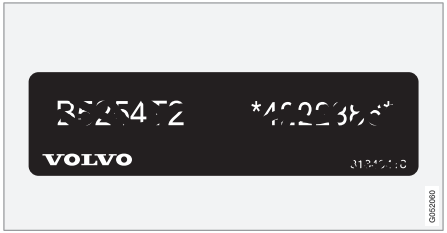
2 Decal A/C system for cars with refrigerant R1234yf.



2 Decal A/C system for cars with refrigerant R134a.

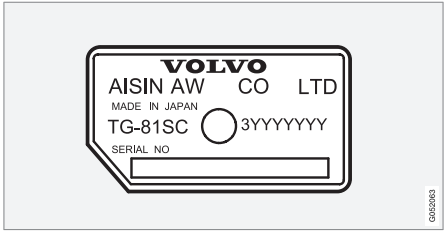


3 Label for parking heater.

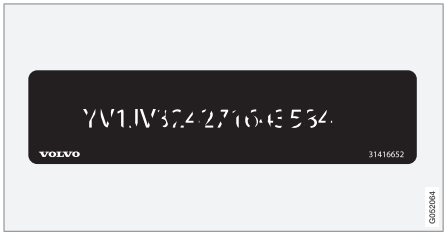


4 Engine code and engine serial number.

5 Label for engine oil.



6 Gearbox type designation and serial number.



7 Car's identification number (VIN Vehicle Identification Number).

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

NOTE

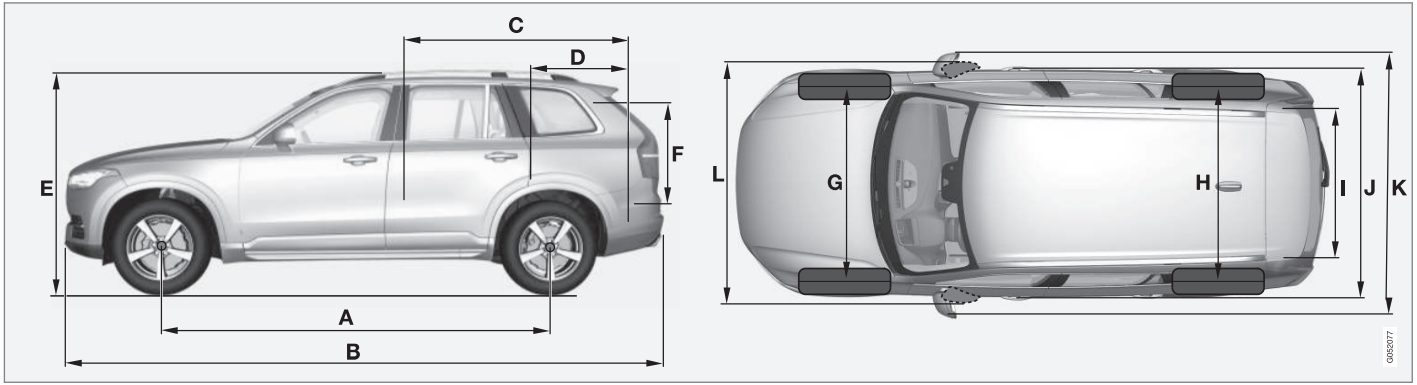
It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Related information

- Air conditioning — specifications (p. 541)

Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.



	Dimensions	mm
A	Wheelbase	2984
B	Length	4950
C	Load length, floor, folded seat[A]	2040 1260[B]
D	Load length, floor	1220[C] 554[D] 761/898[E]

	Dimensions	mm
E	Height	1776
F	Load height	816
G	Front track[F]	1673[G] 1665[H]
	Front track[I]	1676[G] 1668[H]

	Dimensions	mm
H	Rear track[F]	1675[G] 1667[H]
	Rear track[I]	1679[G] 1671[H]
I	Load width, floor	1192

	Dimensions	mm
J	Width	1923[J] 1931[K] 1958[L]
K	Width including door mirrors	2140
L	Width including folded-in door mirrors	2008

A Does not apply to cars with 4 seats.
B From the second seat row in a car with 7 seats.
C Car with 5 seats.
D Car with 7 seats.
E Car with 4 seats.
F Car without air suspension.
G Applies to 20-, 21- and 22-inch wheels.
H Applies to 18- and 19-inch wheels.
I Car with air suspension.
J Body width.
K Width for car with 18- and 19-inch wheels.
L Width for car with 20-, 21- and 22-inch wheels.

Weights

Max. gross vehicle weight, etc. can be read on a label in the car.

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full and all fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

NOTE

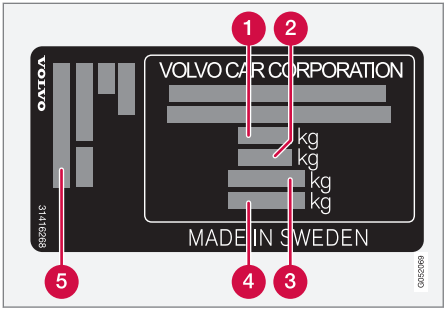
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce loading capacity are the Kinetic/Momentum/Summum equipment levels, as well as other accessories such as Towbar, Load carrier, Space box, Audio system, Auxiliary lamps, GPS, Fuel-driven engine block heater, Safety grille, Carpets, Cargo cover, Power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

WARNING

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

1. Max. gross vehicle weight
2. Max. train weight (car+trailer)
3. Max. front axle load
4. Max. rear axle load
5. Equipment level

Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 100 kg.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 528)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 534)

Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

NOTE

The use of a stabiliser hitch on the towing bracket is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Engine	Engine code[A]	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T5 AWD	B4204T20	Automatic, TG-81SC	2400	140
T5 AWD	B4204T23	Automatic, TG-81SC	2400	140
T6 AWD	B4204T27	Automatic, TG-81SC	2700	140
D4	D4204T14	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	140
D4 AWD	D4204T6	Automatic, TG-81SC	2400	140
D5 AWD	D4204T11	Automatic, TG-81SC	2700	140

A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

IMPORTANT

When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg, provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

Max. weight unbraked trailer

Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
750	50

Related information

- Type designations (p. 528)
- Weights (p. 533)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 397)
- Trailer Stability Assist* (p. 400)

Engine specifications

Engine specifications (output etc.) for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

Engine	Engine code[A]	Output (kW/rpm)	Output (hp/rpm)	Torque (Nm/rpm)	No. of cylinders
T5 AWD	B4204T20	183/5500	249/5500	350/1500-4500	4
T5 AWD	B4204T23	187/5500	254/5500	350/1500–4800	4
T6 AWD	B4204T27	235/5700	320/5700	400/2200-5400	4
D4	D4204T14	140/4250	190/4250	400/1750-2500	4
D4 AWD	D4204T6	140/4250	190/4250	420/1500–2500	4
D5 AWD	D4204T11	165/4250	225/4250	470/1750-2500	4

A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 528)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 537)
- Coolant — specifications (p. 540)

Engine oil — specifications

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Volvo recommends:

Engine	Engine code[A]	Oil grade	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)
T5 AWD	B4204T20	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0w20	approx. 5.9
T5 AWD	B4204T23		approx. 5.9
T6 AWD	B4204T27		approx. 5.9
D4	D4204T14		approx. 5.2
D4 AWD	D4204T6		approx. 5.2
D5 AWD	D4204T11		approx. 5.2

[A] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 528)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 539)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 489)
- Engine oil (p. 488)

Adverse driving conditions for engine oil

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C or hotter than +40 °C.

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:

IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo Car Corporation disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Engine oil — specifications (p. 537)
- Engine oil (p. 488)

Coolant — specifications

Prescribed grade: Coolant recommended by Volvo mixed with 50% water[1], see the packaging.

Transmission fluid — specifications

The prescribed transmission fluid for each respective gearbox alternative can be read in the table.

Automatic gearbox

	Prescribed transmission fluid
TG-81SC	AW1

NOTE

The gearbox oil does not need to be changed under normal driving conditions.

Brake fluid — specifications

The medium in a hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid, and it is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder to one or more slave cylinders, which in turn act on a mechanical brake.

Prescribed grade: DOT 4

NOTE

It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

[1] Water quality must fulfil the standard STD 1285.1.

Fuel tank - volume

Fuel tank volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Engine	Volume (litres)
Petrol engine	approx. 71[A]
Diesel engine	approx. 71[A]

[A] Certain markets have 60 litres.

Related information

- Opening/closing the fuel filler flap and refuelling (p. 388)

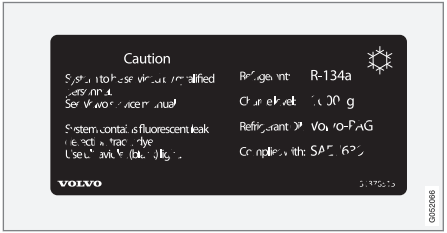
Air conditioning — specifications

The climate control system in the car uses a refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a, depending on market. Which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses can be seen on a decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

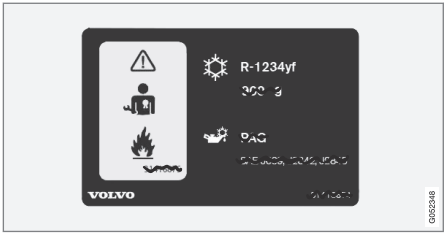
Prescribed grades and volumes of fluids and lubricants in the air conditioning system can be read in the tables below.

A/C decal

Decal for R134a



Decal for R1234yf



Symbol explanation R1234yf

Symbol	Meaning
	Caution
	Mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Lubricant type
	An authorised service technician is required in order to service the mobile air conditioning system (MAC).
	Flammable refrigerants

Refrigerant

Cars with refrigerant R134a

Weight	Prescribed grade
750 g (1000 g[A])	R134a

A Applies to cars with A/C for the third seat row.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with refrigerant R1234yf

Weight	Prescribed grade
650 g (900 g[A])	R1234yf

A Applies to cars with A/C for the third seat row.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Compressor oil

Volume	Prescribed grade
60 ml (80 ml[A])	PAG SP-A2

A Applies to cars with A/C for the third seat row.

Evaporator

IMPORTANT

The A/C system's evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. A new evaporator must be certified and labelled in accordance with SAE J2842.

Related information

- Servicing the climate control system (p. 491)
- Type designations (p. 528)

Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions

Fuel consumption in a vehicle is measured in litres per 100 km and CO2 emissions in grams CO2 per km.

Explanation

CO_2	gram CO_2/km
ø⛽	litre/100 km

	urban driving
	extra-urban driving
	combined driving
man	manual gearbox
aut	Automatic gearbox

NOTE

If the consumption and emission data is missing then it is included in the enclosed supplement.

							
		CO_2	ø⛽	CO_2	ø⛽	CO_2	ø⛽
T5 AWD[A] (B4204T23)	aut	220	9.5	151	6.5	176	7.6
T5 AWD[C] (B4204T23)	aut	217	9.3	150	6.5	174	7.5
T6 AWD[A, B] (B4204T27)	aut	229	9.8	162	7.0	186	8.0
T6 AWD[C, B] (B4204T27)	aut	224	9.6	154	6.6	179	7.7
T6 AWD[D] (B4204T27)	aut	-	-	-	-	-	-
D4 (D4204T14)	aut	152	5.8	127	4.9	136	5.2

		CO_2	ø⛽	CO_2	ø⛽	CO_2	ø⛽
D4 AWD[A] (D4204T6)	aut	168	6.4	143	5.5	152	5.8
D4 AWD[C] (D4204T6)	aut	164	6.2	140	5.4	149	5.7
D5 AWD[A, B] (D4204T11)	aut	168	6.4	143	5.5	152	5.8
D5 AWD[C, B] (D4204T11)	aut	164	6.2	140	5.4	149	5.7
D5 AWD[D] (D4204T11)	aut	-	-	-	-	-	-

A Does **not** apply to the low-emission variant.
B Does not apply to cars with 4 seats.
C This **only** applies to the low-emissions variant.
D Applies to cars with 4 seats.

Fuel consumption and emission values in the table above are based on specific EU cycles[2], that apply to cars with kerb weight in the basic version and without extra equipment. The car's weight may increase depending on equipment. This, as well as how heavily the car is loaded, increases fuel consumption and carbon dioxide emissions.

There are several reasons for increased fuel consumption compared with the table's values. Examples of this are:

- The driver's driving style.
- If the customer has specified wheels larger than those fitted as standard on the model's basic version, then rolling resistance increases.

2 Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Regulation no 692/2008 and 715/2007 (Euro 5 / Euro 6) and UN ECE Regulation no 101. Since the driving cycles are also used for quality control there are significant requirements for repeatability of the tests. For this reason the tests are carried out under close scrutiny and only with the car's basic functions (e.g. air conditioning, radio, etc. switched off). As a consequence of this the results from the official figures are not obviously representative of what the customer sees during actual usage. The regulations cover the driving cycles for "Urban driving" and "Extra-urban driving". - For the "Urban driving" driving cycle - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated. - For the "Extra-urban driving" driving cycle - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0-120 km/h (0-75 mph). The driving is simulated. - The official value for combined driving, which is reported in the table, is a combination of the results from the "Urban driving" and "Extra-urban driving" driving cycles, in accordance with legal requirements. CO_2 emissions - the exhaust gases are collected in order to extrapolate the carbon dioxide emissions during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO_2 emissions.

- High speed results in increased wind resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

A combination of the above-mentioned examples can result in significantly improved consumption. For further information, please refer to the regulations referred to[2].

Large deviations in fuel consumption may arise in a comparison with the EU driving cycles[2] which are used in the certification of the car and on which the consumption figures in the table are based.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel quality are factors that could affect the car's fuel consumption.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 528)
- Weights (p. 533)
- Driving economically (p. 393)

2 Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Regulation no 692/2008 and 715/2007 (Euro 5 / Euro 6) and UN ECE Regulation no 101. Since the driving cycles are also used for quality control there are significant requirements for repeatability of the tests. For this reason the tests are carried out under close scrutiny and only with the car's basic functions (e.g. air conditioning, radio, etc. switched off). As a consequence of this the results from the official figures are not obviously representative of what the customer sees during actual usage. The regulations cover the driving cycles for "Urban driving" and "Extra-urban driving". - For the "Urban driving" driving cycle - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated. - For the "Extra-urban driving" driving cycle - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0-120 km/h (0-75 mph). The driving is simulated. - The official value for combined driving, which is reported in the table, is a combination of the results from the "Urban driving" and "Extra-urban driving" driving cycles, in accordance with legal requirements. CO_2 emissions - the exhaust gases are collected in order to extrapolate the carbon dioxide emissions during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO_2 emissions.

Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each engine alternative can be found in the table.

NOTE

All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

Engine	Tyre size	Speed (km/h)	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[A]
			Front (kPa)[B]	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
All engines	235/60 R 18	0 - 160[C]	240	240	270	270	270
	235/55 R 19 275/45 R 20 275/40 R 21 275/35 R 22	160+[D]	240	240	270	270	-
Temporary Spare Tyre		max. 80[E]	420	420	420	420	-

A Economical driving.
B In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.
C 0 - 100 mph
D 100+ mph
E max 50 mph

Related information

- Type designations (p. 528)
- Checking the tyre pressures. (p. 452)

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

1, 2, 3 ...

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

TP 20376 (English), AT 1546, MY16, Printed in Sweden, Göteborg 2015,